



*The Minde or Meaning
of the Frontispeece.*

THe figure 1, a compleat *Horse-man* shewes,
That *Rides, Keeper, and Cures*, and all perfections
The 2 *Diet*; 3 letting blood, (knowes.
Best *Balme* of *Balmes* for inward *Griefes* most good;
The 4 *Wounds, Gals, and Sores* doth firmly cure,
The 5 helpes *Natures* markes; 6 doth procure
Helpe for the *Sinewes* griefes, as *Slip* or *Straine*,
Knocke or *Convulsion*, all are helpt againe.
The 7 wholesome *Drinke*; the 8 doth take
Bloud from the *Mouth*, that sudden death doth slake.
The 9 shewes the *Horse-candle*, or the *Mathe*,
Good as the best, yet some *Fooles* count it *Trashe*.
The 10 shewes *Fury* in untamed things,
The onely *Fountain* whence *Diseases* springs.



*The Minde or Meaning
of the Frontispeece.*

THe figure 1, a compleat *Horse-man* shewes,
That *Rides, Keeper, and Cures*, and all perfections
The 2 *Diet*; 3 letting blood, (knowes.
Best *Balme* of *Balmes* for inward *Griefes* most good;
The 4 *Wounds, Gals, and Sores* doth firmly cure,
The 5 helpes *Natures* markes; 6 doth procure
Helpe for the *Sinewes* griefes, as *Slip* or *Straine*,
Knocke or *Convulsion*, all are helpt againe.
The 7 wholesome *Drinke*; the 8 doth take
Blond from the *Mouth*, that sudden death doth slake.
The 9 shewes the *Horse-candle*, or the *Mathe*,
Good as the best, yet some *Fooles* count it *Trashe*.
The 10 shewes *Fury* in untamed things,
The onely *Fountain* whence *Diseases* springs.



MARKHAMS
Maister: Peece.

Containing all knowledge
belonging to Smith, Farrier, or
Horse-leech, touching the
curing of all diseases
in Horses.

Devided into two bookes.
The first, containing all
cures Physicall.

The second, all belonging
to Chyrurgery.

The ~~fixeth~~ Impression, corrected
and enlarged by the Author.
Geruaſe Markham.

LONDON
Printed by Iohn
Okes * 1644



Ren: Elstrak sculpsit

Markhams

MAISTER-PEECE:

Contayning all Knowledge belonging to the
Smith, Farrier, or Horse-Leech, touching the
Curing of all Diseases in Horses : Drawne with
great paine, and most approved experience, from
the publick practise of all the Forraigne Horse-Mar-
shals in Christendome; and from the private
practise of all the best Farriers of this
KINGDOME.

Being divided into two Bookes.

The First contayning all Cures Physicall : The
Second all belonging to Chyrurgery ; with an Addition
of 160. principall Chapters, and 370. most excellent
Medicines, never written of, nor mentioned in
any Author whatsoever.

*Together with the true Nature, Use, and Quality of every
Simple spoken of through the whole Worke.*

Now the sixt time newly Imprinted, Corrected, and Aug-
mented, with above thirty new Chapters, and above forty new Me-
dicines that are most certaine and approved ; and heretofore never
published, which you shall finde noted thus □. All which
never was before made knowne, but concealed in
the Authors breast for his owne credit.

Written by *Gervase Markham*, Gent.

*A just man hath pittie on his Beasts, but the mercies of the wicked
are cruell. Proverbs 21. 10.*

Imprinted at *London* by *John Okes*, and are to be sold in
Pauls Church-yard, or in any other part of *London*. 1643.

MUSTER

1. Name
2. Geburtsort
3. Geburtsdatum
4. Beruf
5. Religion
6. Familienstand
7. Einkommen
8. Sonstige Bemerkungen

BEIHALTUNG

1. Name
2. Geburtsort
3. Geburtsdatum
4. Beruf
5. Religion
6. Familienstand
7. Einkommen
8. Sonstige Bemerkungen

BEIHALTUNG

1. Name
2. Geburtsort
3. Geburtsdatum
4. Beruf
5. Religion
6. Familienstand
7. Einkommen
8. Sonstige Bemerkungen

BEIHALTUNG

1. Name
2. Geburtsort
3. Geburtsdatum
4. Beruf
5. Religion
6. Familienstand
7. Einkommen
8. Sonstige Bemerkungen



TO THE
RIGHT HONORABLE AND MY NOBLE
LORD, Sir ROBERT

DORMER, Baronet, Baron

Dormer of Wing Viscount of Ascot,
Earle of Carnarvon, and Master
of his Majesty's Hawks.

SIR,

EVer since I came to serve
your Country in Millitary
occasions; I accounted my
selfe your servant, and to
that end have made strong
A 4 intimation:

The Epistle Dedicatory.

intimation : But Multa Cadent, Many
Haps hinder Hopes : now left to mine own
power, I could not finde any thing that
could so well expresse mee to your Lord-
ship, or shew you what I am, eyther in af-
fection or Vertue, as the Dedication of
this Booke, which containes me amply and
fully adorned with the best of mine owne
Feathers. And howsoever it may ap-
peare to your Honour with an old counte-
nance, both because my Selfe, the Title,
and much of the matter is old, yet let mee
give assurance unto your Noble goodnesse,
that there is that newnesse of Truth, Art,
and approved experience which unto this
day hath not beene discovered in any other
Author. It is more (my Noble Lord)
then fifty yeares agoe since I beganne to
sayle in this Ocean, and to discover the
fruitfull Trafficke of this needfull Art :
Nor have I in the interim of Time beene

The Epistle Dedicatory.

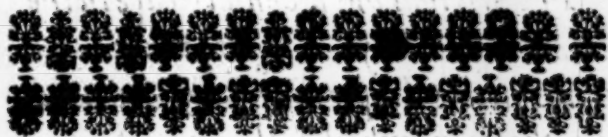
a Treuant, but with my best meanes and abilities haue persued it (as neere as I could) unto the height of perfection; and doubtlesse (much honored Sir,) I haue not lost all my labour, what I haue gained I haue here now newly inserted, and send it in all humility to kisse your Lordships hand; not as a materiall thing worthy your Study, but as a poore vertue that needes your defence. And howsoever I dare not set it forth as a present worthy your acceptance, yet bee pleased to make it such by your fauour, which can make mean deserving appeare to be of greatest merit. This Obligation now offered unto your worthy hand is the free offering of my love, service and affection: and in a word of my selfe, who am as well as my Worke devoted to be ever yours. This Booke is but the externall pledge which doth demonstrate the inward obligation of my heart,
since

The Epistle Dedicatory.

since what I am Art, soule and affection
is onely Yours; and desire to bee so esteem-
ed in all my actions, especially in this
Worke. If it arrive with as good suc-
cesse, as I transport it with sincere devo-
tion, no doubt but the Worke will gaine
luster, and my selfe shall finde that sa-
tisfaction which shall make mee ever ac-
kn wledge my selfe

Your Honours humble devoted
Servant.

Gervase Markham.






AN ADMONITION

*To the Reader, which I would
wish him to read before he peruse
the Booke.*

T*Wo errors (gentle Reader)
bath been laid to my charge
in the first Publication of
this Booke, as namely a
mistaking in the Table of
Additions wanting direction : And the
great Multiplicity, or heaping together
of many Medicines for one grieve, with-
out distinguishing their goodnesse, or fore-
telling the Practitioner on which to relye
for his best profit and assurance.*

The

To the Reader.

The first was but a venial escape in the Printer, and may be forgotten in as much as it is in this Impression fully amended. For the second which is the multiplicity of medicines, I have for thy satisfaction to all those Medicines which of mine owne knowledge I have to be certaine and most approved, and to be the best of those which are compyled with it. I have in the Margent and over against the Medicine placed this mark : As also to every new Addition and new Chapter, (never before Published,) I have in the beginning of the Chapter placed this Mark : And for thy better furtherance in this Worke, I have likewise in the Table, to all the new Additions (which are the very excellencies of all my knowledge) placed this Marke also : And this I have done for two Reasons.

First, to make this Worke which was

To the Reader.

one of my first, and intituled my Master-peece, a true Master-peece indeed, and so exact in every part, that other stoln peecees and Pamphlets Christned in my name, and printed without my knowledge or assistance, with twice so many falsehoods as pages, may bee knowne to bee both Bastards and Abortive: mistaking an ounce for halfe an ounce; three handfull for two: too much of one simple, and too little of another, of which whosoever maketh tryall, will, without he hath had some knowledge already, indanger his horse; and therefore I have given many men notice my selfe of it; because they have taken one thing for another.

And that the bumbasted Title, and the illiterate and absurd Epistles, where neither the one nor the other of my invention. For I must most ingeniously confesse, that but to this booke, and my first, I was never

So happy as to bee made a Godfather.

And lastly, to wish all those which are abused by false and imperfect Printings, to come to this booke for Correction, which is a Cabinet that containes all and more then others struggle for. I can give the Reader no better a Reason to perswade him to reade my booke, then to shew him the real use of horses well managed according to the Rules of Horsemanship, he is fit for seates of armes, and tryumphs in war, and a great pitty is it that such an excellent beast should any way miscarry for want of knowing his Naturall diseases and the Cure thereof. I have now made the Souldier and all others Masters of Art in the cures of their horses if Farriers be failing to advise and consider with them; for it is a knowledge fit for a Gentleman both in peace and war, to bee able to cure the diseases incident to his horses: for other Countries doe love all experiments,

To the Reader.

ments, & to be seen generally in all generous practises, whereof Horseman-ship is one of the chiefest: which worke I will justifie upon my reputation to have been tryed by me, and hath wrought good effect; having these fifty yeares beene a practioner in the same, and did never thinke to have disclosed these secrets that now I have; which time and my industry hath brought to light; and because old age groweth upon mee, and that the grave will bee never a whit the better; I thought therefore to divulge them to the world, rather then to have bid them in oblivion; desiring the Reader to give God the glory, and me but onely thanks and good wishes, so I rest,

Thine,

G. M.



The Authors Names from whom any thing in this Work is collected, being the best Farriers.

These are Publicke.

Zenophon.

Russus.

Vegetius.

Pelagonius.

Camerarius.

Appolonius.

Gresson.

Grilli.

Horatio.

Gloria de Caballi.

Liball.

Stevens.

Wickerus.

La Brove.

Martine Senior.

Abuterio.

Vinet.

clifford.

Maskall.

Markham.

These are private.

Martine Junior.

Webb.

Dallidoune Senior.

Dallidoune Junior.

Aarbarus.

Stanley.

Smith.

Dowfing.

Dun.

Barnes.

Maseild.

Lupman.

Goodsoone.

Parfray.

White.

THE



THE
FIRST BOOKE
CONTAINING ALL CVRES

Physicall, or such infirmitie as being inward, crave the Administration of Physicke, and are called in Horse-Leach craft,
Horses sicknesses.

CHAP. I.

Of the naturall Composition of Horses Bodies.



T Ouching the true composition of a Horses body, you shall understand that it is (as the body of Man,) compounded of thirteen severall things; that is to say, seven naturall, and six not naturall: The seven naturall are, Elements, Temperaments, Humours, Members, Powers, or Vertues, Actions, or Operations, and Spirits; all which bee called naturall, because the naturall Profession and Excellency of every sensible body, doth wholly depend upon them: and hath his moving no longer then they have
B power

power of working. The sixe, which are not naturall, be the *Ayre*, *Meate* and *Drinke*, *Motion* and *Rest*, *Sleepe* and *Watch*, *Emptinesse* and *Fulnesse*, and the *Affects* or *Motions* of the minde; and these are called not naturall, because as (being rightly and in due order applyed) they preserve, sustaine, and fortifie the body; so being mis-governed, or used in any excessse, or disorder, they are the only corrupt destroyers of the whole body; and of these thirteen simples which compound the Fabricke, or whole frame of the body, I intend to speake severally.

CHAP. II.

*Of the foure Elements, their Vertues
and Operations.*

First, for the exposition of the word *Element*, you shall understand, that it is the primere or first beginning of things, being of it selfe pure, uncorrupt, and simple; all things being first made thereof, and all things at the last being resolved into the same again. It is also in it owne nature so bright, clear, and without contraction of impurity, that it is not able to be discerned by any sensible eye whatsoever. Lastly, it is the least part or *Atome* of that thing which is made or proceedeth from it.

Now of these Elements which are the usuall first movers or beginners of all moving things, there are only foure in number, that is to say: *Fire*, *Ayre*, *Water*, and *Earth*; meaning not that *Fire*, *Ayre*, *Water*, and *Earth*, which is visible heere with us beneath, and which through the grossenesse thereof, is both palpable

pable and to bee discerned; but those which are mounted aloft, and through their purity invifible, and conceal'd from us, (for the other are compounded bodies, and not fimple.) And of thefe perfect and diftinct Elements you fhall know, that the fire is the higheft, as being fixed or joyned next unto the Moone, being hot and dry, yet naturally exceeding, or being moft predominant, or ruling in heate:

The *Ayre* is placed next unto the *Fire*, and is naturally light and hot, yet his predominant or chiefe quality is moift.

The *Water* is adjoyned unto the *Ayre*; the difpofition thereof being heavy and moift; but his predominant or chiefe quality only cold.

Laftly, the *Earth*, adjoyned to the *Water*, is the loweft; and it is moft heavy and cold, but the predominant or chiefe quality thereof is only drineffe.

Now for the vertues, properties, and operations of thefe foure Elements, you fhall underftand, that firft the *Fire*, by meanes of his heat, moveth matter to generation, and ftirreth up warmth in all living things, it is that which the Philofophers cal *Heterogenea*, which is in the mixt bodies to feparate things of divers kinds one from another, and alfo to joyne things of like kinds together, which they likewife call *Homogenea*. For by vertue of the fire the bones of Horfes are feparated from the flefh, the flefh from the finews, the finews from the veines, the veines from the arteries, the heart from the liver, liver from the fpleene, and fo forth, in fuch fort as wee fee the divers parts of the fueell wee burn, by

the vertue of the fire and heate to be separated and divided one from another, as the vapour from the smoake, the smoake from the flame, and the flame from the ashes. And as in these things, so in many other things, as in the triall of Metals, and such like, where the fire by vertue of his heat separateth body from body, that is, metall from metall, and corruption from incorruption, gathering and knitting together every thing of one and the selfe same kind. Besides, the vertue of the fire is to ripen, order, and digest things raw and undigested, mingling the dry with the moist, and opening the pores, that the ayr being somewhat more solid and grosse, may enter into the bodie: And lastly, it breaketh and moderateth the coldnesse of the Water and the Earth, so that it may not distemper or confound the bodie.

Touching the vertue and operation of the air, you shall understand, that by the moistnesse thereof it maketh the matter apt to receive shape, either naturall or accidentall, and by the help and assistance of the fire, bringeth the powers and influences of the Heavens and Stars into the inferiour bodies, making the mixt bodies not only subtile and penetrable, but also light and mounting, to the end they may neither be too grosse, nor too heavy. Secondly, the aire through his moistnesse cooleth the burning heat of the heart, liver, and intrails, as we daily see by the office of the lights and lungs, which like a paire of bellowes draweth uncessantly fresh aire unto the heart and inward members. And albeit the Ayre doth not seeme to the sence of the outward eyes,

eyes, to bee any thing neere so moyst as the Water, yet according to the opinions both of our Bookes and best Physicians, it is by much the moister, which is well proved (say they) by the abundant fluxe it containeth, which fluxe spreadeth it selfe so farre abroad in the Body, that it filleth every empty part and corner thereof with the speciall properties and Characters of moistnesse, and by that reason is much harder to bee kept within his owne bounds then the water is. Lastly, as the water was altered by God from his first naturall place, for the better profit both of Man and Beast; even so the Ayre, according to Schoole-mens opinions, was not left altogether in his first naturall disposition, least being over-moist it should so confound and suffocate all Sence, that neither Man nor Beast should bee able to breath or live.

Now for the Vertue and operation of the water, it is to be noted, that through the coldnesse thereof, it conglutinateth and bindeth in mixt bodies both parts and members together, which bee of divers kinds; as bones with flesh and sinewes, flesh with sinewes and bones, and sinewes with bones and flesh. Even as for a familiar example, wee see in the time of any great Frost, the strength of the cold how it bindeth things of divers kinds together, bringing into one masse or substance both Water, dirt, stones, strawes, stickes and leaves: The water also with its coldnesse, doth temper and coole the inflammation and heate of the fire, gathering together those things which otherwise the violent heat would disperse and scatter abroad.

Lastly, for the vertue and operation of the Earth, it is through his drinesse in mixt Bodies, to to harden and fixe them together, that they may reayne their shapes, which otherwise by the power of the Ayre and Water, would bee so soluble and loose, that they could not hold together; as wee may see in Paste, Waxe, and such like, which whilst it is mist, will receive no print, but being once hardned, it retaineth any forme that is prest into it. And here is to bee noted, that according to the opinion of *Hypocrates*, when any sensible body dyeth, not onely every quality, but every substance and part makes his returne to the Element from whence it came, as heate to the Fire, moistnesse to the Ayre, coldnesse to the Water, and drinesse to the Earth. And thus briefly you see, that of these foure common Elements, or common beginners of things; the fire being hot, separateth; the ayre being moist, shapeth; the water being cold, bindeth; and the earth being dry, hardneth and retaineth. The use that you are to make of this knowledge, over and beside the composition of a naturall body, is, that when you finde any sicknesse or infirmity, which proceedeth from the fire, as inflammations of the body, or such like; that then you apply simples of the nature of the Ayre or Water, which may moisten and coole the violence of the heate. If the infirmity proceede from the Ayre, as fluxe of bloud, or too much moisture; then you shall apply simples of the nature of the fire or earth, whose heate and drinesse may disperse and harden such moisture. If the disease spring from the Water, as colds,

Colds, Rheumes, Appoplexies, and such like; then you shall seeke simples of the nature of the fire and ayre; that through the heate of the one, and the moist lightnesse of the other, all such cold, grosse, and solid humours may be dispersed. But if the disease proceed from the earth, as Manginess and Leprosie, or their like, that are dry and hardened infections, then you shall seek simples of the nature of the fire only, whose heat may dissolve and loosen those ill knit, dry, and hard humours.

Thus you see too much heate is abated by coldnesse and moistnesse; too much moistnesse by heate and driness, too much coldnesse by heate and moistnesse, too much driness by heat only.

Thus much of these foure common Elements, which begin all things living and unliving, sensible and unsensible; yet of sensible things, which live and have blood, there be other more neer Elements, or beginnings, which are called proper Elements, or generation, as the ingendring seed, and menstruall blood, from whence every Beast taketh his first shape and beginning; and yet these proper beginnings have their whole dependancy and hanging upon the qualities of the first common beginnings already spoken of, which is moist, dry, hot, and cold, for without them they are nothing, nor can do any thing.

CHAP. III.

*Of Temperaments and their severall kindes, and
how far every way they extend in Horses.*

THESE *Temperaments*, or *Temperatures*, which are the second thing in a Horses composition, doe spring from the commixture of the foure Elements, and the ninth in number, wherof eight are unequall, and the ninth is equall. Of the eight unequall, foure are simple, and those bee hot, cold, moist, and dry, which Physitians call the first Qualities; and of these, the first two be Active, and the other two passive: the other foure are compound, and they be hot and moist, hot and dry, cold and moist, cold and dry. Now the equall temperament is divided into two, an universall and a speciall. The equall *Temperament universall*, is when the foure Elements are in an equall proportion generally divided through the whole Body, Nature enjoying no more from the one then from the other. The equall *Temperament especiall*, is when the Elements are proportioned according as every kind doth most properly require, be it either Plant or Beast: In Plants, when every Plant hath that commixture of Elements which are proper to its kinde, the hot Plant being hot, the cold being cold, &c. Whereas contrariwise, to have a hot Plant cold, or a cold hot, to have Rue cold, or Sorrell hot, were a false and unequall commixture of Elements. So likewise of Beasts, that Horse, that Dogge, that Swine is said to have his due *Temperament*, when hee is of such temperature as is most

most proper unto his kinde, which onely is best discerned by his actions, or motions. As thus, the Horse is knowne to bee hot and moist by his lightnesse, swiftnesse, valiantnesse, and long life, and also to bee of a temperate nature, in that hee is easily tamed, docible, obedient and familiar with the man. And so long as either Horse, or any other thing, continueth in the mediocrity and excellency of his proper temperament, so long wee may truely judge him of a good temper and disposition; but if there bee any over-flow of qualities, or exercise in his humours, as either heat, coldnesse, moistnesse, or drynesse, then we say he is either a hot cholerick horse, a cold dull horse, a dry mischievous horse, or a moist cowardly horse, according to the over-flow of that quality which reigneth in him.

Againe, every Horse is said to have his due *Temperament* according to his age, and the Country wherein he is bred, and sometimes according to the time of the yeare wherein hee liveth. And thus a horse in his foale-age, which is till he be sixe yeares old, is naturally hot and moist. In his middle age, which is till twelve, more hot and dry then moist; and in his old age, which is past eightene, more cold and dry, then either hot or moist. So likewise the horses which are bred in Southerne parts, as eyther in *Spaine*, *Barbary*, or *Greece*, are naturally more hot then those which are bred either in the sevenneene Lands, *Germany* or *England*, neither is there any Horse which is in good state of body, that is so hot in the Spring-time of the yeare, as in the Summer, nor so cold in the Summer as in Winter. All
which

which observations are with most curious diligence to be observed of every Horse-leach, when he goeth about to cure any sicknesse: for unlesse hee consider their natures and temperatures, and every other circumstance already declared, hee shall right soone bee deceived in the administration of his Physicke. Therefore I earnestly desire every Farrier, before he give any drench or potion, first to enquire the kind, race, and disposition of the horse, next his age, then the Country, and lastly the time of the yeare: and so according to the truth thereof, to mixe his receipts.

It is most expedient also, for every Horse-leach to consider the second qualities, which are so called, because they take their beginnings from the first qualities already declared; of which second qualities some be called palpable, or to be touched, as these, softnesse, hardnesse, smoothnesse, roughnesse, toughnesse, bricklenesse, lightnesse, heavinesse, thinnesse, thicknesse, smallnesse, grossenesse, & such other like. Some again are not palpable, as those which appertaine to hearing, seeing, and smelling, as noyses, colours, odours, and such like; and by observing well the second qualities, hee shall with much ease know whether the horse be disposed to any sicknesse or not, as shall be more largely declared hereafter in every particular Chapter.

CHAP. III.

of humours, and to what end they serve.

NOW concerning *Humours*, which are the third composers of a Horses body, and so likewise of every

every other beast also; you shall understand that they are foure in number, that is to say; *Blood*, *Flegme*, *Choler* and *Melancholy*. As touching *Bloud*, it is in it's nature uncorrupted, and therefore hot and moyst; and sweet in taste; as participating of the elements fire and ayre. *Flegme* is cold and moist, and either sweet or wallowish without any taste at all, as participating of the elements water and aire. *Choler* is hot and dry, and bitter in taste, as participating of the elements fire and earth. *Melancholy* is cold and dry, and in taste sowre and heavy, as participating of the elements water and earth: so that these foure humours by their qualities, are every way allied unto the elements. For to speake briefly, and according to the manner of Physitians; *Blood* is of the nature of the ayre, in being most predominant therein; *Flegme* of the nature of water, *Choler* of the nature of fire, and *Melancholy* of the nature of the earth. And albeit these humours are symbolized or mixt through every part of the body: yet every one of them aboundeth more in one part then in another, and have their places of residence absolute and peculiar to themselves; as *Blood* about the heart; *Flegme* in the braine; *Choler* in the liver; and *Melancholy* in the spleene. Now as these humours doe more or lesse abound, or have greater or lesser soveraignty in the Horse: so is the beast naturally better or worse coloured, qualified, or disposed, as thus: That horse in whom blood hath the greatest predominance, and may be called a Horse sanguine, is bright bay of colour, and in disposition pleasant, nimble, and of temperate or moderate motion. That Horse in whom
flegme

flegme hath the greatest dominion, and may bee called a flegmaticke horse, is for the most part of a milke white colour, and so consequently slow, dull, and heavy. If Choler beare the greatest rule in his constitution, then is his colour commonly a bright Sorrell, and by that meanes of disposition hot, fiery, and of little strength. Lastly, if the earth have gotten power above the other Elements, so that hee may bee called a melancholly Horse, then his colour is commonly a Mouse dunne, and his disposition cowardly, faint, and slothfull. But because these particularities are properly appertayning to the complexions of Horses, of which wee shall have cause to speake more largely hereafter, I will not stand upon any greater relation; onely I give you thus much in conclusion: to understand that every one of these aforesaid humors hath his proper use and end whereunto it serveth, as thus. *Bloud* serveth more properly to nourish the body. *Flegme* giveth motion to the joynts. *Melancholly* begetteth an appetite or longing to his meate. Now during the time that these humors doe possesse their naturall qualities, so long they are wholsome, and bee called by their simple names, without glosse or addition; but if by any mischance they bee disordered or corrupted, then they are unwholsome, and are no longer called by their simple names, but have other Epithetons annexed unto them, as *Melancholly bloud*, *Salt flegme*, *Choler adust* or *burnt Choler*, and *fretting Melancholly*, whereof proceedeth many pestilent and dangerous diseases, as shall be at large declared hereafter. And thus much for the state of humors.

And

CHAP. V.

Of Members, and their severall kinds.

Touching *Members*, which are the fourth maine instrument in this great fabricke of a horses body, they are by School-men divided into two parts: The first is called *Similaria*; which is like, semblable, or one and the same thing: The other is called *Instrumentall*, and are contrary to the first.

Members alike are those, which being separated, or distributed into parts, yet every part thereof is alike in substance to the whole, neither altering in definition, appellation, or nature, as flesh, bone, sinew, and such like: for flesh being cut or incised into many parts, yet is every part still flesh, so reputed, and so called, as well as when it was in combination altogether; and as of this, so likewise may it be said of bones, sinews, and their like.

Now for *Members Instrumentall*, they bee those which being made of parts semblable, and divided into parts, yet the parts are not alike, neither have all one name with the whole, as the head, legge, foot, and such like: for every part of the head is not called the head, nor every part of the legge, the legge; but have other appellations, as the brow, the temples, the knee, the feete-locke, &c. Now these instrumentall members, in doing of their offices and duties, are of much more perfection then the semblable members: wherefore Schoole-men have made amongst these instrumentall members, foure sovereigns or princes above the rest; that is, the *Braine*,
the

the Heart, the Liver, and the Stones; of which the first three are the preservers of the singular body; and the fourth of the whole kinde : the first three giving motion and agitation to the body, the fourth generation and encrease to succeeding ages.

Now from these principall members, like branches from a well grown Tree, doe spring other members which do them service: as from the braine springeth sinewes, whose office is feeling : from the heart arteries, whose office is sprightnesse and lively-hood : from the liver veines, whose office is warmth and strength; and from the stones the seed-vessells, whose office is procreation and increase. Now forasmuch as from these doe likewise proceed a world of other members, as *Tendant, Ligaments, Lungs, Spleenes, Guts*, and suck like, all which, in as much as the knowledge of them doth more properly belong to the office of the Chyrurgian, then to the Physitian (though most necessary to both) I am here to advertise every studious Reader, that when he shall have occasion to meddle with any member about a horse, that he turne to the second booke of this Volume, which treateth onely of Chirurgery, and there hee shall not onely finde every member and lineament in a Horse, but also the true Anatomies so lively demonstrated, that there shall be nothing wanting to the perfecting of his understanding. And thus much in this place of Members.

CHAP. IX.

Of Powers, and how a Horses body is
governed by them.

Powers, which by some are called *Vertues*, or principall faculties, and do governe and controll both the body of man or beast, and have the first place in this work, are in number three, that is, the *power animall*, the *power vitall*, and the *power naturall*. The *power animall* is a vertue incident to the braine, which through the sinewes comming like little conduit pipes from the braine, distribureth feeling and moving to all the parts of the body. The *power vitall* is a vertue belonging to the heart, which doth give life and spirit to all the body by meanes of the arteries; which proceeding from the heart, which is the chiefe fountain of naturall heat, carries in their little channells over the whole body, that ayre and spiritual blood, which makes it full of lightnesse and alacrity. The *power naturall* is a vertue belonging to the liver, which gives nourishment unto all the body, and to every part thereof, by meanes of the veines, which doe likewise proceed from the liver, like greater conduits, carrying the blood from the liver, which is the fountaine of blood, into every part of the body. Besides the *power naturall* containeth foure other vertues, that is, the vertue *attractive*, which draweth food meet to sustain the body, the vertue *Retentive*, by which it retaineth and keepeth the foode received: the vertue *Digestive*, whereby it concocteth and digesteth the same, and lastly, the vertue *Expulsive*

pulsive, by which it expelleth excrements and superfluities. Thus these powers or vertues being of no lesse validity then you perceive by this discourse, it is the part and duty of every good Horse-leach, to have a most carefull and vigilant respect unto them, for if any of them faile, the horse cannot live. Therefore whensoever you see that either your horse refuseth his food, or that hee cannot retaine and keepe his food, but tasteth it up again, or that he doth not digest his food, but keepe it corruptly in his stomacke, or that he cannot avoid his excrements in a naturall manner, but holds it burning in his body, take them for most certaine signes of mortall sicknesse. And thus much of powers or vertues.

CHAP. VII.

Of Actions or Operations, and whereto they belong.

AS touching *Actions or Operations*; which are the sixt columnne or pillar which doth uphold this naturall body of which we treat, they are not onely belonging, but even derived from the three powers immediatly spoken of in the former chapter, as thus; The action and operation of the *Power animall* is to discern, to move, and to feele. Horses discern by meanes of the vertue *Imaginative, Discoursative, and Memorative*, whereof the first is placed in the forehead, the second in the middle of the braine, and the third in the hinder part of the head. All which are comprehended under the *Power animall*. Horses move by meanes of the vertue *Motive*, whose actions and

and operation is to stayne or let slacke the sinewes, whereby every member hath his moving. And Horses feeling is by meanes of the vertue *Sensitive*, whose action or operation is blisied in the five senses, as to *See, Heare, Smell, Taste, and Touch*, and all these actions spring from the *Power animal*.

The action or operation of the *Power vitall*, is to restraine and loosen the heart and the arteries, which proceed from the heart, which action, whether it be hurt or disturbed in a horses body, is easily known of every good *Farrier* or *Horse-marshal*, by the unequall beating of his pulse; that is to say, of the Arteries, which commeth downe from the heart to the insides of both his fore-legges a little below the knuckles of his shoulders, and likewise crosse both the Temples of his Head, a little higher then his eyes. And if any man be so simple, to imagine that the thicknes of the Horses skin shall be an impediment to the feeling of this motion, let him remember, that as a horses skin is thicker then a mans; so also are his arteries greater, and beate with more violence, and so consequently be felt without any great difficulty.

The actions or operations of the *Power natural*, are to ingender, to encrease, to nourish, to desire with appetite, to attract, to change, to digest, to retaine, and to expell, and many other of like kinde. These actions therefore are carefully to be looked unto by every *Farrier* to the intent that he may learne by them, not only the whole estate of a horses body, but also what particular member thereof is evil affected, as thus: if either in your Horse you finde much forgetfulnesse, unnimblenes of his Limbes, or dulnesse upon correction, it

is a signe of *sickness* in the braine, and that the power *animall* is evil affected. If you find that his *Pulses* do beate extraordinarily flow, or much too fast, it is a signe that his heart is grieved, and his power *vital* evil affected: but if you finde that he doth consume, pine away, and loose his stomach, it is a signe that his *Liver* is perplexed, all his inward parts out of frame, and his power *naturall* evil affected.

Now you shall againe understand, that of actions some be *voluntary*, some not *voluntary*.

The *voluntary* actions be those which a horse may either further or hinder, stay or let when themselves please; as the moving of the Legges: for they may goe, stand, or lye downe at their owne pleasure.

The actions not *voluntary* are those which depend not upon the will of any Beast, but be done of their owne accord and naturall, as the moving of the Heart and of the arteries, and the passage of the blood: the first whereof beateh *sleeping* and *waking*: and the other hath his course every minute. And thus much of the actions and operations.

CHAP. VIII.

Of spirits, and in what part of the Horses body they remaine.

Spirits, which is the seventh naturall builder of this naturall Worke, are to be understood to bee that fine, pure, cleare, and ayery substance which is ingendred of the finest part of the blood, whereby the vertue of every principall member may visite all the other

ther parts of the body, making them to do their duties according to the rules of nature. Now of spirits, according to the opinions of some Physicians, there are but two kinds, that is, the *Spirit animal*, and the *Spirit vitall*: The *Spirit animal* is that which giveth power of feeling and moving to a Horse, and hath his resting place in the Braine; from whence through the Sinewes, it is dispersed into all other parts of the Body: and it is ingendred of the vitall spirit, being more vehemently wrought and laboured, and partly of continuall breathing: Even so it is partly preserved by the *Chauke* of the braine, which doth hourly water and nourish it.

The *Spirit vitall* is contained in the heart, from whence it floweth into every part of the body, being the chiefe cause of all naturall heat; and it is preserved and nourished both by breathing and blood.

To these two spirits, there be some *Farriers*, both *Italians* and *French*, which adde a third spirit, and call it the *Spirit naturall*, saying it hath his residence in the *liver* and the *veines*, but the two former are of such power, and have such superiority, that the body cannot live without them, nor have any being at all: wherefore it is the office of the *Farriers* continually, in all his Medicines to have ever some comfortable Simple, which may maintaine and keepe the Spirits in their full strength, lively-hood, and vertue. And thus much touching Spirits, and those seven naturall things which compact a naturall body.

CHAP. IX.
Of the sixe things not naturall, how they profit, and
how they hurt.

HAVING spoken of the naturall things, whereof a
Horses body is compounded, it is needfull now
that we speake something of the other sixe which be
not *Naturall*, so farre forth as they concerne the of-
fice of the *Farrier*, and no further, for with other mat-
ters, we have not to doe. The first thing then which
is not naturall, yet preserveth a Horses body in good
state, is the ayre, which being pure, sharpe, cleare, and
piercing, giveth great life & nourishment to a horse :
but being contrary, that is, grosse, thicke, and full of
putrification, it cannot chuse but alter the good Ha-
bit of his body, and breed in him many infirmities.
Therefore every *Farrier* shall have great respect to
the ayre wherein a horse either liveth, or was bred in,
as if a Horse that was bred in a hot aire, come to live
in a cold, and through the exchange grow sicke,
the *Farrier* shall by warme diet, close house, and mo-
derate cloathing, bring his nature to a stronger ac-
quaintance : Also when a horse exceedeth in any of
the foure qualities, that is, in heate, moistnesse, cold-
nesse, or drinessse, it is best for him to live in that ayre
which is contrary to that quality, wherein he excee-
deth. Lastly, in many diseases, the change of the aire
is most wholsome, as shall be shewed at large in the
particular diseases.

For the meate and drink of a Horse, which is the
second thing not naturall in a horses composition, it

is not to be doubted, but whilst it is sweet, cleane and good, as Bread well made and baked, dry Oates, dry Beanes, dry Pease, sweet Hay, sweet Straw, or short grasse, so long it nourisheth and preserveth the horses body: But if it be stusy, raw, corrupt and unclean, or if he eat Tares, Fitches, Rye, or Barley, then must he needs be unsound, and full of infirmities: Therefore the *Farrier* shall bee carefull to keepe him from all such foods as breed naughty evill Bloud: as for his water, the more pure, it is the better; and the more muddy, thicke, and pleasant, so much the more unhealthfull.

Now for this moving and rest, that is, either his travell or standing still, which is the third thing not naturall in a horses composition, doubtles they be great *preservers* of a horses health; for as moderate exercise dissolveth grosse humours, ingendreth appetite, and addeth strength unto the limbes, so likewise indifferent Rest causeth digestion, comforteth the sinewes, and maketh the heart cheerful against ensuing labor. But on the contrary parr, immoderate travell or exercise, when a horse is ridden beyond his strength, breedeth many dangerous and mortall sicknesses, as the foundring in the *Body*, the Consumption in the *Lungs* and *Liver*, molten grease, and such like, besides the pissing of blood, *manginess*, *farby*, and such like: All which inward diseases crave strong *Purges*, and the outward *sharpe* and *corroding* medicines. Immoderate Rest, which is when a Horse doth stand long still without any Exercise. Feeding fou'e and grossly is as great an enemy to a horses health as the other: for it congregateth and bindeth together all sorts of

ill humours, breeds corruption in the bloud, rottenesse in the flesh, and generally as many diseases as any ill diet whatsoever.

The sleepe or watch of a Horse (which is the fourth thing in our Composition) is so necessary a comfort to a horse, that he cannot live without it; it is the greatest moover of digestion: and so consequently gives comfort to the whole body. For whilst the Horse sleeps, the *Power animal* doe take their rest, which otherwise would be over-wearied, and neither able to discharge their duties, nor to continue their actions and operations, which is the giving off feeling and moving only: and whilst a horse doth sleepe, the powers naturall have more liberty to doe their worke, in concocting the meate, and comforting the body; In so much, as I account sleep to be the onely quieting of the senses, or dayned by Nature to ingender strength. Sleepe is begotten by sweete, fatty, and grosse vapours, (and not by their Contraries) which are raised from the heart to the braine; with the coldnesse of which braine, those vapours being congealed and thickned together, doe stop the pipes of the sensitive spirits, so as they cannot resort to the instruments of the Senses, to give the body feeling & moving, wherby the body at that time is deprived of those motions. And according as those vapours do more or lesse fill the pipes, so is the horses sleep more or lesse sound and undisturbed; but when this sleep shall at any time grow into excessse, & you shall perceive a horse to sleep beyond both nature and custome, then you shall know that such sleepe commeth from an evill habite of the body, and is a
signe

signe either of a *Letbargy* and a numbnesse of the spirits, or else that he hath some inward grieve and pain in his limbs when he standeth; which being eased by lying, makes him cover a continuall rest and sleeping. Now for the watch of a Horse, because it is the meer contrary to sleepe, there needs little to be said more then this; that as the excesse of the one sheweth the want of the other, so that the naturall working of either shewes the evill state of a horses body, and gives the *Farriers* warning to expect ensuing sicknesse.

Now for emptinesse and fulnesse (which is the fift not naturall Composer) forasmuch as it is onely an adding to, and a taking away: some *Farriers* have held opinion, that all Physicke belonging to a Horses body, consisteth in them two only; and truly I am of this minde, that whosoever can take away corruption and adde perfection, shall without doubt ever keep an able and substantiall body. But to our purpose of this fulnesse there are two sorts, the one fulnesse by excesse of humours, the other fulnesse by excesse of meate; either of which perturbing the spirits, are the grounds of sicknesse. Againe, excesse of humours are of two kinds, the one an equall encrease of all manner of humours gathered together, and the other a particular excesse either of too much *Melancholy fleagme*, or other watrish humours whatsoever, the first being rearmed in abundance of humours, the latter an excesse of evill juyce or nutriment: lastly, there is fulnesse in quantity, and fulnesse in quality. Fulnesse in quantity is when a horse is full of blood, or any other simple humour. Fulnesse in quality, is when any of those humours are too hot, or too

C 4

cold,

Cold, too grosse, or too thinne. Now for emptinesse, as all diseases of fulnesse must bee cured by it onely, so all diseases of emptinesse must bee healed by fulnesse, as by taking of *Blood*, by *Purge*, *Friktion*, *Scarification*, *Boxing*, *Sweating*, *Bathing*, and a world of such like, as shall bee very largely set forth hereafter, in it's proper place.

Lastly, touching the affections of a horses minde, you shall understand, that so farre forth as the sensitive Soule doth stretch, so far they have sence and feeling of affections, as namely, to love, to hate, to be angry, to rejoyce, to be sorry, and to feare : For all which there needs no great *Apology*, sith wee have it in daily experience : as who seeth not the love of some Horses to their Keepers, their hate to strangers, their anger in their fights, their joyes in their prides and wooings, their sorrowes in their sicknesses, and their feares unto their Riders : now these affections, sith many times they are the grounds of strange motions in the body ; therefore they ought carefully to bee looked unto by the *Farrier*, and that the Horse bee not over-pressed with any of them ; especially feare and hatred ; the first whereof compelleth the blood and spirits to fly to the inward parts ; and to leave the outward without sence or feeling : and the latter makes him to be unquiet, fierce, and raging, both together breeds distemperature in a Horse, and those distemperatures ingender mortall sicknesses. *And thus much for these fixe things, being beld not naturall in a Horses composition.*

CHAP. X.

Of Horses complexions.

HAVING spoken of those thirteene Naturall and not naturall things, whereof a Horses body is compounded, we will now in a somewhat more particular manner speake of the complexions of horses, which is one of the most necessary Faces that a *Farrier* can behold, both for the judging of a horses infirmities, and also for the true compounding of his medicines for every disease: Therefore you shall first understand, that by the colour of the horse you shall ever judge his complexion: For looke which of the Elements is most predominant in him, for that Element wee draw his complexion, as thus. If hee participate more of the fire then of any of the other Elements, then we hold him to be a cholerick horse, and his colour is either a bright *forrel*, a *coale blacke* without any white, or an *Iron gray* unchangeable, that is such a Gray as neither will ever turne a Daple gray, a White, or a Flea-bitten, and these Horses are of nature *light, hot, fiery*, and seldome of any great strength: these Horses are much subject to pestilent Fevers, Yellowes, and inflammations of the *Liver*. Therefore every *Farrier* shall bee carefull in his composing of any medicine for such a Horse, to purge choler, yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary strength in the potion or Drench: Because the Horse being in his best strength, not reputed strong, should you apply any violent thing to him that little strength being abated, there were great danger

danger in the confounding of the whole body.

If the horse participate more of the ayre then of the other Elements, then is he of a sanguine complexion, and his colour is either a bright Bay, or darke Bay, which hath neither skowling Countenance, mayly mouth, nor white flanke, or a white flea-bitten, white lyard like Silver, or black with a white *Star*, white rach, or white *foote*. These horses are of nature *pleasant, nimble, free, and of good strength*. The Diseases to them most incident, is Consumption of the *Liver, leprosie, glanders,* or any disease that is infectious. They are of a good strong constitution, and may endure strength in their Medicines, especially any thing that cooleth the Blood.

If the Horse participate more of the water then of the other Elements, then is he of a flegmatick complexion, and his colour is either milk-white, a yellow *Dun, Kite-glewd,* or a *Pydepall*, in whom there is an equall mixture of colours, that is, as much white as of the other colour: Otherwise if the Bay, the Blacke, or the Dun exceed the White, he is said to be of that complexion of which the colour is greatest. These horses are of nature slow, and apt to lose flesh: The Diseases which are most incident unto them; are *colds, head-ache, rheumes, staggers,* and such like. They are able to endure the reasonable strength of any Medicine, because the abundance of *flegme* which is in them, sufficeth both Nature, and the portion to worke upon: All cold simples are to them exceeding hurtfull, so are also they which are violently hot in the third degree: the first because it bindeth too soone; the latter because it disperseth too
fud-

suddainly, therefore simples of a moderate meane are the best.

If the Horse participate more of the earth then of the other Elements, then is he of a melancholy complexion, and his colour a *Mousse-dunne*, *Ruffet*, *Chestnut*, *Asbie gray*, *darke Bay*, with *mayly mouth*, *red* or *white flanke*, or a *reddish Bay*, having long white hair like *Goates* hair, growing on his leggs. These Horses are of nature heavy, and faint hearted: The diseases to them most incident, are inflammations in the *Spleene*, *Frenzie*, *Dropfie*, and such like: They are commonly of better strength then they will suffer to appeare by their actions, and are able to endure the strength of any reasonable medicine: All cicatrizing and dry simples are hurtfull unto them; the cold and moist are the most profitable.

Having thus shewed you these foure Complexions, *Cholericke*, *Sanguine*, *Flegmatick*, and *Melancholy*, together with their qualities and strengths, you shall understand now that amongst *Farriers* there is another Complexion, or fifth Constitution, which is called the composition or mixture of complexions: That is, whensoever a Horse doth participate of all the foure Elements equally, and in due proportion, none being greater or lesser then another, and this complexion of all other is the best, and most perfect, and the Horse which is of this Complexion, is ever of one of these colours; that is to say, either a faire Browne Bay, dapled or not dapled, a Daple gray, a Blacke full of Silver haire, or a faire Roane Red or Blacke. And these Horses are of nature most excellent, most temperate, strongest, gentlest, and most health-

healthfull : though they may have any disease, yet are they naturally inclined to no Disease : But what infirmity soever falleth unto them, is meerely accidentall, and not through any overflow of naturall distemperature. All medicines must bee compounded for them according to the nature of the sicknesse, and the time of their languishment : For if the sicknesse bee young and new bred, then are they able to receive any well composed Receipt; but if it bee old, and the inward Powers and Faculties feeble, then you must bee carefull to helpe Nature; by adding to every medicine of what nature soever, some *simple* of Comfort, that as ill humours bee cleansed, so strength may still bee repaired and maintained. And thus much for Complexions.

CHAP. XI.

Of inward sicknesse, the causes and severall kinds thereof.

Sith I have already passed over all those things which have a naturall and perfect working in a horses body, and doe maintaine, uphold, and preserve the same in good state and health, except accidentally they bee encountred and crossed by some excessse, either in diet or in exercise : it shall now be meet, that wee begin to speake of the things which be contrary and against nature, which are all those things whereby at any time the healthfull estate of the horses body is any way impeached : and they be three in number; that is, the *Causes*, the *Sicknesse*, and the *Accidents* which follow every sicknesse.

Now

Now the *Causes* of sicknesse are all unnaturall affects, and evill dispositions, which going before, do as it were by violence, bring sicknesse after them, and of these causes there be two sorts, some internal, some externall: The internal be those which breed within the body of the Horse, as evill humours, evill obstructions, and evill juyce. Externall are they which communicate with the outward parts of the body, as heat, cold, wormes, and such like, of which I shall speake more in the second booke: And for so much as I intend at the beginning of every particular disease, to shew the cause of that disease, I will at this time speake no more of that subject.

Now for *sicknesse* it selfe, which is any thing that is contrary to nature, it is divided into three generall kinds: the first, an *Evill temperature*, the second, an *evill state and composition*, and the third a *loosening or dividing of unity*. Now of these two latter, I intend not to speake in this place, because they appertain to Chyrurgery, which I reserve for the second booke: But for the first kinde, which is an evill temperature, it is taken two-fold, that is, either simple or compound: Simple, when one quality only doth abound, or exceed, as to be too moist, or too dry: compound, when more qualities then one do grow into excessse, as for a horse to be too hot, and too dry, or too cold, and too moist. Againe, sicknesses are said some to be long, *Consumptions*, *Glanders*, and such like, which linger and weare a horse away by small degrees. Some short, as the *Stagers*, *Tellowes*, *Anticor*, and such like, which as soon as they be perceiv'd, so soon they be mortall.

Now

Now of inward sicknesses, some do occupy all the whole body, some but particular parts: those which occupy the whole body, are *Feveres*, the *Pestilence*, *Convulsions*, and such like: those which occupy parts or members, are colds which annoy the head; surfeits which perplexe the stomacke: and so likewise all outward infirmities proper to every particular member, as *Splents* upon the Legges, *Spavens* on the Hoofes, *Pearles* in the eyes, and such like, as shall be amply shewed hereafter, with their severall cures. And thus much for sickness and the severall kinds thereof.

CHAP. XII.

Of the signes of sickness, and of what nature it consisteth.

Endeavour all you can to know the horses disease for it once known is half the cure. **T**HE signes and faces by which sickness is discerned, are many, and almost numberlesse: yet in the best sort that I may, I will shew you such, and so many, as shall amply serve for any mans understanding. Know then first that there be, according to the rules in Physicke, foure speciall wayes to judge of inward and outward infirmities. First, by accidents, as by the shape, number, quantity, and place of the member grieved: for if it carry not his true proportion, or be more or lesse in number or quantity, or out of his proper place, then questionlesse it is diseased Secondly, by alteration of the quality, as when it is either too hot, too cold, too moist, or too dry. Thirdly, when any member of the body is hindered from doing his Office; as when the Eye cannot see, or the foot cannot tread. And fourthly, by excrements,

ments, as by his dung or Urine. But forasmuch as in the speculation of these qualities, many of the ignorant sort may be either amazed, distract, or deceived, and that my desire is to give an absolute satisfaction to all sorts of people, I will briefly and plainly shew you the most undeceiveable signes of all sorts of inward sicknesses, as thus: If a horse be slower in labour, and duller to the *Sparre* then hee hath beene accustomed; if hee be shorter breathed, if his eares hang down more then they were wont: if his haire be more staring; if his Flankes be more then usually hollow: if hee burne betwixt his Eares, or about his Pasternes: if in travaile his stomach faile him; or his Mouth, that in labour was usually wont to be Foaming become dry: all these are most apparant signes of inward Sicknesse.

When a horse holdeth downe his head, which was wont to be of a cheerfull countenance, it is a signe eyther of a *Feaver*, *Head-ach*, or else *Foundring* in the *Body*.

If a horse be dimme of sight which was clear sighted, is a signe either of *Head-ach*, the *Staggers*, or *Sore eyes*.

When a horse turneth his head backe-ward to the place grieved, if it be to the *right side*, it is a signe of *obstructions* in the *Liver*: but if he turne it downe to his belly, that it is a signe either of *Cholicke*, *Bots*, or *Wormes*.

When a horse hath water running from his mouth it is a signe of the *Staggers*, or *wet Cough*.

If a horses breath stinks, or foule matter issues from his Nostrills, it is a signe of an *Ulcer* in the *Nose* or *Head*:

or if he snarls more then ordinarie in travelling.
If a horse be cold about the eares.
or that his mouth be too foamy, or clammy.

If the horse turne up the whites of eyes it is a signe he is in great paine & if it is like or continue.

Head; but if the matter be white, then it is a signe of *Glanders*: if the matter be blacke, then it is a signe of the mourning of the *Chine*; but if the matter be yellow, then it betokens the Consumption of the *Liver*: but if he cast little lumps out of his mouth, then it betokens the Consumption or rottenesse of the *Lungs*.

If a horses body and breath be hot, it is a signe of a *Fever*, and heate of the stomach, if therewithall he forsake his meate, it is a signe of inflammation in his *Liver*, and either of dry or moist *Tellowes*.

If the temple of a horses head be very hollow, it is a signe either of the *Strangle* or old age.

Shortnesse of breath, and a heaving flank, is a signe either of a *Fever*, or the *Strangle*, but if the passage of the throat be stopped, it is a signe the filme of the *Lungs* is broken, and the *Spleen* troubled; or else broken-winded.

If any thing lye on both sides the fore-head, which may be felt beat, it is a signe of the *Stagger*.

If there be any thing swelling about the ears, it is a signe of the *Pole-evil*: swelling under the eare, is a signe of the *River*; and swelling in the mouth, a signe either of *Canker*, *Flaps*, *Lampasse*.

Swelling under the throate is a signe of the *Glanders*; and swelling about the tongue roots, a signe of the *Strangle*: But if there be about the tongue roots nothing but little smal knots, like waxe kirkels, then it is a signe but of cold only.

Swelling on the left side, is a signe of a Sick *Spleene*. Swelling in the belly and legs a signe of the *Dropsie*, and swelling in the flank of *Cholicke* onely.

To

To cough, or to offer to cough, is a signe either of the Glanders, of the mourning of the Chinc, of a feather in the weasand, of the wet or dry Cough, of the filme broken, of the dry malady, of a consumption, or of foundring in the body.

Staggering is a signe either of a fever, of the Staggers, or of swaying in the necke; but if he stagger or role behind onely, then it is a signe either of foundring in the body, or of pain in the Kidneys.

Trembling is a signe of a fever, or of foundring in the body; and here is to be noted, that a horse which trembleth after the drinking of cold water, hath, during that time of trembling, a very certaine fit of an Ague, and if any Farrier or other, will but observe it, he shall finde that the horse, after he hath done trembling, will burne and glow in as great extreimity at least an houre and an halfe after; and some horses after their burning, will sweat also.

The hollownesse of a horses back is a signe of a dry malady, or the Dropsie.

Haire-staring is a signe either of a cold Stomack, or of foundring in the body, but generally of a cold, or want of Cloaths.

*the discoloration
especially about
the flank*

If a horse stale with much paine, it is a signe either of foundring in the body, the winde Cholicke, or the Stone; and if the Urine which comes from him bee yellow, it is a signe of the Glanders, but if it be blackish and thick, it is a signe of paine in the Kidneys.

Leanness and gauntnesse is a signe of Hide-bound or of the Consumption, of the dry malady, of foundring in the body, inflammation of the liver, the yellows, Cholicke, or Wormes.

Laxitvenesse, or loosenesse of the body, is a signe of a hot Liver.

Cr Stivenesse in the body is a signe of dry Yellows, or of diseases in the Gaule.

If a horses dung stinke, it is a signe of a hot Liver: if it have no smell, then of a cold Liver; but if it bee undigested, then either of a Consumption, or of a dry Malady.

If a horse go stiffe, it is a signe either of writhing, hiping, stifling or foundring either in body or legs: if he goe crouching behind, and stiffe before, then the griefe is in his fore-legs, but if hee goe onely weake behinde, then is the griefe in his hinder Legges onely.

If a horse desire extraordinarily to lye downe on his right side, it is a signe of heat in the Liver. If on the left side, then of a diseased Spleen, if he be oft up and downe & finding no rest, then it is a signe of Bors, Wormes, Chollicke, or griping in the belly: if when he is downe he spread himselfe abroad, it shewes the Dropisie, if he groane when he is downe, it shewes either a sicke Spleen, moist Yellows, Chollicke, Bors, or filme-broken: if he be not able to rise when hee is downe, then either mortall weaknesse, foundring in the body or legs.

To be troubled with much winde, is a signe either of griefe in the Spleen, or losse of much bloud.

If a horse forsake his meate, it is a signe either of a Fever, Head-ach, Strangle, Straggers, Consumption, or dry Malady, Anticor, foundring in the body, a hot and consumed liver, moist Yellows, Chollicke, or the Worme, but if when he forsaketh his provender, he doth

& woud much
in y^e flank.

So likewise it is
a signe of a dan-
gerous sicknesse
if he never lie
downe at all.

It is a morient
signe if the
taile & forep
are easily put
off.

doth as it were, chavellor chaw a little Hay, and in his Chawing doth make a certaine sharpe noyse in his Mouth, as if his tongue could not well part from the roose without a kinde of chanking, it is then a certaine *signe* that the Horse is troubled with the falling of the Palate of the Mouth, a disease which onely commeth by over-much travaile, or too fore a burthen.

If a horse desire to eat much, and drink little, it is a *signe* of a cold Liver, but if he desire to *drinke* much and eat little, it is then a *signe* either of a Fever, rotten Lungs, heat in the *Stomacke*, heat in the Liver, or the dry Yellows.

If a horse both *eats* and *drinks* with an extraordinary gredinesse, it is *signe* of rotten Lungs, or a diseased Splene.

Lazye and heavy going, contrary to true nature, is a *signe* either of a Fever, *stake spleene*, Yellows, or else obstruction of the Liver.

If a horse strike with his foote at his belly, it is a *signe* of the Cholicke: but if when he *strikes*, he strike with his tayle also, then it is either Bottes, or rough Wormes.

If a horse be scabby, and ulcerous all over his body, and about his necke, it is a *signe* of the Mangy: if it be an Ulcer full of *filth*, creeping alongst a vein, it is the Farcy: if spreading abroad only in one place, it is a *Canker*: if the Ulcer be hollow and crooked, it is a *Ristula*: but if it be a spongy Wart full of blood, it is then an *Ambery*.

If a horses tongue hang out, and be swolne, it is a *signe* of the Strangle.

Feed a horse
leane by lay-
ing your hand
on his left side

To conclude, if a horse in health beate short,
thicke, and fast in the flank, it is a signe of sicknesse
in the Lungs and Lights, which we call *Broken win-*
ded, with a world of other such like signes and to-
kens, as shall be more amply declared in every parti-
cular Chapter. *If he beate in the flank & have*
broken wind, it is a signe of squinny & then it is
CHAP. XV.

General observations in the physicking of
Horses.

After you can by these Signes and Characters,
judge and approve either the health or sicknesse
of a Horse, it is then necessary that you learne some
generall Rules and Observations which belong to
the Physicking of a Horse; lest that either by your
rashnesse, unskilfulnesse, or uncleannesse in what
you go about to do, you commit errors more grosse
then the Medicine you administer hath power to do
good. Know then first, that whensoever you goe
about to give your Horse any inward potion or
drench, you must first take very carefull heed, that
your drinke be no more then Milke warme: for there
is nothing more mortall to a horse then the scalding
of his stomacke. Next, you must bee very carefull
that you give the Drench easily and gently, least in
making too much hast, the drinke passe into his we-
sand or winde-pipe, and so force him to an extream
coughing, and almost suffocate him: which if it doe,
you must then let his head loose, and walke him up
and downe till the passion be past. Lastly, you shall
observe, in giving a Drench, to draw out the horses
tongue

tongue before you put in the horne, and then presently let it loose againe : for that will compell him to swallow whether he will or no. And this is principally to bee used when you give your Horse pills, as Butter and Garlicke, Butter and Sanders, or Butter and Saven: Also, every drench will worke the better, the longer you keepe the sicke horse fasting, both before and after his medicine; wherein is likewise to be observed, that moderate exercise (as gently walking, or trotting up and downe, according to the horses strength after his drench received) is most wholesome, and maketh the medicine worke a great deale the better.

You shall likewise observe if your horses *sickenesse* be a Fever, to mixe alwaies your simples either with warme water, with hony, or with oyle; but if the disease be Coughes, Rhumes, or any thing that proceedeth of cold causes, then you shall mixe your simples with good Ale, or Wine; and if your horse be brought low and weake with *sicknesse*, then you shall mixe your simples with milke or Egges.

You shall also observe, that in blood-letting, you must take but halfe so much from a young Colt, as from an old Horse, and but the fourth part from a yearling foale: also in letting blood, you must carefully regard the age and strength of your horse, taking more or lesse according to his ability of body. Lastly, letting of blood is either to divert *sicknesse* and preserve *health*, or to refresh and coole the spirits, or to diminish blood, or else to purge grosse and bad humours.

Observe before you let your horse blood; first moderately

derately to chafe or exercise him : then let him rake rest a day before his letting blood , and three dayes after, not forgetting that *April* and *October* are the two principall seasons of the yeare for that purpose, except urgent occasion be ministred.

Observe whensoever you Rake your horse with your hand (which is to draw his Ordure out of his Fundament when hee cannot dong) that then first you annoint all your hand with Sallet-oyle , or butter : the like you must ever doe when you put up any Suppositary ; but when you administer any Glister, you shall then but annoint the Glister-pipe only. Many other observations there are, which be more particular, and those you shall finde annexed to the severall cure of every disease. Thus much then of these generall observations.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Urine and Excrements of a Horse.

AFter you have made your memory acquainted with the Signes and observations before specified, and so in the end finde a Horse, which by the demonstration of some of these Signes appeareth most certainly to be sick and diseased : My advise is then (if conveniently you may, and that the violence of the Sicknesse doe not urge the contrary) that before you administer any thing unto him, in any case you see his urine, from which urine you shall reape these knowledges.

First, if the urine of a horse be of a pale, whitish, yellow colour, like unto Amber, and therewithall somewhat

*N.B. if an
horse being
sick doe not
draw his yard
to urine but let
it drop from
him it is a signe
of death.*

what strong smelling, and not very cleare, then you shall be assured that the Horse is in good state of body, strong and healthfull, but if it be extraordinary white, and as it were creamy, then it is a signe the horse hath weake Reines, and is subject to the Stone, and the stopping of the Kidneys.

If the urine of a horse be somewhat high coloured, bright and clear like Lamber, and not like Amber, or like a cup of strong March beere, then it sheweth the Horse hath inflammation in his blood, and that he hath either a Fever, or else some great surfeit; but if it be red like blood, then is his inflammation more great, and his surfeit is onely an over-heate, taken by over-riding; insomuch that if present remedy be not applyed either by scouring, or other healthfull physicke, the Horse cannot chuse but fall into some mortall sicknesse.

If the urine of a horse be of a pale greenish colour thicke and slimy, it is a signe of a weake backe, and consumption of the Seed.

Lastly, if the horses urine be high coloured, yet therewithall cloudy, and full of blacknesse, then it is a signe that the horses sicknesse is mortall, and hardly to be preserved by any Physicke; but if the Blacknesse and Cloudinesse of the urine doe not remain, (as it were) bound up together in one body, but is broken and dispersed, shewing many Clouds in one water, then it is a signe that the violence of the sicknesse departeth away, and there is great hope, by good government, that the Horse will recover his health as at the beginning.

Now for the Excrements or dung of a horse, which

is no lesse worthy of note then the urine. You shall first understand, that if his dung be ever of alliance with his food, I meane either in part or whole, coloured like unto that he eateth, as thus for example : If your horse go at grasse, his dung will ever be *green*, and the brighter such *greenenesse* is, and being in a meane betweene hardnesse and softnesse, the sounder and in more perfect estate the horse standeth ; but if the greenenesse be bright, yet the ordure so soluble and loose, that it commeth from the horse like water, then you shall understand, that either the horse hath eaten up some feather, or else he hath an inward coldnesse both in his stomach and bowels.

If a horses dung be of a reasonable thicknesse, neither too costive nor too soluble, yet the greenenesse inclined to some blacknesse, it is a signe that the horse hath a hot stomach, and is easily subject either to the yellows or staggers.

If the horses dung be in round hard pellers, and of a blackish green colour, like the dung of a sheep, or a Deer, then it is without fail, that the horse hath had some great surfeit, either by over-riding, or by ill food, or else is certainly posselt either of the yellows or fever, or foundred in the body.

Now if your horse be fed onely upon straw, then his colour will be of a high coloured yellow, rather costive then soluble, and the graine thereof long, and not well couched together : And all these bee good signes of great healthfulnesse, but if the colour bee inclined to rednesse, or if it be exceeding dry without moisture; or if it be thinne, like the dung of an Oxe or Cow, they all be apparant signes of inward sicknesse

sickenesse, but if the rednesse turne to blackenesse, and that his ordure doth loose the strength of it's smelling, then it is a great signe of death and mortality.

If your horse be fed with hay and provender, then your perfect and sound dung will be of a brown yellow colour, the graine somewhat long, yet moist and well fixt together; but if the brownesse turn to rednesse, it is a signe of distemperature; and if it turn to blacknesse, then of death. Now for the smell of this dung, you must understand, that the more provender you give, the greater will be the smell, and the lesse provender the lesse smell.

Lastly, if you feed your horse onely upon provender, as bread, oates, and such like, then the dung which shewes a perfect and a sound body, will be of a pale yellow colour, like course honey, firme, like a thicke salve, having within it when you tread upon it or break it, little white graines, like those which are in sope; or if the dung be harder, like the ordinary ordure of a man, it is not amisse: For both be signs of health and strength; and if the dung looke red, then it is a signe that the horse hath taken some inward heat, and his stomack and bowels doe rest still inflamed.

If his dung be browne and slimy, or if it shine and look greasie, it is a signe that he hath had some of his inward grease molten, and that it resteth and putrieth in his body; but if with his dung you see him voyd great clods and lumps of grease, then you may bee assured that his grease was molten, but nature hath overcome infirmity, and the worst danger is
past

past already; but if the dung be matter undigested, so that you may either perceive therein whole cornes, or whole bits of bread, it is a signe the horse hath either a late surfeir, or is entring into a mortall consumption. Lastly, if his dung be blacke, or have lost the *Smell*, it is an apparant signe of Death. And thus much for Urine and Excrements, and the severall knowledges attained by them.

CHAP. XV.

Of Fevers in generall, and the divers kinde thereof.

THat horses have Fevers, and those Fevers of divers and sundry natures, there is nothing more certaine, as by strict observation may daily be perceived, especially when we use either much travell, or disorderly diet: for questionlesse from these two, and none other heads, doe spring most Fevers whatsoever. But first, that I may give you an account what a horses Fever is, you shal know that it is an unnaturall and immoderate heate, which proceeding first from the heart, disperseth it selfe not onely through all the arteries, but even the veines of a horses body, and thereby hindreth all the actions and wholesome motions of the same. Now of Fevers some *Barriers* make three sorts, the first, those which breed in the spirits, being inflamed and set on fire beyond the ordinary course of nature: The second, those which breed in the humours, being likewise distempered by heate: And the third, those which breed in the firme parts of the body, and are continually

nually hot. Now I for your better memory, will divide them onely into two parts, that is to say: Ordinary, and Extraordinary. The ordinary Fevers are all those which are bred either in the spirits, or in the humours: as namely, *Quotidians*, *Tertians*, *Quartans*, *Fevers continuall*, *Fevers Hestick*, *Fevers in Autumne, Summer or Winter*. And the Fevers extraordinary, are all those which are bred in the firme parts of the body, and are ever hot, as *Pestilent Fevers* and the *Plague*, which are ever accompanied with *Fleers*; and the *Fever accidentall*, which proceedeth from the anguish and paine of some mortall wound,

Now for the cause from whence these Fevers doe proceed: you shall understand that all these which I call Ordinary Fevers, doe generally spring either from surfeit by extreame labour, or some surfeit by naughty meate, as *raw Pease*, *raw Fitches*, *raw Oates*, *mouldy* and unwholesome *Bread*, and such like: Sometimes they doe proceede from the extreame violence and heate of the Sunne beames, when travailling with disorderly haste in the extreamest heate of the day, those two heats mixed together, *Labour* and the *Sunne*, there cannot chuse but be bred in the horse some mortall inflammation; and for mine own part, I have seene horses fall downe dead in the highway: For whose deaths, I could find no reason more then their *Labour* and the heate of the Sunne. Fevers sometimes spring from a contrary cause, as from extreame cold, in this manner: When a horse in the Winter-time hath bene travailed sore all the day, and is brought into the house hot, if after his bloud and inward po-

wers

wers are settled and cooled: you then presently, or the same night give him cold water as much as hee will drinke, you shall see him out of hand fall into an extreame quaking, and from that quaking into a violent burning, with all other distemperatures of a Fever.

Now for extraordinary Fevers, they ever proceede eyther from corruption of blood, or from infection of the ayre; and albeit these Fevers are not usually knowne unto our Farriers, yet they are as common as the former; onely the violence of them is so great, and the poyson so strong, that they ever carry with them some other mortall sicknesse, as namely, the *Staggers*, *Tellowes*, *Anticor*, and such like, which never are, but a pestilent Fever ever goeth before them: And they, like the markes of the plague, are seldome seene till the cures be desperate; and then the unskilfull Farrier, neither noting, nor knowing, if he did not, the effects of the Feaver, doth ever mis-call the name of the horses infirmity, and taking the lesser for the greater, failes many times to doe the good office and cure which hee intendeth.

Now the signes to know the Fever, be these: First, hee will ever hold downe his head, hee will quake and tremble; but when his trembling is past; then will his body burne, and his breath be hot, he will breath fast, and his flanke will beate, hee will reel, hee will forsake his meate, his eyes will bee swolne and closed up, yet therewithall much watring; his flesh will, as it were, fall from his bones, and his stones will hang downe low, he will oft lye downe,
and

rife up againe: all his desire will be to drinke; yet at no time drinke much, neyther will hee at any time sleepe.

Now for the generall cure of these generall *Fevers*, you shall understand, that some *Farrriers* use to let the horse blood in the Face, Temples, and palate of the Mouth, and the first day to give him no meate, but warme drink only, by a little at a time: and after the finest grasse, or finest hey wet in water, keeping him warme, and often walking him up and downe in a temperate ayre, and giving him good store of Litter, then when he begins to mend, to feede him with Barley sodden, husked and beaten; as you do Wheate before you make *Furmety*. And this cure is not amisse, for it agreeth with the ancient experience of the *Italians*: but in our English Horses, (through the Climate as I suppose) it often faileth.

The best cure therefore that I have found, is, as soone as you perceive him to begin to shake, to give him the yolkes of three or foure egges, beaten with seaven or eight spoonfull of *Aqua-vitæ* to drinke, and then chase him up and downe till his shaking be past, and then fet him up close and warme, and with many cloathis make him sweate an houre: Let his food be oats very wel dried & sifted, and once a day some washt in Ale. If his shaking fit be past before you perceive his sicknesse, you shall only give him a pint of *Muskadine*, and an ounce of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and brewed together to drinke, and so let him rest, feeding him by little and little, as aforesaid, and giving him no water but such as is warme: and this Order you shall observe at the beginning of every

every fit, if you can note them or else every morning if his sicknesse have no ceasing.

CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Quotidian, or every dayes Fever
and the cure.*

THe *Quotidian*, or every days *Fever*, is that which taketh a Horse, and holdeth him with one fit once every day; and will at first appeare some-what violent, but seldome or never endureth long, if the *Farrrier* have any discretion. It proceedeth most commonly from extreame riding, either after water, or a full stomacke; and then suddainly after his heate, being thrust into a stable, and neither stopt nor rubbed, a suddaine coldnesse to that suddaine heate begets a shaking, and so consequently the effects of a *Fever*.

The signes to know it, are watrish and bloud-shorten eyes, short, and hot breathing, panting, loathing of his meare, and stiffnesse in his limbes; but above these, to know it is a *Quotidian*, you shall observe that these signes, together with the sicknesse, will not last above sixe or eight houres in one day, and then he will be cheerefull and in health againe, till very neere the same houre of the next day, at what time his fit will begin againe. And heere is to be noted, that the more it altereth the houres, the more hope there is of his health, as if it take him at seyen of the clocke of the one day, and at three of the clocke of the other, and so forth. The cure is, you shall onely during his fit, give him nothing but a sweete

sweete Mash made of Malt and Water, being luke-warme, and walke him gently up and downe in a temperate ayre; then as soone as his fit is past, you shall set him up, and rub his body and legges exceedingly: then foure houres after you shall give him this drinke: Take of strong Ale a quart, and boyle therein halfe a handfull of Worme-wood, of long Pepper and Graines two ounces, of the best Treadle two ounces, and of the powder of dried Rue one ounce: Now when a third part of the Ale is consumed, take it from the fire and straine it, then put therein three ounces of Sugar-candy beaten to powder; then when it is luke-warme, give it him with a Horne to drinke. Do this twice at the least, or thrice, if his fies continue, and there is no doubt but he will recover.

CHAP. XVII.
Of the Tertian Fever.

THe *Tertian Fever* is that which commeth every other day, holding the Horse with one sicke day, and one sound: it is not so violent as the *Quotidian*, but much longer lasting; it happeneth ofttest in the Spring time of the yeare, when bloud begins to encrease, and most commonly to colts and young horses: it proceeds of the same causes that the *Quotidian* doth, and sometimes of ranknesse, and ill blood. The signes to know it, are all the signes formerly spoken of, and this as the chiefest, that the horse will bee apparantly sicke, as it were on the Monday, then apparantly well on the Tuesday, and sicke on the Wed-

Wednesday following. This *Feaver* is never scene, but it beginneth with shaking. The cure therefore is, as soone as you perceiue the horse to beginne to shake, you shall take a certaine hearbe, or rather a weede called *Stone-crop*, and bruising it in a Morter, take some foure spoonfull of the iuyce thereof, and infuse it in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the Horse to drinke: then walke him gently up and downe in some temperate ayre for an houre, then set him up, and with the helpe of cloathes put him into a sweate for an other houre, then coole him; and in any wise till his fits leaves him, let him drinke no cold Water, and let his Provender be the oldest and dryest Oates you can get, only upon his good daies be fore his fits come, keepe him very long fasting and empty.

CHAP. XVIII.
Of the Quartan Fever.

THE *Quartan Fever* is that which some Farriers call a third dayes sicknesse, as thus: If his fit begin on the Munday, he will be well on the Tuesday and Wednesday, and sicke againe on the Thursday. It proceedeth from the same causes that the *Tertian fever* doth, yet in his working is not so apparantly violent, but of much longer continuance: for if great care and helpe be not, these *Feavers* will last some a quarter of a yeare, some halfe a yeare, and some a whole yeare. There needs no other signe to know it, then the comming and going of the fits, as hath been declared already. And for the cure, it is the selfe

selfe-same which is described in the former Chapter for the *Tertian Fever*: onely if his fits doe not leave him at the first taking of the medicine, you shall then give it him againe the second time, but not above thrice at the most in any wise.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Fever continuall.

THe *Fever continuall*, is that which continueth without any intermission, and it is most dangerous and violent: for there is in it the effects of all the former fevers, every one taking place as the other endeth: as the *Quotidian* beginning, is pursued by a *Tertian*, and a *Tertian* by a *Quartan*, and those two supply so many houres till the *Quotidian* doth begin againe. This kinde of continuall Fever most often springeth from some inflammation or violent heate ingendred in the principall members about the heart: and the signes thereof are want of rest, and falling away of the flesh, besides certaine inflammations or swellings, which will appeare about his withers and flanks. The cure is, first to purge his head by needling, the manner whereof you shall finde in a particular chapter hereafter: which done, you shall give him this drinke, take of *Jermander* two ounces, of *Gum-dragant*, and dried *Roses*, of each halfe an ounce, beat them into fine powder, and put them into a quart of Ale, adding thereunto of oyle-Olive two ounces, and as much honey; and when it is lukewarme, give it the horse to drinke: then walke him a little space, and after set him up close and warme,

E

keepe

keepe him from cold water, and let his provender be dry oates.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Heſticke Fever.

THe *Heſticke* Fever in horses, is a dangerous and mortall Fever, being in a horse the first originall breeder of a consumption: it is a certaine hot and dry humour which runneth between the skinne and the flesh, proceeding from a sieke stomach, which having bin scalded with hot drinckes, (as those ill dieted running horses be, which feed upon much spice, or those which take hot drenches upon every foolish and slight occasion) hath almost cleane lost the power of digestion: It sometimes happens to those horses which men too carefully teaching to drinke Beere and Wine, doe so continually apply them thereunto, that in the end they become subject to this sicknesse. The signes to know it; the horse will never eate with any appetite, and when you draw out his tongue, you shall finde it raw, and almost scalded; his flesh will bee loose and flaggy, and his body subject to a continuall trembling. The cure is, first wash his tongue either with the sirrop of Mulberries, or with Allome, running water, sage & woodbine leaves boiled together, then give him fasting in a morning this drinke. Take of Aloes one ounce, of Garlick half an ounce, of Licoras and Anise-seeds of each a dram, beaten to powder, and let him drinke it with a quart of white Wine, luke-warme, and made sweet with sugar-candy or honey: let him drink

drinke no drinke but warme mashes of malt and water, and let his meate be sweet hay, or greene Corne blades: and ever after his medicine let him be chafed a little, kept fasting two or three houres, and stand warme and well cloathed.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Fever taken in Autumne, or the fall of the leafe.

AL these Fevers before spoken of, do for the most part, commonly happen to horses in the Spring-time of the yeare, by reason that the new blond is ever aptest to be inflamed: yet notwithstanding wee find by experience, that fevers will sometimes come at the fall of the leafe, which we call *Autumne*, & they are of longer continuance then the other. The signes are none other but such as I have already declared: For they are the same fevers, onely altering the time of the yeare. If therefore your horse do chance to catch a fever at the fall of the leafe, you shall let him blood on his necek-veine, and in the palate of his mouth, and you shall give him to drinke the same drinke which is formerly set downe for the Feaver continuall, and there is no doubt of his recovery.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Fever taken in the Summer-season.

A Fever taken in the Summer season, is the worst of all ordinary Feavers whatsoever, especially all such as are taken in the Dogge-dayes; because according

according to the opinion of Farriers, all accidents are then most furious: the especiall signes of this Feaver are, that his Arteries will beate most palpably, and wheresoever he staeth, there you shall perceive hee sheddeth his seed also. The cure, according to the Ancients, is to let him bloud in the great veine which hee hath on his hinder haunch, almost foure inches beneath his fundament; but for mine owne part, because that veine is not easily found of every ignorant Smith, and that many times by mistaking they may cut the Artery in stead of the veine, I hold it fully as good to let him bloud on the necke-veine, which done, give him this drinke two houres and an halfe after; take the iuyce of a handfull of purslaine, and mixe it with Gum-dragant, Aniseeds, and Damaske rose-leaves beaten to powder; then put them into a quart of strong Ale, made sweet either with Sugar-candy, or honey, and faile not to give him this drinke three mornings together, keepe the horse warme during his sicknesse.

CHAP. XXIII

Of the Fever taken in the winter-season.

A Fever taken in the Winter, is not so dangerous to the life of a Horse, as the Fever before mentioned; yet it is a Fever which will continue long, and aske great circumspection in the cure: the causes thereof are the same which are formerly described; and the signes are no other then hath beene already declared. Touching the cure, it is thus: you shall first purge his head by making him sneeze, that done, you shall

shall let him bloud both in the necke and the palate of the mouth, and then two houres and a halfe after give him this drinke. Take of Rue three ounces, of round pepper halfe an ounce; of bay berries, and the seed of Smallage, of each halfe an ounce, boyle these in white wine, and give it him to drinke luke-warm. Other Farriers use to take a pint of new milk, and to put therein two ounces of sallet-oyle, of saffron one scruple, and of Myrrh two scruples, of the seede of Smallage a spoonfull, and to make him drink it luke-warme, but the horse which taketh this drinke, must be in good strength, for if he be brought low, it is somewhat too strong.

The ancient *Italians* did use for this Fever, to give this drinke: Take of *Aristolochia* halfe an ounce, of *Gentian*, of Hyslope, of wormwood, of Sothernwort, of each halfe an ounce, of dry fat Figs three ounces, of the seed of Smallage an ounce and a halfe, of Rue halfe an handfull, boyle them all with running water in a cleane vessell, till almost halfe be consumed, then when it begins to thicken, take it from the fire, strain it, and give it the horse luke-warme. Now there are not any of these drinks but are sufficient for the Cure; but the first is best. Now for his dyet, be sure to keep him fasting long before his fits come, and let his drinke be onely warme mashes of malt and water. Now if you perceive that his fits continue, and bring the horse to any weaknesse, you shal then to comfort and quicken the naturall heate of the horse, rub and chafe all his body over, either in the Sunne, or by some soft fire, with some wholesome friction, of which frictions you shall finde choise in a particu-

ler Chapter hereafter following, together with their severall natures and uses.

CHAP. XXIII.

*Of the Fever which commeth by Surfeit of
meate only.*

THe Fever which commeth by surfeit of meat only, without either disorder in travaile, or corruption of blood, is knowne by these signes: the Horse will heave and beate upon his backe, his breath will be short, hot, and dry, and his winde he will draw only at his nose with great violence. The cure therefore is, you shall let him blond in his necke, under his eyes, and in the palate of his mouth, you shall also purge his head by making him neese, then keepe him with very thin diet, that is, let him fast for more then halfe of the day, and let him not drinke above once in foure and twenty houres, and that drinke to be warme Water: you shall also once or twice chafe his body with a wholesome friction; and if, during his cure, he chance to grow costive, you shall cause him to be raked, and afterward give him either a suppositary, or a glister, of both which, and of their severall natures, you shall read sufficiently in a Chapter following.

CHAP. XXV.

*Of Fevers extraordinary, and first of Pe-
sistent Fevers.*

WE find by many ancient *Italian* writers, that both the *Romans*, and others their Country-
men

men, have by experience found many horses subject to this pestilent Fever, which is a most contagious and pestiferous disease, almost incurable; and for mine owne part, I have seene it in many colts and young horses. Surely it proceedeth, as I judge, either from great corruption of blood, or from infection of the ayre. The signes thereof is, the horse will hold downe his head, forsake his meate, shed much water at his eyes, and many times have swellings or ulcers rising a little below his eare roots. The cure is, first you shall not faile to let him blood in the *neckeweine*: then two or three houres after you shall give him a glister: then make him this plaister: Take of Squilla five ounces, of Elder, of *Castoreum*, of Mustard-seede, and of *Enserbium*, of each two ounces; dissolve the same in the juyce of Daffidill and Sage, and lay it all about the Temples of his head, and between his eares: then give him to drinke for three or four daies together, every morning, two ounces of the best Treacle dissolved in a pint of good *Muskadine*.

The *Italians* use to give him divers mornings, a pound of the juyce of Elder-roots, or instead of his hay, a good quantity of that hearbe which is called *Venus Haire*, but if the time of the yeare be such, that they cannot have it greene, then they boyle it in water and straine it, and give it him to *drinke*, but I hold the first *drinke* to bee most sufficient, his diet being thinne, and his keeping warme.

CHAP. XXVI:

*Of the Plague or Pestilence in Horses, of some
called the Gargill or Murraine.*

THis Pestilence, Murraine, or Gargill in horses, is a contagious and most infectious disease, proceeding either from surfer of heate, cold, labour, or hunger, or any other thing breeding corrupt humours in a horses body, as the holding too long of his urine, drinking when he is hot, or feeding upon grosse, foule, and corrupt foods, as in low grounds after floods, when the grasse is unpurged, and such like. Sometimes it springs from some evill influence of the Planets, corrupting the Plants and fruits of the earth, and Cartell too sometimes, and from divers other such like causes; but howsoever, when the disease beginneth, certaine it is, that it is most infectious, and if there bee not care and prevention used, of multitudes it will not leave one. Not any of the ancient *Italian* Farriers, nor any of our *English* Farriers that I have met with, doe or can shew me any signe or token to know this disease, more then that one or two must first dye, and then by their deaths I must adjudge and prevent what will follow, but they are mistaken: For this disease is as easily knowne by outward signes, as any disease whatsoever; as namely, the horse will begin to lowre and hang downe his head; and within two or three dayes after such lowring, you shall see him begin to swell under his eare-roots, or under the roots of his tongue, and that swelling will run universally

verfally over all one fide of his face, being very extreame hard and great. Moreover, all his lips, mouth, and whites of his eyes will be exceeding yellow, and his breath will be ftrong, and ftinke exceedingly.

The cure of this difeafe according to the manner of the *Italians* and *French-men*, is firft to feparate the found from the ficke, even afarre diftance from that ayre where the ficke breatheth; then let them blood in the necke-veines, and give every one feverally to drinke, two fpoonefull of the powder of *Diapente*, brewed in a pint of ftrong *Sacke*, of the compofition of which *Diapente*, and of the particular vertues thereof, you fhall read in a Chapter following. If you cannot readily get this *Diapente*, you may then take a pint of *Muskadine*, & difsolve it into two ounces of the beft *Treacle*, and it will ferve the turne. Queftionleffe thefe medicines are both exceeding good, for they are great prefervatives againft all infections.

Now that which I have found farre to exceede them, and to be moft excellent, not onely for this plague amongst horfes, but for the plague or murraine (of fome called the Mountaine evil) amongst beafts; is this. Take a good quantity of old Urine, and mixe therewithall a good quantity of hens dung, ftir them well together till the dung be difsolved: then with a horne give to every horfe or beaft a pinte thereof luke warme. This have I feene helpe hundreds.

CHAP. XXVII.

*Of the Fever accidentall, comming by some
wound received.*

IF a Horse shall receive any grievous and sore wound, either by stroke or thrust, by which any of the vitall powers are let or hindered: certaine it is, that the paine and anguish of such wounds will bring a Horse to a hot Fever, and then his life is in great danger: Besides, a horse being naturally subject to moyst Distillation in his throat, there will many times rise therein great swellings and Ulcers, through the paine whereof, a Horse will fall into a burning Ague.

The signes whereof are, that he will covet much to drink, but cannot drink, and his flesh wil fall away in much extraordinary fashion.

The cure besides the remedies before mentioned, is to let him blood under his eares, and in the mouth: And then to take a fine Manchet, and cutting it in slices, steepe it in Muscadine, and compell him to swallow them: It shall also be good if once in three dayes you steepe your Manchet in Sallet Oyle, and make him eat it. As for his drinke let it be onely warme Masses of Malt and Water, which if hee cannot drinke, you shall then give it him with a Horn. And thus much touching Fevers both ordinary and extraordinary.

CHAP. XXVIII.

*One generall certain, and approved Cure for all
the Fevers and Sickneses formerly rehear-
sed, never yet disclosed from the
Authors brest.*

I Have in the former Chapters shewed you the Names, Diversities, Natures, Signes, and ordinary Cures for all sorts of Fevers whatsoever: Now because I know the ignorance of some so great, that they cannot discern: the Sloath of other such, that they will not endeavour to discern: and the folly of many so peevish; that they will mistake what they may discern, I will shew you here one generall, certaine, and approved medicine, for all fevers of what nature or violence soever.

When therefore at any time you shall find by any of the Signes formerly rehearsed, that your Horse droopeth, you shall presently let him bloud in the necke-veine, and let him bleede well, then three mornings together after (the Horse being fasting) give him halfe an ounce of the powder called *Diapente* (the Composition whereof you shall finde in a particular Chapter, together with the vertues,) and this *Diapente* you shall brew in a pint of Muskadine, and so give it the horse to drinke with an horne: then let him be ridden or walked abroad for an houre, after he commeth in give him any meate whatsoever that he will eate. At noone give him a sweet Mash. In the evening perfume his head with a sweet perfume: the Composition whereof you shall

shall finde in a particular Chapter; at night rub all his limbes well with hard wispes, and his head and nape of the necke with a course harden rubber, then feede as aforesaid. And thus doe three dayes together, and without doubt health will come suddenly.

CHAP. XXIX:
Of the diseases in the head.

AS a horses head is composed of many parts, so are those many parts subject to many and sundry grievances; as namely, the panicles or thin skins, which cleaving to the bones, doe cover the whole braine, are subject to head-ach, megrim, dizinesse, and amazes; the whole braine it selfe is properly subject to breed the frenzy, madnesse, sleeping evill, the raking and forgetfulnesse. And here is to be noted, that many Farriers, and those of approved good skills, have strongly held opinions, that horses have very little, or no braines at all: And my selfe for mine owne part, being carried away with their censures, did at last, upon good consideration, cut up the heads of divers horses, some dead, some in dying, and could never finde any liquid or thin braine, as in other beasts, but onely a very thicke, strong, rough, and shining substance, solide, and firme, like a tough jelly, which I ever held to be only a panicle, and so resolved with others, that a horse had no braine: but after, upon further discourse with men of better learning, I had this resolution given mee: That a horse being a beast of extraordinary strength and ability,

bility, made even to endure the worst of all extremities either by sore labour or heavy burthen, that nature in his creation had endowed him with members answerable to such vigour : As namely, that his braine was not liquid and moist, as subject to fleete, or to be distempered with every small disorder, but tough and hard, even unpenitrable, and not to be pierst by any reasonable motion. And for the panicles, they shewed mee those thin skins over and besides that great substance : so that by experience I saw, and now know, that a horse hath both brain and a panicle, and in them two are bred the diseases before mentioned. Now in the ventricles, or cels of the braine, and in those conduits by which the lively spirits give feeling and motion to the body, there do breed the Turne-sicke, or Sturdy, the Staggers, the Falling evill, the Night-mare, the Apoplexie, the Palsie and Convulsion, or Cramp, the Catharre, or Rhume, and lastly the Glanders. And thus much of the head in generall.

CHAP. XXX.

Of head-ache or paine in the head.

THE head-ache is a paine that commeth either of some inward cause, or of some cholerick humor gathered together in the panicles of the braine, or else of some extreame heate or cold, or of some sudaine blow, or of some noysome savour. The signes are, the hanging downe of the horses head and eares, dropping of his urine, dimnesse of sight, swolne and watrish eyes. The cure according to the opinion

opinion of some of our English Farriers, is to let him blood in the eye-veins; and to squirt warme water into his nostrills; and for that day give him no meate; the next morning fasting, give him warme water and some grasse: at night give him barley and fitches mixt together, and so keepe him warme till hee bee sound: But this cure I do not fancy. The best helpe is, first to make him sneez by fuming him, then let him blood in the palate of the mouth, and keep him fasting at the least twelve houres after: then powre into his nostrills wine wherein hath been sodden *Eusorbium* and *Frankinsense*, and after feed him, and keep his head warme.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Frenzy and Madnesse in a Horse.

THE madnesse of a Horse by the most ancient and best approved Farriers, is divided into foure passions: The first is, when some naughty blood doth strike the panicle of the braine but in one part onely, it presently makes the horse dull both of mind and sight: and you shall know it by this signe, the Horse will turne round like a beast that is troubled with the sturdy; the reason being, because the outside of the head is grieved onely. The second is, when the poyson of such blood doth infect the middle part of the braine: Then the Horse becommeth Franticke, leaping against walls or any thing. The third is, when that blood filleth the veines of the stomacke, and infecteth as well the heart as the braine: then he is said to be mad. But the fourth and last is, when

when that blood infecteth not only the braine and heart, but even the panicles also, and then is he said to be starke mad, which you shall know by his biring at every man which comes neere him, by his gnawing of the manger and walls about him. And lastly, by tearing his own skin in pieces.

Now for the cure, you shall cause him to bee let bloud in all the lower parts of his body, to draw the bloud from his head; as namely, on the shackle-veines, the spur-veines, the plat-veines, and the thigh-veines, and you shall let him blood abundantly, then give him this drinke: take the root of wilde Cowcumber, and where that cannot be gotten, take a handfull of Rue or Mints, and a handfull of black Eleborus, and boyle them in strong red Wine, and give it luke-warme to the Horse in a horne.

Some use to give mans dung with Wine three mornings together: and also to rubbe his body over with a friction at least twice a day, and not to faile to give him moderate exercise.

Others use to pierce the skin of his head with a hot Iron, to let out the ill humours.

Others, as the most certaine of all medicines, use to geld him of both, or one stone at the least, but I like it not for mine owne part.

The cure I have ever used for this grieve, was either to make him swallow down hard Hennes dung, or else to give him to drinke the root of *Virga Pastoris* stamped in water: and for his ordering during the cure, I would have his stable quier, but not close, and his food onely warme Mashes of Malt and Water,

ter, yet but a very little at one time, for the thinnest dyet is best.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the sleeping evill, or Lethargie in Horses.

THe Sleeping evill is an infirmity which maketh a horse to sleep continually, depriving him thereby both of memory, appetite, and all alacrity of spirit. It is most incident to white and dun horses, because it proceedeth onely from *flegme*, cold & grosse, which moistning the braine too much, causeth heaviness and sleepe: there needs no other signe more then his sleeping onely. The cure is, to keep him waking whether he will or no, with great noises and affright: then let him bloud in the neck, and the palate of the mouth, and give him to drinke water luke-warme, wherein hath been boyled Camomill, Mother-wort, Wheate, Bran, Salt, and Vineger: you shall also perfume his head, and make him sneeze, and annoynt the palate of his mouth with hony and mustard mixt together: It shall not bee amisse, if with the ordinary water which he drinketh, you mixe either Parsley seed, or Fennell seede, for that will provoke Urine: you shall also bathe his legges, and stop his hooves with Bran, Salt, and Vineger boyled together, and applyed as hot as may be, and his stable would be lightsome and full of noyse.

CHAP. XXXIII.

of a horse that is taken, or of Shrow-running:

THose horses are supposed by Farriers to bee taken, or as some call it, Planet-strook, which are deprived of feeling or of moving, not being able to stirre any member, but remaineth in the same forme as hee was at his time of taking. Some hold it proceedeth of choler and flegme, when they are superaboundantly mixt together, or of melancholy bloud, which being a cold dry humour, doth oppresse and sicken the hinder part of the braine. Other ancient Farriers hold, it commeth of some extreame cold, or extreame heate, or raw digestion, striking into the empty veines suddenly: or else of extreame hunger caused by long fasting. The signes thereof are numnesse, and want of motion before spoken of: As for the cure, it is diverse, for first you must note whether it come of cold, or heate: If it come of cold, you shall know it by the stuffing and poze in the head, which is ever joyned with the disease: if of heate, by the hotnesse of his breath, and cleare fetching of his wind. Now if it proceede from cold, you shall give him to drinke one ounce of *Lacerpitium* mixt with Saller Oyle and *Muskadine* luke-warme: if it proceed of heat, you shall give him one ounce of *Lacerpitium* with water and hony luke-warme: but if it proceede of crudity, or any raw digestion, then you shall helpe him by tasting: and if it proceede of fasting, then you shall heale him by feeding him often with good meate, as with wholsome bread, and dry

Oates; yet but a little at a time, that he may ever eate with a good stomacke.

Now for the *French Farriers*, as Monsieur *Horace* and the rest, who call this disease *Surprius*, they hold it cometh onely from cold causes, following hot accidents, & they use for their cure to let him bloud on the breast-veines, and then put him into a sweate, either by exercise, or multiplicity of cloathes, but many cloathes are better, because the horse is not capable of labour: and sometimes they will bury him all save the head in an old dung-hill, till through the heate thereof his limbes receive such feeling that hee begins to struggle out of the same. All which cures are not much amisse: Yet in mine opinion, this is the best, easiest, and surest way: First, to let him bloud in the necke and breast, then to annoint all his body with oyle *Petroleum*, then give him this drinks. Take of Malmsey three pints, and mixe it with a quarterne of sugar, Cynamon, and Cloves, and let him drinke it luke-warme: then take old rotten wet litter, and for want thereof, wet hey, & with cloaths, fursingles and cords, swaddle all his whole body over with the same of a good thicknesse, and renew it once in three daies till he be whole, let his stable be warm, his exercise moderate, and if he grow costive, let him first be raked, and after give him either a glister, or suppositary, according to his strength. There is also another kind of taking, and that is when a horse is Planet-strooke, or stricken with *Thunder*: but it is utterly incurable, and therefore I will omit to speak further of it. The last kind of taking is when a horse is Shrow-runne, that when a horse lieth sleeping,

ping, there is a certaine venemous field-mouse called a Shrow, whose head is extraordinary long, like a Swines head, and her feet shorter of the one side than then other. This Mouse if she happen to runne over any of the limbes of the horse, presently the horse loseth the use of that limbe she ran over, and if she runne over his body, hee commonly loseth the use of his hinder loynes : and these accidents having beene often found unexpected, common Farriers have held the horse to be taken, or Planet-strooke. As for the cure thereof, the best is to seeke out a brier which groweth at both ends, and take the horse or beast that is thus vexed, and draw him under the same, and it is a present remedy. For mine owne part, I have heard much, both of the infirmiry, and of the cure, but I have had no experience of it, but onely in one yong foale, which being suddenly lame, was as suddenly helped to my much contentment.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the Staggers.

THe Staggers is a dizzy madnesse of the braine, proceeding from corrupt blood, or grosse, rough, and heavy humors, which oppresse and make sicke the braine, and from whence proceedeth a vaporous spirit, dissolved by a weake heat which troubleth all the whole head : it is almost of all diseases the most common, yet very mortall and dangerous : it commeth many times from surfeit of meat, surfeit of travell, or from corruption of blood. The signes

to know it, is dimnesse of sight, swolne and watrish eyes, a moyst mouth, staggering and reeling of the horse, and beating of his head against the walls, or thrusting it into his litter. The cure is divers : for almost every Smith hath a severall medicine, yet these which I shall rehearse, are the most approved. The ancient Farriers, both *Italians* and *French*, use to let the horse blood in the temple-veines, and then with a *knife* make an hole an inch long over-thwart his fore-head, underneath his fore-top, and raising the skin up with a cornet some two or three inches about, stop the hollownesse with a tent dipt in turpentine and Hogges grease molten together; but some of our Smiths finding this cure faile, except the disease be very yong, use to stop the hollownesse with a docke-roote. Others with a clove or two of *Garlicke*. Others use for this disease to take *Selladine*, and stamping it, to stop it into his eares, and so tye up his eares, or stich the tips of his eares together, that hee may not shake the medicine out. Others use to mixe salt and water together thicke, and to put it into his eares. Others use to mixe *Groundsill* and *Aqua vite* together, and to put that into his eares. Others use to take *Garlicke*, *Rue*, and *Bay-salt*, and beate them grossly, then mixe Vinegar with them, and put it into the horses eares, then wet wool or tow in the medicine, and stop that in his eares also: let the medicine rest so foure and twenty houres, and if he forsake his meare, wash his tongue with vinegar, and it will recover his stomacke. Others use first to perfume the horses head to make him neese, then to take halfe a handful of *Selladine*, and as much
herbe

herbe of grace, three onfoure cloves of garlick, and a little bay-salt, and stampe them together; then mixe therewith two or three spoonefulls of vinegar or verdeg, and thrust it hard into the horses eares: then tye up his eares with a soft inkle string, that no aire may come in; and let this medicine remaine the space of a day and a night: then let him bloud in the necke veine, and give him a comfortable drench, of which drenches you shall finde great plenty, together with their uses, in a chapter following. There be some Smiths which only take Rue and Sal-ladine, of each a like quantity, and stamping them with white salt, thrust it into the horses eare, and it helpeth. Others take an ounce and an halfe of the oyle of bitter Almonds, two drams of oxegall, an halfe penny in black Elliber stamped, and five drams of the graines of *Castoreum*, vinegar & verdeg, seeth them altogether till the vinegar be consumed, then straine them, and put it into the horses eares. All these medicines have beene divers times approved to be singular good, and for mine owne part, I have found great effect in them. Yet that which I have found at all times most excellent is, if the disease be young and early taken; (that is, before the horse be growne into an extreame of weaknes) to take one by verdeg and bay salt, and mixing them well together, to stop it into the horses eares. But if the disease be old, and the horse brought to a desperate state of mortality, then you shall take *Affusetida*, and having dissolved it in vinegar, warme it up in a chafingdish of coales, and with round balles of rowe, stusse it hard into the horses eares, and so bind them

up for foure and twenty houres, after which time give him a comfortable drinke. Now whereas some Smiths doe use to stampe *Aquavite* and *Garlick* together, and stoppe that into his eares : I for my part thinke it too strong, except the horse bee in great lust, and full of flesh, which if hee be, doubtlesse it may doe well enough : onely for a generall rule you must observe, ever to let the horse bloud in the necke veine, two or three mornings together, and every time to take great aboundance of bloud from him.

C H A P. XXXV.

Of the Falling evill.

THis *Falling evill*, or as the *Italians* call it, this *Malcaduco*, is nothing else but that which we call in men the *falling sicknesse*, in beasts the falling evill: for it doth for a certaine season, deprive them of all sense whatsoever, it is a disease not commonly incident to our *English* races, but amongst the *Italians*, *Spanish*, and *French* horses, many times found.

Now considering that the most of our best *English* stables are furnished ever with some horses of these Countries, I think it good to write something touching the disease. It proceeds from cold & grosse flegme gathered together in the fore-part of the head, betwixt the panicle and the braine, which being by any hot vapour dispersd over the whole brain, it doth instantly cause this falling. There be others which suppose that it is governed by the Moone; and

and that by a certaine course thereof both horses and other beasts doe fall, and as it were dye for a small time. The signe to know the disease is, the horse will fall suddenly, both through the resolution of his members, and the distention of his sinewes; all his body will quake and quiver, and they will foame much at their mouthes, yet when you thinke them past all hope of life, they will still start up suddenly and fall to their meate. Now if you will know whether these fits will come often, or but seldome, you shall feele the gristle betwixt his nostrils, and if it be cold, he will fall oft; but if it be warme, he will fall seldome. The cure is, you shall first let him blood in the necke-veine, taking good store of blood away: then within foure or five daies after, you shall let him blood on his temple-veines, and on his eye-veines: then annoint all his body over with a comfortable friction, then bathe his head and eares with oyle de bay, liqued pitch and rarer mixt together, and of the same put some into his eares: then make him a cap or biggin of canvass, quilted with wooll, to keepe his head warme: then give him a purgation or scouring, of which you shall finde plenty in a chapter hereafter: you shall also force him to neeze: but if the disease notwithstanding continue still, you shall then with a hot Iron pierce the skinne of his forehead in divers places, and after anoint it with sweete Butter: for thereby you shall draw out the grosse humours which doe oppresse the braine, and in any wise during the time that he remaineth in Physicke, let his stable bee kept exceeding warme, and his dyet thinne.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Night-mare.

THIS disease which we call the *Night-mare*, is an infirmity which onely troubleth the horse in the night-season, stopping the drawing of his breath, in such violent sort, that with the struggling and striving he will be driven into a great sweat and faintnesse: It proceedeth, according to the opinion of ancient Farriers, from a continuall crudity, or raw digestion of the stomacke, from whence grosse vapours ascending up into the head, doe not onely oppress the braine, but all the sensitive parts also. Now for my part, I rather hold it an infirmity of the *stomacke* and *intestine bowells*, which being cloyed with much glut and fat, doth in the night season to hinder the spirits and powers from doing their naturall office, that the beast having as it were, his breath strangled, doth with an unnaturall struggling in his sleepe, put his body into an extreme sweate, and with that passion is brought to much faintnesse; of which I have had much and continuall experience, onely in horses exceeding fat, and newly taken from the grasse, but especially from such horses as are either fatted upon *reddish grasse*, which in some Countries is called after *maths*, or such as are taken up fat in the winter season. The signes to know this disease is, that in the morning when you come early to your horse, you shall finde him all of a great sweat, and his body something panting; or perhaps you shall but onely finde him sweate in his flanks, upon

upon his necke, and at the rootes of his eares; either of both are signes of this sicknesse, especially if at night when you litter him, if you finde that he is dry of his body, and giveth no outward signe of inward sicknesse. Now there be some that will object against mee, and say : that this infirmity is not the Night-mare, but an ordinary infirmity ingendred by superflaury of cold, grosse, and unwholsome foode, got in the winter season : which nature, through the helpe of warme cloathes, and a warme house, expells in this manner, in the night season. To this objection I answer, that if they do disallow this sicknesse to be the Night-mare, that then without all contradiction there is no such disease as the Night-mare at all, and that it is but onely a name without any substance or consequence; but forasmuch as this sicknesse is not only very usuall, but also carrieth with it all the effects and attributes ascribed unto the Night-mare, & that it is as yet a disease unnamed. I doe not thinke I can give it a more proper terme then to call it the Night-mare. The cure whereof is, every morning and evening, both before and after his water; to give the horse some moderate exercise, as to make him goe at least a mile and more for his water; and after hee is watered, to gallop him gently on the hand a good space: then when he is brought into the house, and well rubbed, to give him his provender, (being oars) and to mixe therewith a handful, or better, of hemp-feed; onely in this cure you must bee carefull, that your exercise do not enforce him to sweare, nor shall you have need to use it longer, then you finde that he sweateth much in the night season. This exercise and
medicine:

medicine will not onely cure this infirmity, but also any cold that is newly gotten whatsoever.

CHAP. XXXVII.
Of the Apoplexie, or Palsey,

THESE Palsies, or Apoplexies which happen unto horses, are of two sorts : the one *generall*, the other *particular*. The *generall* palsey is when a horse is deprived of all sence and moving genera'ly over his whole body, which is seldome or never found out by our Farriers : because the mortality and suddenesse of death which pursues the disease, takes from them all notes and observations of the infirmity : and indeed for the *generall* palsey, there is no cure, and theretore there needs no description of signe or cure. For this *particular* Palsey, that is, when a horse is deprived but of some part or member of his body, and most commonly it is but the neck onely, as both my selfe and others have found by daily experience. This disease proceedeth from foulness of food, or from fen-feeding, which breedeth grosse and tough humours, which joyneth with crudities and raw digestions, oppresse the braine violently altogether : it also commeth many times by meanes of some blow or wound given upon the temples of the Head. The signes to know the disease are the gathering together of his body, going crookedly, and not straight forward but seldome, and holding his necke awry without motion : yet never forsaking his provender or meate, but eating it with greedinesse and much flavering. The cure is to let him

him blond on his necke-veine, and temple-veine, on the contrary side to that way hee wryeth : then annoynt all his necke over with the oyle *Petroleum*, and with wet hay ropes swaddle all his necke over, even from his breast to his eares, but having before splented his necke straight with splents of wood, made strong, smooth, and flat for the purpose : then for three mornings together give him a pint of old *Muskadine*, with two spoonefull of this powder to drink. Take of *Opoponax* two ounces, of *Storax* three ounces, of *Gentian* three ounces, of *Manna Succary* three ounces, of *Myrrh* one scruple, and of long Pepper two scruples, beate all these into fine powder.

Now there be some *Farriers*, which for this disease use to draw the *Horse* necke on the contrary side with a hot Iron, even from the necke to the shoulder, and on the temple of his head of that side also, a long strike, and on the other a little star in this manner ✠, and from his raines to his middle backe, small lines in this manner ←←

But I that know this sicknesse proceedeth from the braine and sinewes, cannot conceive how any helpe should come from burning of the skin, that is drawn up and straightned : And therefore I would wish every *Farrier* to forbear this tormenting, unlesse hee apparently see that the skin it selfe through dislike and weaknesse, is shrunke also, and then the cure is not amisse.

CHAP. XXXVIII,

*Of the generall Crampe, or convulsion of
sinewes.*

THese generall Crampes, or convulsion of sinewes, are most forcible contractions, or drawings together of the sinewes and muscles: and they happen sometimes generally into many parts of the body, sometimes particularly, as but into one member and no more: When they are generally disperst in horses, they proceede commonly from some wound, wherein a sinew is halfe cut and no more, and so there runneth a generall contraction over the whole body by degrees. When they are particular, as but in one member, then they proceed either from cold windy causes, or from the want of bloud. For the generall contraction which cometh by a wound, you shall read the cure thereof in the booke of Chirurgery following, where the sinewe being cut in two peeces, the contraction ceaseth. For this particular, where but one member is grieved, you shall know it by these signes: The member will be starke and stiffe, insomuch that neither the beast, nor any man will be able to bow it: the sinewes will be hard like stickes, and the horse being downe, is not able to rise during the time of the contraction, hee will also halt extremely whilst the fit is upon him, and presently goe well againe, as it were in one moment. The cure is, to chafe the member exceedingly, either with linsed oyle, sheepes-foote oyle, or neares-foote oyle; and during the time of his chafing, to hold up the

con-

contrary foote that hee may stand upon the limbe which is most pained. There is also another Crampe or convulsion of sinewes, which doth extend into the necke and raines of the horses backe, and so almost universall over the horses whole body : It proceedeth over, either from some extreame cold, as by turning a horse suddenly out of a warme stable, and warme cloathes into the piercing rage of the cold winter, or by the losse of much blood, whereby great windinesse entreth into the veines, and so benumbeth the sinews : or else by too much Physicking & drenching of a horse, whereby the naturall heat is much weakned or dried. The signes of this convulsion is, his head and neck will stand awry, his eares upright, and his eyes hollow, his mouth will be clung up that he cannot eate, and his backe will rise up in the midst like the back of a Camell, The cure hereof is, with great store of warme wollen cloathes, as Blankets, and Coverlids, some folded double about his body, and some girded all over from his head to his taile, to force him into a sweat; but if the cloathes will not force him to sweat, then you shall either fold all his body over with hot wet horse-litter, or else bury him all save the head in a dunghill or mixon; then when hee hath sweat an houre or two, and is moderately cooled, you shall annoynt him all over with this oyntment, (holding hot barres of Iron over him, to make the oyntment sinke into his body :) Take of Hogges-grease one pound, of Turpentine a quarter of a pound, of Pepper beaven into powder halfe a dram, of new waxe halfe a pound, of old oyle Olives one pound; boyle all these together, and use it, being

being made warme. There be other *Farrriers* which use this oyntment : take of new waxe one pound, of Turpentine foure ounces, of oyle de bay as much, *Opoponax* two ounces, of Deeres suet, and of oyle of *Storax* of each three ounces, melt all these together, and use it warme.

There be others which use after his sweat, nothing but oyle of *Cipresse*, or of *Spike*, and oyle de Bay mixt together, and with it annoint his body over. After this unction thus applied, you shal take twenty grains of long Pepper beaten into fine Powder, of Cedar two ounces, of *Nitre* one ounce, of *Lacerpitium* as much as a beane, and mingle all these together with a gallon of white Wine, and give him a quart thereof to drinke, every morning for foure daies. Now for his diet and order, let his food bee warme Mashies, and the finest Hay, his stable exceeding warme, and his exercise gentle walking abroad in his cloathes; once every day about high noone.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the Cold or Poze in the head.

THE Cold or Poze in a horses head is gotten by divers suddaine and unseene meanes, according to the temper and constitution of the horses body, insomuch, that the best keeper whatsoever cannot sometimes warrant his horse from that infirmity. Now according as this cold is old or new, great or small, and according to the abundance of humours which abound in the head, and as those humours are of thicknesse or thinnesse, so is the disease and

and the danger thereof greater or lesser, stronger or weaker. For you shall understand that if the horse have but onely a cold that is newly taken, the signes are, he will have many knots like waxe kirkels betweene his chaules about the rootes of his tongue; his head will be somewhat heavy, and from his nostrills will run a certaine cleare water, but if about his tongue roots be any great swelling or inflammation, like a mighty botch or bile, then it is the strangle; but if from his nostrills doe issue any thicke, stinking, or corrupt matter, then it is the *Glanders*, of both which we shall speake hereafter in their proper places. Now for this *ordinary* cold, which is ordinarily taken (the signes whereof, besides his much coughing, are before declared) you shall understand that for the cure being very easie, it is helped sundry wayes: Some cure it onely by purging his head with pills of *Butter* and *Garlicke*, the manner whereof you shall finde in the Chapter of *Purgations*, Other *Farriers* cure it with purging his head with fumes, and forcing him to neeze, the manner whereof is in the Chapter of neezing; which done, you shall give him to drinke, water wherein hath been sodden *Fennegreake*, Wheate-meale, and Aniseeds; and then to trot him up and downe halfe an houre after. Others use to give him Neezing-powder blown up into his nostrills, and then this drinke: take a pinte of Malmsey, and the whites and yolkes of foure or five Egges, a head of *Garlicke* bruised small, *Pepper* and *Cynamon*, and *Nutmegges*, of each a like quantiry beaten to fine powder, and a pretty quantity of sweet *Butter*, mixe them together, and give it luke-warme
with

with a horne three daies together : then keepe him fasting at least two houres after. Others use to let the horse bloud in the veine under his taile, and to rub all his mouth over with a bunch of sage bound to a sticks end, and then to mixe with his provender the tender crops of black-berries : But I take this medicine to bee fittest for such horses who with the cold rhume are troubled with paine in their chaps, and not with stuffing in their head.

Now albeit none of these medicines are fault-worthy, yet some for mine owne part, I have ever found to bee most excellent for these slight clogs, moderate exercise, both before and after a horses water, in such sort as is declared in the Chapter of the Night-mare, without any other fuming or drenching, except I found the cold to bee more then ordinary, and that for want of heed-taking it was like to grow to some Ulcer about the rootes of the tongue. In this case I would for one time and no more give the horse a pint of Sacke, and halfe a pint of Sallet oyle, made luke-warme, and well brewed with good store of *Sugar-candy*, to drinke in the morning fasting, and then exercise him moderately thereupon, without putting him into any sweate, and it hath never failed to worke the effects I wished in ample sort, without hindering me at any time of my travaile or journey. But if you cannot conveniently come by this medicine, you must notwithstanding travaile your *Horse*, if then you take a spoonefull of *Tarre*, and folding it in a fine cloath, fixe or tye it fast to the mouth of your bit, or snaffell, and so travaile your horse therewith, and it will take his cold

cold cleane away. But yet it will a little abate and lessen his stomacke.

CHAP. XL.

How certainly to take away any cold, poxe, or rattling in the head, how violent soever, without giving any inward medicine.

IF your horse have taken any extreame cold or poxe in his head, and being matcht either to hunt, or to runne for any great wager, the day is so neare that you dare not give him any inward drench, without which none of our Farriers know how to cure any Cold: you shall then, or at any other time (for there is no medicine in the world more soveraigne) take as much sweet butter as a bigge wall-nut, and with the powder of Brimstone finely beaten and searst, worke them either with your Knife, or a Splat-ter together, till the Butter bee brought to a high gold colour: then take two cleane Goose-feathers the longest in all the Wing, and first at the quill ends, with a needle, fasten two long threeds: Then with your Salve annoinr all the feathers cleane over, which done, in the dry powder of Brimstone role them over and over: then putting the Feathers ends for most, open the horses nostrils, and thrust them up into his head: then take the threeds which are at the quill ends, and fasten them on the top of the horses head: which done, ride him abroad for an houre or two, ayrring him in this manner morning and evening, and when you bring him into the stable, after hee hath stood tyed up a pretty season, untie the
G threeds,

threads, and draw out the feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have next occasion to use them. This cure of all others is most certaine, and taketh away any stopping in the head how extreame soever.

CHAP. XLI.

*The perfection and best of all Medicines for
Pozz or Cold.*

Take (if you can get it) an ounce of the fine and pure past of Elicampne, which hath the strings of the roots taken from it, or for want thereof, an ounce of the conserve of Elicampne, and dissolve it in a pinte and a halfe of Sack, and so give it the horse with a horne in the morning fasting, and then ride him halfe an hour after it, and let him fast two hours more, then feed him as at ordinary times: and thus doe for two or three mornings together.

CHAP. XLII.

Of a Horse that is hidebound

This disease which we call hide-bound, is when a horses skinne cleaveth so hard to his ribbes and backe, that you cannot with your hand pull up or loosen the one from the other. It proceedeth sometimes from poverty and ill keeping, sometimes from surfeit of over-riding; especially if when hee is extreame hot, hee be suffered to stand long in the raine or wet wether: and lastly, it proceedeth from a corrupt drinnesse of the blood, which wanting his naturall

all course, forceth his skin to shrinke up and cleave to the bones. The signes, besides the cleaving of his skin, is, leanness of body, quantnesse of belly, and the standing up of the ridge-bone of his backe: it drieth up the intrayles, torments the body, and makes his dung stink extraordinarily: and if he be not remedied, manginess will presently follow after it. The cure of it is divers, according to the opinion of divers workmen: the most ancient Farriers did use to let him blond on the spurre-veines of both sides his belly, somewhat towards his flank, which done, they give him this *drinke*: Take of white Wine, or strong Ale a quart, and adde therunto three ounces of faller oyle, of *Gomen* one ounce, of Aniseeds two ounces, of Licoras two ounces, bearen all into fine powder, and give it him luke-warme with a horne; when he hath drunke, let one chafe his backe, from the huckle bone upward by the space of an houre or more: then set him in a warme stable, with good store of litter: then fold about his body a thicke brancket soaked in water and wrung, then over it a dry blanket, then gird them both fast, and stop the firsingle about with great wispes, for the wet blanket will put him into a great heate, and for want of a wet blanket, if you fold his body in wet hay it will doe the like, and loosen his skin; this you shall do the space of a weeke, during which time he shall drinke no cold water.

There bee other Farriers, which before they lay on the wet blanket, will anoint all the horses body over with wine and faller oyle, and surely it is good also. There be others which for this disease use to let

the Horse bloud in the necke, then bathe his sides with warme water, wherein hath beene sodden bay leaves: then anoint him all over with the oyle of Rue or Camomill, holding a hot Iron over him to make the oyle sinke into his skinne, then give him this drinke: Take of carrers, Rue, wild minte, of each an ounce and a halfe, of worrne-wood two ounces, dry them and beare them to powder: then give two spoonfull thereof in a pinte of Malmesey. There be other *Barriers* which take *Fenugreeke*, *Turmericke*, *Anise-seeds*, *Bayes*, *Licoras*, and *Comen*, of each a like quantity, dry them, and beare them to powder, and give the horse two spoonefull thereof with a quart of Ale or Beere luke-warme: use this at least three mornings together, and it will not onely helpe the disease, but if it be formerly used, it will prevent the comming thereof: this *drinke* also is good for a cold. Now although every one of these medicines are very good, yet for mine owne part, I have found this which followeth to exceed them all.

- 81 First, let him bloud in the *neck-veine*, then give him this *drinke*. Take two handfulls of *Selladine*, if it be in the Summer, the leaves and stalks will serve, but if it be in Winter, take leaves, stalkes, roots and all; chop them small, then take a handfull of Wormwood, and a handfull of Rue, chop them likewise, put all these into three quarts of strong Ale or Beere, and boyle them till it come to a quart: then take it from the fire, and straine it till you have left no moisture in the hearbs: then dissolve it in three ounces of the best Treacle, and give it the horse luke-warme to *drinke*: then for a weeke together, once a day, rub
all

all the horses body over with oyle and beere, or butter and beere, against the haire, and feede him with warme mashees of malt and water, and for his provender, let him have barley sodden till it be ready to breake, provided that you keepe it not untill it soure,

CHAP. LXIII.

Of the Glanders.

Touching this disease which wee call the *Glanders*, my Masters, the old Farriers and I, are at much difference: for some of them doe hold opinion, that it is an inflammation of the kinnels, which lie on each side the throat, underneath the rootes of the tongue neere the swallowing place; and their reason is, that because those Kinnels are called of the *Italians*, *Glandule*, that thence we borrow this word *Glanders*, adding moreover, that a horse which is troubled with this disease, hath great Kinnels underneath his jawes easie to be felt, paining him so, that hee cannot eat, or swallow any thing. Others say, it is a swelling upon the jaw bones, great and hard, which being inflamed, doth putrifie and rot; but both these Opinions I hold in part Erroneous: for although our old Farriers might (according to the custome of our Nation, which loveth imitation of Strangers) borrow this word *Glanders* from the *Italian Glandule*: yet these inflammations under the chappes of the tongue rootes, is that disease which wee call the *Strangle*, and not the *Glanders*; and whereas they would call the *Strangle* the *Quinzie*,

or *Squinancy*, there is no such matter; neither hath a horse any such disease, except they will call the *Fives* by that name, which is farre more fitter for the application.

Now for the *Glanders*, you shall understand that it is a running impostume ingendred either by cold, or by famine, or by long thirst, or by eating corrupt and musty meate; or by being kept in unsavory places, or is taken by standing with infected horses. It is a gathering together of moist and corrupt humours, which runneth at the nose; or may be said to be a fluxe of rhume, which issueth somerimes at one, sometimes at both the nostrils: the cause being the widenesse of the passage, so that the cold liberally entring into the braine, bindeth and crusheth it in such manner, that it maketh the humours there to distill; which descended to the spirittuall parts, and possessing them, in the end suffocates the horse, either by their abundance, or killeth him by corrupting the principall parts; or else by congealing there by little & little, overrunneth the naturall heat. Now that distillation that by cold cometh from the braine, and breedeth this glanders, is of 3. sorts. The first is a cold which maketh indigest humours to passe from the braine, which cometh by taking off the saddle suddenly when the horse is hot, or by letting him drinke before hee bee inwardly cooled, or before his body be dryed: this distillation commonly is slimy matter that smells nor, and is easie to be cured: for it is no inward ulcer; but only abundance of humour, the substance whereof is grosse and white. The second is a great cold ingendred

grendred and congealed, causing humours something thinne and slimy, of the colour of marrow, or the white of an Egge: this descendeth to the throate, and lyeth there till it bee discharged through the Nostrils. The third is by long continuance thicker, and therefore harder to be cured, if the colour thereof be yellow like a Beane, then is the Glanders most desperate, and lyeth also in his throate: but if it be a browne or darkeish yellow, then commonly a Fever will accompany the disease. To these three distillations there is commonly added a fourth, which is, when the matter which comes from his Nose, is darke, thin, and reddish, like little sparkes of blood; but then it is not said to be the Glanders, but the mourning of the Chinc, which is a Disease, for the most part, held incurable. It is therefore most necessary for every good Farrier, when he shall take this cure in hand, to consider well the matter which issuech from the Horses nose: For if the humour be cleare and transparent, so that it may bee seene thorough, then it is not greatly hurtfull, or of much moment. If it be white, it is worse, yet with much ease cured. If it bee yellow, separate him from the sound Horses, for he is infectious, yet to bee cured: If that yellow bee mixt with bloud, it is with much difficulty helped, or if the matter be like unto Saffron, the Horse is hardly to be saved. He must also consider whether the matter stinke, or have lost the smell: The first is the signe of an Ulcer, the latter of Death: also whether he cougheth with straightnesse in his chest, or no: for that also is a signe of an inward ulcer, and that the disease is past cure. Now for

the cure of these three distillations, which are all that make up a compleat Glanders, you shall understand, that when the Glanders is of the first sort, it is easily helped by moderate exercise, and want keeping: but if it be of the second sort, you shall give him warme mashes of malt and water, and perfume his head well, and purge it by sneezing: and for his mashes you shall put Fenell seede bruised. Others will take a pinte of white Wine, and a handfull of Roor, a quart of milke, and two heads of garlicke bruised: brew them together, and give it the horse to drinke. Others will take a pottle of urine, a handfull of bay salt, and a good quantity of browne Sugar-candy, boyle it to a quart, then adde licors and antiscors, beaten to fine powder, and give it luke warme to drinke. Others will take lard, or swines grease, and boyle it in water: then take the fat from the water, and mingle it with a little oyle olive, and a good quantity of urine, and halfe as much white wine, give a quart of this luke warme to drinke. Others use to give of Ale a quart, or grated bread one ounce and a halfe, the yolkes of two egges, or Ginger, Saffron, Cloves, Cynamen, Nutmegs, *Cardimonium*, spike ward or Lavender, Galingall and hony, of each a pretty quantity, mixe these together, and give it to drinke. Now if the distillation be of the third sort, which is the worst of the three, you shall take halfe a pound of Swines blood, and melt it at the fire, adde to it a pound of the juyce of Beets; with three ounces of *Enforbium* finely beaten; and when it hath boyled a little, take it from the fire, and adde another ounce of *Enforbium* to it: Keepe this oyntment, and annoynt

noyn. Therewith two very long feathers; or little
redder, tapt with linnen about; and so annoynted,
put them into his nostrills; and after rubbing them
up and downe, laye them to the nose band of the
bridle; and walke him abrodd: Doe this three dayes
together; and he will either absolutely cure him; or
at least take away the eye sore. Others use to take
a quart of Ale; an halfe penny worth of long Pep-
per, a little brimstone, a penny worth of Galing-gal,
two penny worth of Spynard of spayn, two penny
weight of Saffron brayed; with two ounces of but-
ter boyled in the Ale: When it is like warme, cast
the horse, and holding up his head, powre it equally
into his nostrills: when he hath his nostrills close till
his eyes stare; and strike the Coble, which done, give
him Bayes and Ale to drinke: then let him rise, and
sech him up warme; feeding him with warme grains
and salt; or with sweete mallow; but the best is, if the
weather bee warme, to let him range abroade at
grasse. Other Farriers use to dissolve in vineger
three drammes of Mustard-seeds; and as much Ex-
forbeare; then to give him one dramme at his No-
strill every day before he drinke. Others use to take
of Myrrh, Iris Ilirica, seeds of Smallage, Aristolo-
chia, of each three ounces, Sal-writer, Brysonstone, of
each five ounces, Bayes two ounces, Saffron one
ounce; make this into powder; and when you give
it, give part in pills, made with paste and wine; and
part by the nostrills with strong Ale: doe this for
the space of three dayes at the least. Others use to
take of Malmsey a pint, of strong Ale a pint, of A-
quavita foure spoonfull, and brew them together,
with

with a pretty quantity of Aniseeds, Lycoras, Elicampane roots, long pepper, Garlick, and three or foure new laid eggs, & a little butter; give this luke-warm to drinke: then walke him abroad, and let him up warme do this every other day for a week together. Others use to take stale urine that hath stood three or foure dayes, and ten Garlick heads, and seething them together, give it the horse to drink. Others use to take Swines grease well clarified, and as much oyle de bay as a walnut, and give it the horse to drinke, with faire water luke-warm.

But better then all these, it is to take of Elicampane, 62 Aniseeds, and Licoras, of each one penny-worth, boyle them in three pints of Ale or Beer till one pint be consumed, then adde unto it a quarter of a pint of Sallet-oyle, and give it him to drink luke-warm, then with a quill blow *Enforbinum* up into his nostrils, and within three days after, take of mustard foure spoonfull, Vineger a pinte, butter three ounces, boyle them together, then adde thereto halfe an ounce of Pepper, and give it the horse luke-warme to drink: Use this medicine a fortnight. Others use to take a handfull of pill'd Garlick, and boyle it in a quart of Milke till a pinte be consumed, then adde thereto two ounces of sweete butter, and a pinte of strong Ale, stirre them well together, and give it the horse fasting to drinke luke-warme: which done, ride him a little up and downe, and use this the space of nine dayes.

Thus I have plainly shewed you the opinion and practice of all the best *Farriers* both of this Kingdome and of others, and they be all very good and effectuell

effectuall: yet for mine owne part, that which I have found ever the best in my practice is, if the disease be of the first or second sort, to give the horse to drink fasting every morning for a fortnight together, a pinte of strong Ale, and five spoonefull of the oyle of Oates, the making of which Oyle, you shall read in a particular chapter following; but if the disease be of the third sort, which is most desperate, you shall then take of Tanners Onse a pinte, and of new Milke a pint, and of Oyle Olive halfe a pint, and the quantity of a head of Garlick bruised, and a little Turmericke, mixe these well together, and give it the horse to drinke: Do this thrice in one fortnight, and it will helpe if any helpe be to be had.

CHAP. XLIII.

Two most certain and lately found out medi-

cines, which will without all faile cure

any Glanders, though our Far-

riers hold it impossible.

IF your horses cold be come to the worst Glanders, which is a continuall running at the nose, and hath runne by the space of divers moneths, so that your Farriers can do you no good: you shal then take better then two handfull of the white cankerous mosse which grows upon an old Oken pale, and boyle it in two quarts of Milke till one quart bee almost consumed; then strain it, and squeeze the mosse well, which done, give it the horse luke-warme to drinke: then take the goose feathers, brimstone, and butter, in such manner as is set downe in the new Additions for the cold,

cold or poze in a Horses head (page 81) and having put them up into his nostrils, ride him forth an houre or two gently, and after he is come home, draw forth the feathers, and keepe his body warme. This disease you shall understand cometh not suddenly, but growes out of long procelle of time; so likewise the cure must not be expected to bee done in a moment, but with much leasure: therefore you must continue your medicine as your leasure will serve, either every day, or at least thrice a week, if it be for foure or five months together, and bee assured in the end it will yeeld your desire.

Now the second certaine and well approved medicine is to take Elicampane Rootes, and boyle them in milke till they be soft, that you may bruise them to pappe: Then with a horne give them to the horse, together with the milke take warme, being no more then will make the roos liquid: Then having anointed your Goose feather, put them up into his nostrils, and ride him forth, as is before shewed.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the mourning of the Chine.

THIS Disease which wee call the *mourning of the Chine*, or as some Farriers terme it, *the moist Malady*, is that fourth sort of corrupt distillation from the braine, of which wee have spoken in the Chapter before, shewing from whence it proceeds, and the signes thereof: to wit, that the corrupt matter which issueth from his nostrils will bee darke,

darke, thinne, and reddish, with little streakes of blond in it. It is supposed by some Farriers, that this disease is a foule Consumption of the Liver, and I doe not derogate from that opinion: For I have found the liver wasted in those horses which I have opened upon this disease: And this Consumption proceeds from a cold, which after grows to a poze, then to a Glanders and lastly to this mourning of the Chine.

The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers, is to take cleare water, and that Honey which is called *Hydromel*, a quart, and put thereunto three ounces of Saller-oyle, and powre it into his nostrills each morning, the space of three dayes, and if that helpe not, then give him to drinke every day, or once in two dayes at the least, a quart of old wine mingled with some of the soveraign medicine called *Tetrapharmacum*, which is to be had almost of every Apothecary. Others use to take Garlick, Houssicke and Chervil, and stamping them together, to thrust it up into the horses nostrills.

Others use to let the horse fast all night, then take a pint and a halfe of milke, three heads of Garlick pild and stamped, boyle them to the halfe, and give it to the horse, some at the mouth, and some at the nose: then gallop him a quarter of a mile, then rest him: then gallop him halfe a mile, and rest him againe: thus do twice or thrice together, then set him up warme, and give him no water till it bee high noone: then give him a sweete mash: use this cure at least three dayes together. Others use to take half a pecke of Oates, and boyle them in running water till

all halfe be consumed, then put them into a bagge, and lay them very hot upon the navell place of his backe, and there let it lye thirty houres, using thus to doe three or foure times at the least. Others use to take Worme-wood, *Perfedanum* and *Gentory*, of each like quantity: boyle them in wine, then straine them, and powre thereof many times into his nostrills, especially into that which most runneth. Others use to take hare-hound, Licoras, and Aniseeds, beaten to powder: then with sweet butter to make pills thereof, and to give them fasting to the horse. Others use to take wheate flower, aniseeds, and licoras stamped in a mortar, five or sixe cloves of garlick bruised mixe all these together, and make a paste of them, then make it into pills as big as wall-nuts, and taking out the horses tongue, cast the balls down the horses three or four at a time, then give him two new laid egges shells and all after them.



Now after all these, the best and most approved medicine is, to take as much of the middle Greene barke of an Elder tree growing on the water side, as wil fill a reasonable vessell, putting therunto as much running water as the vessell will hold, and let it boile till halfe be consumed, and then fill up the vessell againe with water, continuing so to doe three times one after another: and at the last time, when the one halfe is consumed, take it from the fire, and straine it exceedingly through a linnen cloath; then to that decoction adde at least a full third part of the oyle of oates, or for want of that, of oyle olive, or of hogs grease, or sweet butter; and being warmed againe, take a quart thereof, and give it the horse to drinke,
one

one hornesfall at his mouth, and another at his nostrills, especially that which casteth out the matter. And in any case let the horse bee fasting when hee taketh this medicine: for it not onely cureth this, but any sicknesse preceeding from cold whatsoever: It shall be also good to use to his body some wholsome friction, and to his head some wholsome bath, of which baths you shall read more hereafter in a Chapter following. For his dyet, his food would be sodden barley, and sweet hay, and his drink warm water, or mashes: but if it be in the Summer season, then it is best to let him run at grasse only.

CHAP. XLVI.

A most rare and certaine approved Medicine to cure any high running Glanders, called the Mourning of the Chine, held of all men incurable.

THIS disease, to my knowledge, there is not any Smith or Farrier in this Kingdome, can tell how to cure: For it comes not to the extremitie till the horse have runne at his nose a yeare or more: and have at the rootes of his tongue a hard lump gathered, which will not be dissolved. Now for mine owne part, it is well knowne I have cured many with this medicine onely. Take of *Auripigmentum* and of *Tussilaginis* beaten into fine powder, of each of them foure drammes: Then bearing them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a paste, then make of it little cakes or trotches, as broad as a groat, and dry them: This done, lay about two or three of them
on

on a chaffing-dish of coales, and cover them with a Tunnel, so that the smoake may come out onely at the end thereof, and so without any losse ascend up into the Horses head through his nostrils, then ride the horse till he begin to sweate: do this once every morning before water til the running be stopr, which will bee in a very short space, considering the greatnesse of the disease.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of the Cough.

Coughing is a motion of the Lungs, raised naturally from his expulsive power, to cast out the hurtfull cause, as neezing is the motion of the braine. Now of Coughs, there be some outward, and some inward: those are said to bee outward which proceed of outward causes, as when a Horse doth eat or drink too greedily, so that his meate goeth the wrong way; or when hee licketh up a feather, or eateth dusty or sharp-bearded straw, & such like, which tickling his throate, causeth him to cough: those which are said to be inward, are either wet or dry, of which we shall speake more hereafter. Now of these outward coughes, they may proceede from the corruption of the ayre, which if it do, you shall give him halfe an ounce of *Diapente* in a pinte of Sacke, and it will helpe. It may also proceed from dust, and then you must wash it down by powring into his nostrils Ale and Oyle mingled together. It may come by eating sharpe and sowre things; and then you must put downe his throat pills of sweete butter, whose

softnesse

softnesse will helpe him. It may proceed from some little or slight taken cold, and then you shall take the whites and yolkes of two egges, three ounces of salter oyle, two handfull of beane flower, one ounce of *Fennegreke*, mixe them with a pint of old Malmsey, and give it the Horse to drinke three days together: or else take Tarre and fresh butter; mixe them together, and give pills thereof to the horse foure times in seaven dayes, that is, the first, the third, the fifth, and the seaventh day. There be others which use to take a gallon of faire water, and make it ready to seeth: then put thereto a pecke of ground malt, with two handfull of boxe leaves chop small, and a little groundsell, mixe them all together, and give him every morning and evening a pint for a week together. If to the Box leaves you adde Oates and Betteny, it is not amisse, so you keep the Horse warme. Others use to give a horse a pinte of Swines bloud warme: Other use to boyle in a gallon of water one pound of *Fennegreke*, then straining it, give the water morning and evening by a pint at a time to drink, then drying his *Fennegreke*; give it the horse with his provender. Others use for all manner of coughs to take a quarterne of white Currants, and as much clarified Honey, two ounces of sweete Marjoram, with old fresh grease, and a head of Garlick, melt that which is to be molten; and punne that which is to be beaten; mixe them together, and give the horse a pinte thereof better then three mornings together. Others use to give the Horse the gut of a yong puller dipt in honey and being warme, and certainly there is not any of these medicines but are

most soveraigne and well approved. Now where-
as some *Farrriers* use to thrust downe the throate of
the horse a willow wand, rolled about with a linnen
cloath, and anointed all over with honey, (I for my
part,) doe not like it: for it both torments the horse,
more then there is occasion, and doth but only goe
about to take away that which is gone in the strug-
ling, before the medicine can be used: for it is onely
for a cough which commeth by a feather, or some
such like matter.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of the inward or wet Cough.

Touching inward coughes, which are gotten and
ingendred by colds and rhumes of long continu-
ance, being not only dangerous, but sometimes
mortall, you shall understand that they are divided
into two kindes, the one wet, the other dry: the wet
Cough proceedeth from cold causes taken after
great heat; which heat dissolving humours, those hu-
mours being againe congealed, doe presently cause
obstructions and stopping of the Lungs. Now the
signes to know this wet cough, is, the Horse will ever
after his coughing, cast out either water or matter
out of his nostrills, or champe and chaw with his
teeth the thicke matter which hee casteth out of
his throat, as you shall easily perceive, if you heed-
fully note him: he will also cough often without in-
termission; and when he cougheth hee will not much
bow downe his head, nor abstaine from his meate:
and when hee drinketh, you shall see some of his wa-

ter to issue out of his nostrills. The cure is, first to keepe him exceeding warme; then forasmuch as it proceedeth of cold causes, you shall give him hot Drinckes, and Spices, as Sacke, or strong Ale brewed with Cynamon, Ginger, cloves, treacle, long pepper, and either swines grease, faller oyle, or sweet butter; for you shall know that all cold causes are cured with medicines that open and warme; and the hot with such as cleanse and coole. Some use to take a pretty quantity of *Benjamin*, and the yolke of an egge, which being well mixt together, and put into an egge-shel, cast all down into the horses throat, and then moderately ride him up and down for more then a quarter of an houre: and doe this three or foure mornings together. Others use to keep him warme, and then to give him this drinke. Take of Barley one pecke, and boyle it into two or three gallons of running water, till the Barley burst, together with bruised Lycoras, Anyseeds, and Raisins, of each a pound, then strain it, and to that liquor put of honey a pint, and a quartern of Sugar-candy, and keepe it close in a pot to serve the horse therewith foure severall mornings, and cast not away the Barley, nor the rest of the strainings, but make it hot every day to perfume the horse withall in a close bag; and if he eate of it, it is so much the better: and after this, you shall give the horse some moderate exercise; and for his dyet let him drinke no cold water till his cough abate, and as it lesseneth, so let the water be the lesse warmed.

Now for mine owne part, though all these receits bee exceeding good, and very well approved,

ved, yet in this case, thus hath bene, and ever shall bee my practise: if I found either by the heaviness of the horses head, or by the rattling of his nostrills, that the Cough proceeded most from the stopping of his Head, I would only give him foure or five mornings together, three or four good round pills of Butter and Garlick, (well knoden together) fasting, and then ride him moderately an houre after; but if I found that the sicknesse remained in the chest or breast of the Horse, then I would give him twice in foure dayes a pint of Sacke, halfe a pint of Saller Oyle, and two ounces of Sugar-candy well brewed together, and made lukewarme, and then ride him halfe an houre after, and set him up warme, suffering him to drinke no cold water till his Cough begin to abate and leave him.

But for all wet coughes; frettized and broken Lungs, putrified and rotten Lungs, or any such moist disease, see the new Additions for the mourning of the chine, and it is a certaine cure.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the dry Cough.

THIS disease which wee call the dry Cough, is a grosse and tough humour, cleaving hard to the hollow places of the Lungs, which stopperh the winde-pipes, so that the horse can hardly draw his breath. It doth proceed by ill government from the Rhume, which distilleth from the head, falleth down

and halfe a quarter of Sugarcandy, and two ounces of Lycoras, and two ounces of Aniseeds beaten all into fine powder, and then the horse having fasted all the night, early in the morning about seaven, or eight a clock, open the horses mouth with a drench staffe and a cord, and first cast downe his throat one of the egges, and then presently powre after it a horne full of the aforesaid drinke, being made luke warme: then cast in another egge, and another horne full: and thus doe till he hath swallowed up all the egges, or three at the least; then bridle him, and cover him warmer then he was before, and set him up in the stable, tying him to the bare racke for the space of two houres: then unbridle him, and give him either some oates, hay, or grasse, yet in any case give him no hay, untill it hath been somewhat sprinkled with water: for there is no greater enemy to a dry cough then dry hay, dry straw or chaffe; then let him have cold water the space of nine dayes. Now if you chauce the first morning to leave an Egge untaken, you shal not faile to give it him, and the remainder of the drinke the morning following. If you finde by this practise that the cough weareth not away, you shall then purge his head with pills, of which you shall read in the chapter of *Purgations*: after his pills received, you shall let him fast three houres, standing warm cloathed and littered in the stable: you shall also now and then give him a warme mash, and once a day trot him moderately abroad.

There be other *Farrriers* which for this dry Cough take onely the herbe called *Lyons foote*, *Ladies mantle*, *Spurge*, and *Smallage*, of each like quantiry, seeth

feeth them in a quart of old wine, or a quart of running water till some part be consumed, and give it the horse to drinke; if instead of the hearbs themselves, you give the juyce of the hearbs in wine, it is good. Ther be others which take a good quantity of white Currants, and as much Honey, two ounces of Marjoram, one ounce of Peniriall, with five pounds of fresh grease, and nine heads of *Garlick*; beate that which is to be eaten, and melt the rest; give this in foure or five dayes like Pills disp'd in Honey. Others use to take *Myrrh*, *Opoponax*, *Iris Ilerica* and *Galbanum*, of each two ounces, of red *Storax* three ounces, of *Turpentine* four ounces, of *Henbane* half an ounce, of *Opium* halfe an ounce, beat them to a fine powder, and give two or three spoonfull with a pint of old wine, or a quart of Ale.

Others use to take forty graines of Pepper, foure or five roots of Raddish, foure heads of *Garlick*, and sixe ounces of sweete Butter; stampe them all well together, and give every day a ball of it to the horse for a weeke together, making him fast two houres after his taking it: and surely it is a most excellent approved medicine for any old over-growne cold, or cough. Other Farriers use to take of Oyle de Bay, and of sweet Butter, of each halfe a pound, of *Garlick* one pound, beat it together unpill'd, and being well beaten with a pestle of wood, adde your oyle and Butter unto it: then having made it into balls, with a little Wheat flower, give your horse every morning for a weeke and more, three or foure balls as bigge as Walnuts, keeping him fasting after from meate three houres, and from drinke till it be night, provided

ded that fill his drinks with wine, and his means, if it possible may be, with milk, or has sprinkled with water; as for his provender it should be Oates, and Rye, and be sprinkled among it. Now if you perceive that after a fortnight's end, his cough doth nothing at all abate, you shall then for another week give him again the same Physick, and diet, but surely for mine own part, I have never found it to fail in any horse who's ever, yet I would wish all Farriers not to be too busy with these inward medicines, except they be well assured that the cold hath been long, and that the cough is dangerous.

for any cold, dry Cough, shortness of
breath, purrillie or broken minded.

The first is take of Lard three Spoonful of Lycer
as much Bees & work them wel together
with the fine powder of Lyceras, Anile, seeds, and
Sugar-candy, till it be brought to a hard paste: then
make it into three round balls, and put into each
ball four or five cloves of Garlick, and so give them
to the horse, and warm him with riding both before
and after he hath received the pills, and bee assured
that he be fasting when he takes it, and fast at least
two hours after he hath taken it.

The second is, take of the white fat or lard of Bacon, a peece foure fingers long, and almost two fingers thicke both wayes : then with your Knife making many holes into it, stop it with as many cloves

of

For the Cure of a Cough, as you can conveniently get into it, then
powder it in the powder of Licorice, Aniseedey,
Sugar-candy, and Broomstone, and equally mixt toge-
ther, give it your horse fasting in a morning at least
once a weeke continually, and ride him after it, and
bee sure that all the Hay he eats be finely sprinkled
with water.

CHAP. LI.

*The best of all other Medicines for a dry
Cough, never before mentioned,
nor revealed.*

TAKE of the Syrup of Colts-foot two ounces, of
the powder of Elicampagne, of Aniseedey, and
of Licorice, of each halfe an ounce, of Sugar-candy
divided into two parts two ounces, then with sweet
blancke worke the Syrup and the powders, and one
part of the Sugar-candy into a stiffe paste, and there-
of make pills or small balls, and roule them in the o-
ther part of the Sugar-candy, and so give it to the
horse fasting, and exercise him gently an houre after
it, and thus doe For divers mornings till you find a
mendment.

CHAP. LII.

*Of the frettized, broken, and rotten
Lungs.*

Coughes doe many times proceede from the cor-
ruption and putrefaction of the Lungs, gotten
either

either by some extreame cold, running, or leaping, or by over-greedy drinking after great thirst; because the lungs being inclosed in a very thinne filme, they are therefore the much sooner broken, and if such a breach be made, without instant cure, they begin to inflame and apostume, oppressing and sickning the whole lungs. Now the signes to know this disease, is, the horses flankes will beate when he cougheth, and the slower they beate, the more old and dangerous is the disease: he will also draw his wind short, and by little at once: he will groan much, be fearefull and loath to cough; and often turne his head to the place grieved: To conclude, he will never cough but he will bring up something which he will champ in his mouth after. The cure is, give him two or three ounces of hoggs-grease, and two or three spoonfull of *Diapente* brewd in a quart of barley water, wherein Currants hath been sodden. Other Farriers use to take a pound of Licoras & being scraped and sliced, to steepe it in a quart of water four and twenty houres, then to straine it, then to boyle three or foure cunces of Currants in it, and so give it the horse to drinke, and keepe him fasting three or four houres after. There bee other Farriers which use to take of *Fennugreeke*, and Lenseed, of each halfe a pound, of Gum-dragent, of Mastick, of Myrrh, of Sugar, of Fitch-flower, of each one ounce; let al these be beaten into fine powder, and then infused one whole night in a good quantity of warme water, and the next day give him a quart of this luke-warm, putting thereto two ounces of the oyle of Roses, and this you must do many dayes together: and if the disease
bee

be new, it will certainly heale; if it be never so old it will assuredly ease him, but in any case let him drinke no cold water: And for his foode, grasse is the most excellent.

Others use (and it is the best cure) to take of Malmsey a pint, of honey three spoonfull, mixe them together, then take of Myrrh, of Saffron, of Cassia and Cinnamon, of each like quantity, beate them to a fine powder, and give two spoonfull thereof in the wine to drink, do this at least a fortnight together, and it is certaine it will helpe these frettized and broken lungs; but for the putrified and rotten lungs, we will speake more in this next Chapter.

CHAP. LIII.

Of the putrified and rotten Lungs.

THis disease of rotten and exulcerate lungs, you shall know by these signes: hee will cough oft and vehemently. and ever in his coughing hee will cast little reddish lumpes out of his mouth: hee will decay much in his flesh, and yet eate his meate with more greedinesse then when hee was sound: and when hee cougheth, hee will cough with more ease and cleannesse, then if his lungs were but onely broken. The cure whereof, according to the practise of our ordinary English Farriers is, to give the horse divers mornings together a pint of strong Vinegar warme, or else as much of mans Urine, with halfe so much Hogs-grease brewed warme together.

But the more ancient Farriers take a good quantity of the juyce of Purslaine mixt with the oyle of
Roses,

of Rofes, adding thereto a little *Thuy agail* which hath before bene laid to steeping in milke, or for want thereof in barley, or baten milke strained from the corn, and give him a pint therof every morning for seven dayes together. This medicine is but onely to ripen and breake the impostume, which you shall know if it hath done, because when the fore is broken his breath will stinke exceedingly. Then shall you give him the other seven dayes drink. Take of the roore called *Gastar*, two ounces, and of *Rafia*, or *Cymosin*, three ounces beaten into fine powder, and a few Raisins, and give it him to drinke with a pint of Malmsey. Others also take of *Frankincense* and *Aristolochia*, of each two ounces beaten into fine powder, and give the horse two or three spoonefuls thereof with a pint of Malmsey. Others take of unburnt brimstone two ounces, of *Aristolochia* one ounce and a halfe beaten to powder, and give the horse with a pint of Malmsey.

CHAP. LIIII.

Of shortnesse of breath, or purfineffe;

THIS disease of short breath or purfineffe, may come two severall wayes, that is, naturally, or accidentally: naturally, as by the straightnesse of his Conduits, which convey his breath, when they want liberty to carry his breath freely, or being cloyed up with far, force stoppings and obstructions in his winde-pipe, and thereby makes his Lungs labour and worke painefully. Accidentally, as by hasty running after drinking, or upon full stomacke, by which humours

Innourts are compelled to descend downe into the throate and Lungs, and there stoppeth the passage of the breath. The signes of this disease are continuall panting and heaving of his body without any coughing, great heat of breath at his nostrills, and a squeesing or drawing in of his nose when hee breatheth: besides, a coveting to hold out his head whilst he seercheth his winde. The cure, according to the opinion of some of our best Farriers, is to give him in his provender, the Kernels of grapes, for they both starve and purge, and you must give them plentifully. The warme blood of a sucking Pigge is excellent good also. Other Farriers use to take Venus-haire, Ireos, Ash-keyes, Licoras, Fenugreek, and Raisins, of each a dram and a half, Pepper, Almonds, Borage, Nettle-seed, Aristolochia, and Coloquintida, of each two drammes, Algaritium one dram and a halfe, honey two pound, dissolve them with water, wherein Lyeoras hath bene sodden, and give him one pint every morning for three or four mornings. Others use to take Molline or Long-wort, and make a powder thereof, and give two spoonefull thereof with a pint of running water, or else powder of Gentian in the foresaid manner, and do it for divers mornings.

Others use to take of Nutmegs, Cloves, Galin-gall, graines of Paradise: of each three drammes, Caraway seed, and Fenugreek, a little greater quantity, as much Saffron, and halfe an ounce of Lycoras beate them all into fine powder: then put two or three spoonefull thereof to a pint of white wine, and the yolkes of foure egges, and give it the horse to drinke:

drinke : then tye his head up high to the rack for an houre after : that done , either ride him , or walke him up and down gently , and keep him fasting foure or five hours after at the least : the next day turn him to grasse and he will doe well. There be others which use to let the horse bloud in the necke-veine , & then give him this drinke : Take of wine and oyle of each a pint , Or *Frankinsence* halfe an ounce , and of the juyce of *Hare-bonnd* halfe a pint ; mixe them well together and give them to drink.

Others use to give him only somewhat more then a pint of honey, Hogs-grease and Butter molten together , and let him drinke it luke-warme. Egges made soft in Vinegar , as is shewed in the Chapter of the dry cough , is excellent for this shortnesse of breath , so you give the eggs increasing , that is the first day one , the second day three , and the third five : and withall to powre a little Oyle and Wine into his nostrils is very good also. There be other Farriers which use to take a Snake , and cut off her head and taile , and then take out the guts and inтраiles , boyle the rest in water till the bone part from the flesh : Then cast the bone away , and give every third day of this decoction more then a pint , til you have spent three Snakes : and this is excellent good for the dry cough also.

Now the last and best medicine for this shortnesse of breath (for indeed in this case I do not affect much physicking) is only to take Aniseeds , Lycoras , and Sugar-candy , all beaten into very fine powder , and take foure spoonefulls thereof and brew it well with a pinte of white wine , and halfe a pint of Sallet-oyle :

oyle; and use this ever after your horses travell, and a day before he is travelled.

CHAP. LV.

Of the broken winded, or Fur-sicke horse.

THIS disease of broken-winded, I have ever since I first began to know either horse or horse-leach craft, very much disputed with my selfe: and for many yeares did constantly hold (as still I doe) that intruth there is no such disease: only in this I found by daily experience, that by over-hasty or sudden running of a fat horse (or other) presently after his water, or by long standing in the stable with no exercise and foule food, that thereby grosse and thicke humours may be drawn downe into the horses body so abundantly, that cleaving hard unto the hollow places of his Lungs, and stopping up the wind-pipes, the winde may be so kept in, that it may onely have his resort backward, and not upward, filling the guts, and taking from the body great part of his strength and lively-hood: which if from the corruption of our old inventions, we call broken-winded, then I must needs confesse, that I have seene many broken-winded horses. The signes of which disease are these, much and violent beating of his flanks, especially drawing up of his belly upward, great opening and raising of his nostrills, and a continuall swift going too and fro of his ruell: besides, it is ever accompanied with a dry and hollow cough. The cure, I must needs say in so great an extremitie (for it is the worst of all the evils of the lungs

Lungs which are before spoken of) is most desperate, but the preservations and helps both to continue the horses health and his daily service, are very many, as namely (according to the opinion of the Ancient Farriers) to purge your horse by giving him this drink. Take of *Maiden-haire*, *Ireos*, *Ashe*, *Lycoras*, *Fennugreeke*, *Basnis*, of each halfe an ounce, of *Cardanum*, *Pepper*, bitter *Almonds*, *Borago*, of each two ounces, of *Nettle-seed*, and of *Aristolochia* of each two ounces, boyle them altogether in a sufficient quantity of water, and in that decoction dissolve halfe an ounce of *Agericke*, and two ounces of *Coloquintida*, together with two pound of honey, and give him a pint and a halfe of this at a time, for at least a weeke together, and if the medicine chance at any time to prove too thick, you shall make it thinne with water, wherein *Lycoras* hath beene sodden; and some Farriers also besides this medicine, will with a hot Iron draw the flanks of the Horse to restrain their bearing, and sit the Horses nostrils to give the winde more liberty, but I doe not affect either the one or the other: The best diet for a horse in this case, is grasse in Summer, and hay sprinkled with water in Winter. There be other Farriers which for this infirmity hold, that to give the horse three or foure dayes together sodden wheat, and now and then a quart of new sweet wine, or other good wine, mixt with *Lycoras* water, is a certaine remedy. There be other Farriers which for this disease take the guts of a Hedge-hog, and hang them in a warme Oven till they be dry, so that a man may make powder of them: Then give your horse

two or three Spoonfull thereof with a pint of wine or strong Ale: then the rest mixe with Anise-seeds Lycoras, and sweet butter, and make round balls or pills thereof, and give the horse two or three after his drinke: and so let him fast at least two houres after. Now when at any time you give him any Proven-der, bee sure to wash it in Ale or Beere; then take Comin, Anise-seeds, Lycoras, and Sentuary, of each a just quantity, make them being mixt together into fine powder, and strew two Spoonfull thereof upon the provender being wet. This Physicke must be used for a fortnight at the least. Others use to take of Cloves & Nutmegs three drams, of Galingale and Cardomonum three drams, of Soot, of Bay-seeds, and Comin, of each three drams, and make them into fine powder, and put it into white wine, being well tempered with a little Saffron: then put to so many yolke of Egges as may countervayle the other quantity: then mixe them with water wherein Lycoras hath been sodden, making it so thin that the horse may drinke it, and after he hath drunke the quantity of a pint and a halfe of this drinke, tye up his head to the rack, and let him so stand at least an houre after, that the drink may descend into his guts, then walke him gently abroad, that the Medicine may worke; and in any case give him no water for the space of foure and twenty houres after: The next morning give him some grasse to eat, and the branches of Willow or Sallow, which will coole the heate of the potion.

Now there be other Farriers which take of Pances, Long-wort, Maiden-haire, the crops of Nettles, Car-

the roots of Dragon
 bruised, the roots of *Elcampane* bruised, of water-
 hempe, of *Sentriall*, of *Lightwort*, of *Angelica*, of each
 of these a good handfull, or so many of these as you
 can conveniently get: brail them and lay them all
 night in two or three gallons of water, and give it a
 boyle in the morning, and let the horse drink there-
 of as much luke warme as hee will, then after this
 drinke, give him a pretty quantity of sodden wheat:
 use this dyer for a weeke or more at the least: and
 then if the season be *spring*, put him to grass. This cure
 is of great reputation, and thought to help when all
 other faileth: for mine owne part, I wish every man to
 judge it by the practise.

There be others which onely for nine or ten daies
 together will have their horse water, wherein *Ly-*
coras hath bin sodden, mixt with wine, and hold it a
 most soveraigne helpe.

There be others which will onely give new milke
 from the Cow: But I despise of that cure, because
 Milke being onely *flegmaticke*, *flegme* is the onely
 substance of this disease. Other *Farrers* use to keepe
 the horse fasting foure and twenty houres, then take
 a quart of Ale, a quarter of an ounce of *Penagreeke*,
 halfe a quarter of Bayse, of the greene barkes of *El-*
der trees, of Sugar-candy, of water Cresses, of red
 Mints, of red Fennell, or Haw-trees leaves, and of
 Primrose leaves, of each halfe an ounce, the whites
 of fixe egges; beate these in a mortar, and feeth them
 in the Ale, give it him to drinke: then let him fast
 after two houres: then give him meate and pro-
 vender enough, yet but little drinke. Others use to
 give

give him wet hay and moderate travailes: then take twenty egges, and steepe them in vinegar foure and twenty houres, giving the horse two every morning, and after the egges are spent, a pottle of new milke from the Cow.

Now there be other *Farriers* which onely will dissolve in Vinegar fiftene egges, and give the horse the first day three, the second day five, and the third seven, and hold it a good helpe. Others will take an ounce of Frankinsence, two ounces of Brimstone, and mixe it with a pint of Wine, and halfe a pint of Hony. Others will take *Sal-niter*, burnt with the powder of pitch, and give it with the same quantity of wine and hony. Others will onely give *Sal-niter* mingled with his meate, provided alwaies, that in every cure you keepe your horse from cold and labour, and daily chafe his head with oyle and wine. But of this I spoke in the last new Additions for the dry Cough, noted thus.

CHAP. LVII
Of the dry Malady or Consumption.

THis disease of the dry Malady, or as the Ancient *Farriers* teame it, a generall Consumption, is nothing but a meere exulceration of the Lungs, proceeding from a cankerous fretting and gnawing humour engendred by cold and Rheum, which descending from the head, sicketh and corroderth the Lungs. Some of our ignorant *Farriers* will call it the mourning of the Chine, but they are thus far forth deceived: that the mourning of the Chine dothe

vet caſt ſome filthy maſter from the noſe, and the dry malady never caſteth forth any thing.

The ſignes to know this dry malady or Conſumption, are theſe: His fleſh, and ſtrong ſtate of body will conſume and waſte away, the Belly will bee gaunt, his Backe bone hid, and his ſkin ſo ſtretched or ſhrunk up, that if you ſtrike on him with your hand, it will ſound hollow like a Tabor: his haire will hardly ſhed, and leither hee will ſcarcely deny his meate, for the meate hee eateth will not digeſt, proſper, or breed any fleſh on his body, hee will offer to cough, but cannot, except in a ſaine manner, as though he had eaten ſmall bones, and truly, according to the opinion of others, ſo I finde by mine owne praſtiſe of fifty yeares, that it is incurable; yet that a horſe may be long preſerved to doe much ſervice, I have found it by theſe helpes: Firſt, to purge his head with ſuch Fumes and Pils as are good for the Glaunders, which you may finde in the Chapter of Purgations, then give him Cole-worts ſmall chopt with his Provender, and now and then the bloud of a ſucking Pig warme.

There be other well experienced men, that inſtead of the bloud, will give either the juyce of *Leekes* mixt with Oyle and Wine, or elſe Wine and *Frankincenſe*, or Sallet Oyle and the juyce of *Rue* mixt together: But in my conceite, the beſt cure is to purge his body cleane with comfortable and gentle ſcourges, and then to bee ſuffered to run at Graſſe, both for a Winter and a Summer, and there is no queſtion but hee muſt neceſſarily end or mend, for languish long he cannot.

CHAP. LVII.

Of the consumption of the flesh.

THis disease which wee call the Consumption of the flesh, is an unnaturall or generall dislike, or falling away of the whole body, (or as we terme it) the wasting of the flesh, which proceedeth from diuers grounds. as namely, from inward surfeits, either by naughty foode, or ill dyer, or from uncleane, moyst, and stinking lodging, but especially from disorderly labour, as by taking great and suddaine colds after violent heate, or such like; all which procure the wasting or falling away of the flesh. The signes whereof are these: first, an unnaturall & causelesse leanenesse, a dry and hard skin cleaving fast to his sides, want of stomacke, or appetite to his meat, a falling away of his fillers, and a generall Consumption both of his buttocks and shoulders: the cure whereof, according to the Ancients, is to take a Sheepes head unslaied, and boyle it in a gallon and a halfe of Ale, or running water, untill the flesh be consumed from the bones; then straine it through a Cloath, and put thereto of Sugar halfe a pound, of Cynamon one ounce, of conserve of Roses, of Barberries and of Cherries, of each one ounce; mingle them together, and give the horse every morning a quart thereof luke-warme, till two sheepes heades bee spent; and after every time he drinketh, let him be gently Walked or Ridden up and downe according to his strength, that is, if the Weather bee warme abroad, if it bee cold and Windy, then

in the stable, or some close house, suffering him neither to eate nor drinke for two houres after his medicine; and from cold water you shall keepe him the space of fifteene dayes. Now for his ordinary foode or Provender, you shall repute that best which he eateth best wharsoever it be; and that you shall give by litle and litle, and not any grosse or great quantity at once, because the abundance and glut of foode taketh away both the apperire and nutriment, which should proceed from wholesome feeding.

CHAP. LVIII.

How to make a leane horse fat.

BESIDES this generall Consumption of a Horses flesh, which for the most part, or altogether, proceedeth from sicknesse, there is also another Consumption, or want of flesh, which proceedeth from neshnesse, tendernesse, freenesse of Spirit, and the climate under which the horse is bred: as namely, when a Horse that is bred in a warme Climate, comes to live in a cold; or when a horse that is bred upon a fruitfull and rich soyle, comes to live in a barren and dry place. In any of these cases the horse will be leane without any apparent signe of griefe or Disease, which to recover there bee many receites and medicines, as namely: The ancient *Farriers* did use when a horse either grew leane without sicknesse or wound, or any knowne distemperature, to take a quarter of a pecke of beanes, and boyle them in two gallons of water till they swell or burst, then to mixe with them a pecke of wheate branne, and so

so give it the horse in manner of a Mash, prinstead of provender : for it will fat suddenly. Others, and especially the *Italians*, will take Cole-worts, and having sodden them, mixe them with wheat bran, and salt, and give them in stead of provender. There be others which take the fatty decoction of three Tortoyse being well sodden, (their heads, rayles, bones, and feete being rejected) and give it the Horse, suppose it fatteth suddenly: or if you mixe the flesh of the Tortoyse so sodden with your horses provender, that is good also : But as the simples are *Italian*, and not *English*, so I for mine owne part, I refer the use rather to them then to my Country-men. There be others which use to fat up their horses by giving them a certaine graine which wee call *Bucke*, in the same manner as we give oates or pease. There be others which to fat a horse, will give him onely parched wheate, and a little wine mixed with his water, and amongst his ordinary Provender alwaies some wheate bran; and bee exceeding carefull that the horse be cleane drest, well rubbed, and soft littered: for without such cleane keeping there is no meate will enjoy, or doe good upon him; and also when he is fed, it must be by little at once, and not surfeited. There bee other *Farrriers* which to feede up a leane horse, will take Sage, Savin, Bay-berries, Earth-nuts, Beares grease, to drinke with a quart of Wine. Others will give the intrailles of a Barbell or Tench with white wine. Others will give new hot drasse, and new branne, and twenty hard roasted egges, the shells being pulled off, then bruise them, and then put thereto a pretty quantity of Salt, then mixe all

together, and give a good quantity thereof to the horse at morn, noone, and at evening for his provender; and once a day (which would be at high noone) give him a quart or three pints of strong Ale, and when the horse beginneth to bee gluttered upon this mear, then give him dried oates: if he be gluttered upon that, then give him bread, if hee leave his bread, give him malt, or any graine that hee will eat with a good Appetite, observing ever to keepe the horse very warme, and with this dyer in foureteene daies the leanest horse will be made exceeding fat. There be other *Farriers* which to make a horse fat, will take a quart of Wine, and halfe an ounce of Brimstone finely beaten with a raw egge, and a penny weight of the powder of *Mirrhe*; mixe all together, and give it the horse to drinke many mornings together. Others will take three leaved grasse, halfe greene, and halfe dry, and give it the horse in stead of hay, by little at once, and it will fat suddenly, onely it will breede much rank bloud. Other *Farriers* use to take two penny worth of pepper, and as much Saffron, Aniseedes, and Turmericke, a penny worth of long pepper, two penny worth of Treacle, a penny worth of Lycoras, a good quantity of Peny-riall, and Archangell: give the horse these with the yolkes of egges in milke to drinke. Others use to take wheate made cleane, and fod with salt and lard dried in the Sunne, and give it twice a day before each watering. Others strong Ale, *Myrre*, saltet oyle, and twenty graines of white pepper, and instead of the Ale, you may take the Decoction; that is, the water wherein Sage and Rue hath beene sodden, and it will soone make the horse

horse fat. Others take sodden beanes well bruised, and sprinkled with Salt, adding to the water foure times so much beane flowre, or Wheate branne, and give that to the horse, and it will fat him suddenly. Wine mixt with the blood of a sucking Rigge, made luke-warm, or wine with the ioyce of Feather-seaw, or an ounce of Sulphur, and a penny weight of Myrre well made into powder, together with a new laid Egge, will raise up a horse that languisheth. Barley dried, or Barley boyled till it burst, either will fatten a horse.

But the best way of fattening of a horse (for most of the waies before prescribed, are not to breed fat that will continue) is first to give your horse three mornings together a pint of sweet wine, and two spoonefull of *Diapente* brewd together: for that drink will take away all infection and sicknesse from the inward parts: then to feed him well with provender at least foure times a day, that is, after his water in the morning, after his water at noone, after his water in the evening, and after his water at 9 of the clock at night. Now you shall not let his provender bee all of one sort, but every meale, if it may be change, as thus: if in the morning you give him Oates, at noone likewise you shall give him bread, at evening beanes or Peare mixt with Wheate branne, at night sodden Barley, &c. and ever observe of what food hee eateth best, of that let him have the greatest plenty, and there is no question but hee will in short space grow fat, sound, and full of spirit, without either dislike or sicknesse,

CHAP. LIX.

*The mirrour and master of all Medicines, teaching
how to make the leanest and unsoundest Horse
that may be, fat, sound, and fit either for
market or travaile in the space of
fourteene daies.*

IF your horse be full of all the inward diseases that
may bee, and brought to that dislike and poverty
that you are desperate of his life, you shall take of
Aniseedes, of Comenseedes, of Fennigreeke, of
Carthamus, of Elicampane, of the flour of Brim-
stone, of browne Sugar-candy, of each of these two
ounces, beaten and searst in a very fine powder, then
take an ounce of the juyce of Licoras, and dissolve it
in halfe a pint of white wine, then take three ounces
of the Syrrup of Colts-foot, of Saller oyle, and of
life honey, of each halfe a pint, then mixe all this
with the former powders, and with as much wheate
flowre as will binde and knit them altogether, work
them into a stiffe paste, and make thereof balles as
bigge as French Walnuts, hulls and all, and so keepe
them in a close Gally-pot, and when you have oc-
casion to use them, take one and annoynt it with
sweet Butter, and give it the horse in the manner of a
pill, and ride him a little after it, then feed and water
him as at other times. And thus doe (if it be to pre-
vent sicknesse) for three or foure mornings together.

But if it be to take away infirmity, as Glangers, &c.
then use it at least a weeke or more.

But if to take away molten-grease, then instant-
ly

ly after his heate, and in his heate.

But if to fatten a horse, then use it at least a fortnight: now as you give them thus in the manner of a Pill, so may you give them dissolved in sweet wine, *Alex. or Brese.*

Lastly, if it bee to fatten a horse, then you shall take the second Balls: that is to say, of Wheate-meale sixe pound, or as Physicians write, *Quantum sufficit*, of Aniseedes two ounces, of Comen seeds sixe drammes, of *Carthamus* one dram and a halfe, of Fenugreeke seedes one ounce two drammes, of Brimstone one ounce and a halfe, of Sallet oyle one pint two ounces, of hony one pound and a halfe, of white wine foure pints: This must be made into paste, the hard Simples being ponneded into powder, and finely searst, and then well kneaded together, and so made into balls as bigge as a mans fist, and then every morning and evening when you would water your horse, dissolve into his cold water one of these balls, by lathering and chaffing the same in the water, and then give it him to drink. The horse it may be will coy at the first to drinke, but it is no matter, let him fast till he take it: for before two balls bee spent, hee will refuse all waters for this onely: This is the medicine above all medicines, and is truly the best scouring that can bee given to any horse whatsoever: for besides his wonderfull feeding, it cleanseth the body from all bad humours whatsoever.

CHAP. LX,

Of the Breast-paine, or paine in the breast:

THough most of our *Farriers* are not curious to understand this Disease, because it is not so common as others: yet both my selfe and others find it is a disease very apt to breede, and to endanger the Horse with death. The *Italians* call it *Grannezza di petto*, and it proceedeth from the superfluity of bloud and other grosse humours, which being dissolved by some extreme and disorderly heat, resorteth downward to the breast, and paineth the horse extremely, that he can hardly goe. The signes are, a stiffe staggering, and weake going with his fore-legges, and hee can very hardly, or not at all bow downe his head to the ground, either to eate or drinke, and will groane much when he doth either the one or the other. The cure is, first to bathe all his breast and fore-boother with the oyle of *Peter*, and if that doe not helpe him within three or foure daies, then to let him bloud on both his breast-veines in the ordinary place, and then put in a rowel either of haire, corke, horne, or leather, of all which, and the manner of rowelling, you shall Read in a more particular Chapter hereafter in the booke of *Chyrurgery*.



Now there be other *Farriers* which for this sickness will first give the horse an inward drench, as namely, a pint of sweete wine, and two spoonfull of *Diapente*, then bathe all his breast and legs with wine and oyle mingled together, and in some ten or twelve daies it will take away the grieve.

CHAP. LXI.

*Of the sicknesse of the Heart, called**the Anticor.*

THis sicknesse of the heart, which by the ancient *Farriers* is called *Anticor*, as much as to say, against or contrary to the heart, is a dangerous and mortall sicknesse, proceeding from the great abundance of bloud which is bred by too curious and proud keeping, where the horse hath much meate, and little or no labour, as for the most part your Geldings of price have, which running all the Summer at grasse, doe nothing but gather their owne food, & such like, where the masters too much love and tenderesse is the meanes to bring the horse to his death as wee finde daily in our practice: for when such naughty and corrupt bloud is gathered, it resorteth to the inward parts, and so suffocateth the heart. The signes whereof are, the horse will many times have a small swelling rise at the bottome of the Breast, which swelling will encrease and rise upward even to the top of the necke of the horse, and then most assuredly it kills the horse: he will also hang his head either downe to the manger, or downe to the ground, forsaking his food, and groaning with much painefulnesse. This Disease is of many a ignorant Smith taken sometimes for the Yellowes, and sometimes for the Staggers, but you shall know that it is not, by these observation: First, neither about the whires of his eyes, nor the insides of his lippes shall you perceiue any apparant yellowes, and so then it cannot

cannot be the Yellowes, nor will hee have any great swelling about his eyes, nor dizziness in his head, before hee be at the point of death; and so consequently it cannot bee the Staggers. The cure whereof is two-fold: the first a prevention, or preservative before the disease come: the second a remedy after the disease is apparant.

✚ For the prevention, or preservative, you shall observe, that if your horse live idely, either at grasse or in the stable, and withall grow very fat, which farnesse is never accompanied with corruptnesse, that then you faile not to let him bloud in the neck-veine before you turne him to grasse, or before you put him to feed in the stable; and likewise let him bloud two or three moneths after, when you see hee is fed, and at each time of letting bloud, you must make your quantity according to the goodnesse of the bloud. For if the bloud be blacke and thick, which is a signe of inflammation and corruption, you shall take the more; if it be pure, red, and thin, which is a signe of strength and healthfulnesse, you shall take little or none at all. There be others which use for this prevention, to give the horse a scouring, or purgation of Malmsey, Oyle, and Sugar-candy, the making and use whereof you shall read in the Chapter of Purgations, and this would be given immediately when you put your horse to feed, and as soon as you see his skin full swolne with farnesse.

Now for the remedy when this disease shall be apparant, you shall let him bloud on both his plat-veines, or if the Smiths skill will not extend so farre, then you shall let the Horse bloud on the Neck-veine,

veine, and that he bleed abundantly : then you shall give him this drinke. Take a quart of Malmsey, and put thereunto halfe a quarterne of Sugar, and two ounces of Cinamon beaten to powder, and being made warme, give it the horse to drinke : then keep him very warme in the stable, stuffing him round about with soft wispes very close, especially about the stomach, least the winde doe annoy him : and let his ordinary drinke be warme mashes of malt and water, and his foode onely that, whatsoever it be which he eateth with the best stomacke.

Now if you see any swelling to appeare, whether it bee soft or hard : then besides letting him blood, you shall strike the swelling in divers places with a Fleam or Lancet, that the corruption may issue forth, and then anoynt it with Hogges grease made warme : For that will either expell it, or bring it to a Head, especially if the swelling bee kept exceeding warme. There be other Farriers which for this disease use to let the horse blood as is aforesaid, and then to give him a quart of Malmsey, well brewed with three spoonefull of the powder called *Diapente*, and if the swelling arise, to lay thereunto nothing but hay well sodden in old urine, and then keep the same dyet as is aforesaid. Others use after the letting of blood, to give the horse no drinke, but onely ten or twelve spoonefulls of that water which is called *Doctor Stephens Water*, and is not unknowne to any Apothecary : and then for the rest of the cure to proceed in all things as is before specified, and questionlesse I have seene strange effects of this practice.

CHAP. LXII.

Of tyred Horses.

Since wee are thus farre proceeded into the inward and vitall parts of a horses body, it is not amisse to speake something of the tiring of horses, and of the remedies for the same, because when a horse is truly tired (as by over extreame labour) it is questionlesse that all his vitall parts are made sicke and feebled. For to tell you in more plainnesse what tiring is, it is when a horse by extreame and uncessant labour, hath all his inward and vitall powers which should accompany and rejoyce the heart, expelled and driven outward to the outward parts, and lesse deserving members, leaving the heart fortorne and sicke, insomuch that a generall and cold faintnesse spreadeth over the whole body and weakeneth it, in such sort that it can endure no further travaile, till those lively Heates, Faculties, and Powers bee brought unto their naturall and true places backe againe, and made to give comfort to the heart whom their losse sickned.

Now for the tiring of horses, though in truth it proceedeth from no other cause but this before spoken, yet in as much as in our common and vulgar speech, wee say every horse that giveth over his labour is tyred, you shall understand, that such giving over may proceed from foure causes: the first, from inward sicknesse: the second, from some wound received either of body or limbes: the third, from dulnesse of spirit, Cowardlinesse, of Restinesse; and the

the fourth from most extreame labour and travaile, which is true tyrednesse indeed. Now for the first, which is inward sicknesse, you shall looke into the generall signes of every disease, and if you finde any of those signes to be apparant, you shall straight conclude upon that disease, and taking away the cause thereof, have no doubt but the effect of his tiring will vanish with the same: for the second, which is by some wound received, as by cutting or dismembring the sinews, ligaments, muskles, or by straying or stooming any bone or joynt, or by pricking in shoeing, or striking naile, iron, stub or thorne into the sole of the horses foot, and such like.

Sith the first is apparant to the eye, by dis-joyning the skin, the other by halting, you shall take a survey of your horse, and finding any of them apparant, look what the griefe is, repaire to the latter part of this booke, which intreateth of Chyrurgery, and finding it there use the meanes prescribed, & the tiring will easily be cured. Now for the third, which is dulnesse of Spirit; Cowardnesse or restinesse, you shall finde them by these signes: If hee have no apparant signe either of inward sicknesse, or outward griefe, neither sweateth much, nor sheweth any great alteration of countenance: Yet notwithstanding tyreth, and refuseth reasonable labour, then such tiring proceedeth from dulnesse of spirit, but if after indifferent long travaile the horse tyre, and then the man descending from his backe, the Horse run or trot away, as though he were not tyred: the man then mounting againe, the horse utterly refuse to go forward, such tiring proceedeth from cowardnesse;

but if a horse within one, two, or three miles Riding, being temperately used, and being neither put to any tryall of his strength, nor, as it were scarcely warmed, if he in his best strength refuse labour, and tyre, it proceedeth onely from Restinesse and ill conditions. Then for the cure of any of all these, proceeding from Dulnesse, Fearfulnesse, and Unwillingnesse, you shall take ordinary Window glasse, and beate into fine powder: Then take up the skynne of each side the *Spurre* veine betweene your finger and your thumb, and with a fine nayle or bodkin, make divers small holes through his skynne, then rubbe Glasse powder very hard into those holes; which done, mount his backe, and doe but offer to touch his sides with your heeles, and be sure if hee have life in in him, he will goe forward, the greatest feare being that he will still but goe too fast; but after your journey is ended, and you alighted, you must not sayle (because this powder of Glasse will corrode and rot his sides) to annoint both the sore places with the powder of *Iet* and *Turpentine* mixt together, for that will draw out the venom, and heal his sides againe. There be others which use when a Horse tyreth thus through dull cowardlinesse or Restinesse, to thrust a burning Brand or yron into his Buttocks, or to bring Bottles of blazing straw about his eares, there is neither of the cures but is exceeding good.

But for the true tyred horse, which tyreth through a naturall faintnesse, drawne from exceeding labour: the signes to know it being long travell, much sweat, and willingnesse of course during his strength: the

Cure

cure thereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to powre oyle and vineger into his nostrills, and to give him the drinke of Sheeps heads, mentioned in the Chapter of the consumption of the flesh, being the 57 Chapter of this booke, and to bath his Leggs with a comfortable bath, of which you shall finde choyse in the Chapter of Bathes, or else charge them with this charge: Take of Bole-armony, and of Wheate flower, of each halfe a pound, and a little Rozen beaten into fine powder, and a quart of strong Vineger, mingle them well together, and cover all his legges therewith, and if it bee in the Summer, turne him to grasse, and hee will recover his wearinesse. Others use to take a slice of fresh Beefe, having steeped it in Vineger, lap it about your bit or snaffle, and having made it fast with a threed, ride your Horse therewith, and he will hardly tyre: yet after your journey is ended, bee sure to give your horse rest, much warmth, and good feeding, that is, warm mashes, and store of provender, or else he will be the worse whilst he liveth.

Now if it be so that your horse tyre in such a place as the necessity of your occasions are to be preferred before the value of your horse, and that you must seeke unnaturall meanes to controule nature: In this case you shall take (where the powder of Glasse before spoken of cannot be had) three or foure round Pibble stones, and put them into one of his Eares, and then tye the Eare that the stones fall not out, and the noyse of those stones will make the horse go after he is utterly tyred; But if that faile, you shall with a Knife make a hole in the flap of the Horses

Eare, and thrust a long rough sticke, full of pickes, through the same; and ever as the horse slackes his pace, so saw and fret the sticke up and downe in the hole, and be sure whilest he hath any life he will not leave going.

Many other torments there are which bee needlesse to rehearse, onely this is my most generall advice, if at any time you tire your horse, to take of old urine a quart, of Salt-peter three ounces, boyle them well together, and bath all the horses foure legs in the same, and without question it will bring to the sinewes their naturall strength and nimblenesse; and for other defects warme and good keeping will cure them.

And although some of our Northern Farriers doe hold, that oaten dough will prevent rying, yet I have not approved it so, because I could never get any horse that would eat it; the dough would so sticke and clambe in the horses mouth: therefore I hold the Cures already receited to be fully sufficient. But for further satisfaction use these, which I reserved for my own privacy.

Take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto halfe an ounce of the powder of *Elicampane*, and brew them well together, and give it the horse with an horne.

Take a bunch of *Pewiriall* and tye it to the mouth of your bit or snaffle, & it will preserve a horse from rying. Now if all these faile, then take off your horses Saddle, and rub his back all over very hard, with the hearb called *Arffmart*, and lay *Arffmart* under his Saddle, and so ride him.

CHAP. XLIII.

*Of the Diseases of the stomacke, and first of
the loathing of meate.*

THIS Disease of the loathing of meate, is taken two
wayes, the one a forsaking of meate, as when a
Horses mouth, either through the inflammation of
his stomacke, doth breake out into Blisters, or such
like venomous soares: or when he hath the Lampas,
Gigges, Wolfes reeth, and such like. The cure of
all which you shall readily finde in the second part of
this book, which treateth of Chirurgery: the other
a dislike of his meate through the intemperature of
his stomacke, being either too hot, as proceeding
either from rankenesse of blond, or extreamity of
travaile, as you may perceive by daily experinece,
when a horse is ser up in the stable very hot, & meate
instantly given him, it is all things to nothing, but he
will loath and refuse it. Hence it comes, that I doe
ever hate the noone-tide baiting of horses, because
mens journeyes commonly crave haste, the horse
cannot take such a naturall cooling as hee ought
before his meate, and thereby breeds much sick-
nesse and disease: for meate given presently after tra-
vaile when a horse is hot, is the mother of all infirmi-
ty: or else it proceedeth from the intemperature of
the Stomacke, being too cold, as being caused by
some naturall defect. Now if it proceed from heat
onely, which you shall know either by his sudden
loathing of his meate, or the extreame heate of his
mouth and breath: Then to coole his stomacke a-

gaine, you shall either wash his tongue with vinegar, or give him to drinke cold water mingled with Oyle and Vinegar. There be other Farriers which use to give this drinke: take of milke and wine of each one pint, and put thereunto of *Mel Rosatum* three ounces, and having washed his mouth with Vinegar and Salt, give him the drinke luke-warme with a horn. But if the loathing of his meate proceed from the coldnesse of his stomacke, which onely is knowne by the standing up and staireing of the haire: Then by the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall give him Wine and Oyle mixt together divers mornings to drinke: but others of our late Farriers give wine, Oyle, Rue, and Sage boild together by a quart at at a time to drinke. Others to the former Compound will adde white Pepper and *Mirrh*. Others use to give the horse Onions pill'd and chopt, and *Rocket* seed boyled and bruised in Wine. Others use to mixe wine with the blood of a Sow-pigge. Now to conclude, for the generall forsaking or loathing of meate, proceeding either from hot or cold causes in the stomacke, there is nothing better then the Greene blades of Corne (especially weate) being given in a good quantity, and that the time of the yeare serve for the gathering thereof. Others instead thereof, will give the horse sweet wine and the seeds of *Gith* mixt together, or else sweete wine and *Garlicke* well pill'd and stamp't, being a long time biewd together.

CXXIX. LXIHD

Of the casting out of the horses drinke.

THe ancient Barriers, especially the *Italians*, constantly doe affirme, that a horse may have such a Paulsey, proceeding from the coldnesse of his stomacke, and may make him unable to retaine and keepe his drinke, but that many times he will vomit and cast it up againe: For mine owne part, from other causes, as from cold in the head, where the Rhume binding about the Roots and Kernels of the tongue, hath as it were strangled and made straight the passages to the stomacke: There I have many times seene a horse cast his *walces* that he dranke, in very aboundant sort backe againe through his Nostrills, and sometimes strive with great earnestnesse to *drinke*, but could not at all. The signes of both (from which cause soever it proceed) is only the casting up of his *drinke* or water, and the cure thereof is only to give him Cordiall and warm *drinkes*, as is Malmsey, Cinamon, Anise-seedes and Cloves, well brewd and mixt together, and to annoint his breast, and under his shoulders, with either the oyle of Cypresse, oyle of Spike, or the oyle of Pepper, and to purge his head with fumes or pills, such as will force him to sneeze; of which you may see store in a chapter following: for such fumigation joyning with these hot oyles, will soone dissolve the humours.

CHAP. LXV.

Of Sursetting with glut of provender.

There is not any Disease more easily procured, nor more dangerous to the life of a horse, then this surfeit which is taken by the glut of provender, it cometh most commonly by keeping the Horse extreame sharpe or hungry, as either by long travell or long standing empty: and then in the height of greedinesse, giving him such superabundance of meate, that his stomacke wanting strength to digest it, all the whole body is driven into an infinite great paine and extremitie. The signes are great weaknesse and feeblenesse in the Horses limbes, so that he can hardly stand, but lyeth downe oft, and being downe, walloweth and rumbleth up and downe as if he had the bots.

The cure thereof, according to the common practise of our common Farriers, is to take a halfe pennyworth of blacke Sope, and a quart of new milke, and as much sweete butter as Sope, and having on a Chaffing disht and Coales, mixe them together, and give it the Horse to drinke: this will cleanse the horses stomacke, and bring it to it's strength againe.

But the ancient Farriers did use first, to let the horse blood in the necke-veine, (because every surfeit breedes distemperature in the blood) then trot the horse up and downe an hour and more, and if he cannot stale, draw out his Yard and wash it with white Wine made luke-warme, and thrust into his yard

yard either a clove of Garlicke, or a little oyle of Camomill, with a peece of small waxe candle. If hee cannot dung, fist with your hand rake his Fundament, and then give him a glister, of which you shall reade hereafter: When his Glister is received, you shall walke him up and downe till he have emptied his belly, then set him up and keepe him hungry the space of two or three dayes, observing ever to sprinkle the hay he eateth with a little water, and let his drinke bee warme Water and Branne made mash-wise: After hee hath drunke the drinke, let him eate the Branne if hee please, but from other Provender keepe him still fasting, at the least tenne dayes.

There be other Farriers that in this case, use only to take a quart of Beer or Ale, and two penni-worth of Sallet oyle, and as much Dragon Water, a penny-worth of Treacle, and make all these warme upon the coals, then put in an ounce of Cynamon, Aniseeds, and Cloves, all beaten together, and so give it the horse luke-warme to drinke.

All these receites are exceeding good, yet for mine own part; and many of the best Farriers confirm the same, and there is nothing better for this disease then moderate exercise, much fasting, and once in foure or five dayes a pint of sweet wine, with two spoonfull of the powder of *Diapente*.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of foundring in the body, being a surfeit got either by meat, drinke, or labour.

THIS Disease of foundring in the body, is of all surfeits the most vile, most dangerous, and most incident to horses that are daily travailed; it proceedeth according to the opinion of some Farriers, from eating of much provender suddenly after labour, the horse, being then; as it were, panting hot, (as we may daily see unskilfull horsemen doe at this day,) whereby meate which the horse eateth, not being digested, breedeth evill and grosse humours, which by little and little spread themselves thorough the member, doe at length oppresse and almost confound the whole body, absolutely taking away from him all his strength, insomuch that he can neither goe nor bow his joynts, nor being laid, is able to rise againe: Besides it taketh away from him his instrumentall powers, as the office both of urine and Excrements, which cannot be performed but with extreme paine. There be other Farriers, and to their opinion I rather leane, that suppose it proceedeth from suffering the horse to drinke too much in his travaile being very hot, whereby the greafe being suddenly cooled, it doth clap about, and suffocate the inward parts with such a loathsome fulnesse, that without speedy evacuation, there can be no hope but of death onely. Now whereas some Farriers doe hold that this Foundring in the body, should bee no other then the foundring in
the

the legs, because it is (say they) a melting and dissolution of evill humours which resort downe-ward, they are much deceived : For it is not, as they hold, a dissolution of humours, but rather a binding together of corporall and substantiall evils, which by an unnaturall accident doth torment the heart. Now for the hold which they take of the name of Foundring, as if it were drawne from the *French* word *Fundu*, signifying melting, truly I think it was rather the ignorance of our old Farriers, which knew not how to intitle the Disease, then any coherence it hath with the name it beareth : For mine owne part, I am of opinion that this Disease which wee call Foundring in the body, doth not onely proceed from the causes aforesaid, but also and most oftest by suddaine washing Horses in the Winter season, when they are extreame fat and hot with instant travaile, where the cold vapour of the water striking into the body, doth not onely astonish the inward and virall parts, but also freezeth up the skinne, and maketh the blood to leese his office. Now the signes to perceive this Disease, are holding downe of his head, staring up of his haire, coughing, staggering behind, trembling after water, dislike of his mear, leanesse, stiffe going, disability to rise when he is down : And to conclude, which is the chiefest signe of all other, his Belly will be clung up to his backe, and his backe rising up like a Camell.

The cure according to the opinion of the Farriers, is first to rake his Fundament, and then to give him a Glister : Which done, and that the horses belly is emptied, then take of Malmsey a quart, of Sugar halfe

halfe a quarterne, of Cynamon halfe an ounce, of Licoras, and anise-seeds, of each two spoonefull beaten into fine powder; which being put into the Malmsey, warme them together at the fire, so that the honey may bee molten, then give it the horse lukewarme to drinke: which done, walke him up and down either in the warm stable, or some warme roade the space of an houre, then let him stand on the Bit fasting two houres more, onely let him bee warme cloathed, stopt, and littered, and when you give him Hay, let it be sprinkled with water, and let his provender be very cleane sifted from dust, and given by a little at once; and let his drinke bee warme mashes of malt and water. Now when you see him recover and get a little strength, you skal then let him bloud in the neck-veine, and once a day perfume him with Frankinsence to make him neese, and use to give him exercise abroad when the weather is warm, and in the house when the weather is stormy.

Now there be other Farriers which use for this disease to take a halfe peny worth of Garlicke, two penny-worth of the powder of Pepper, two penny-worth of the powder of Ginger, two penny-worth of Graines bruised, and put all these into a pottle of strong Ale, and give it the horse to drinke by a quart at a time, dyeting and ordering him as afore-said: and when he getteth strength, either let him bloud in the necke veine, or the spurre Veines, or on both: to conclude, there is no drinke nor dyet which is comfortable, but it is most soeveraigne and good for this infirmity.

CHAP. LXVII.

*Of the greedy worne, or hungry will
in horses.*

THIS hungry will is a Disease more common
to then found out by our Farriers, because the
most of our horse-masters being of great ignorance
hold it a speciall vertue to see a horse eate eagerly,
whereas indeede this over-hasty and greedy eat-
ing, is more rather an infirmity and sicknesse of
the inward parts; and this Disease is none other
then an insatiate and greedy eating, contrary to
Nature and old Customs, and for the most part,
it followeth some extreame great Emptinesse, or
want of naturall foode, the beast being even at the
pinch, and ready to be chap-falne. There be some
Farriers which suppose that it proceedeth from
some extreame cold outwardly taken by travel-
ling in cold and barren places, as in the forrest and
snow, where the outward cold maketh the stomacke
cold, whereby all the inward powers are weakened.
The signes are onely an alteration or change in the
Horses feeding, having lost all temperance; and
snatching and chopping at his meate, as if hee would
devoure the Manger. The cure, according to the o-
pinion of some Farriers, is fitt to comfort his sto-
macke by giving him great slices of white bread
toasted at the fire, and steeped in Muscadine, or else
bread untoasted, and steeped in Wine, and then to
let him drinke wheat flower and Wine brewed to-
gether. There be others which use to knead stiffe cakes
of

of Wheate flowre and Wine, and to feede the horse therewith. Others use to make him bread of Pine-tree nuts and wine mingled together, or else common earth and Wine mingled together. But for mine owne part, I hold nothing better then moderately feeding the horse many times in the day with wholefome Beane-bread, well baked, or oates well dried and sifted.

CHAP. LXVIII.
*Of the diseases of the Liver in Generall, and first
 of the inflammation thereof.*

THere is no question but the Liver of a horse is subject to as many diseases, as either the Liver of a man or any other creature, onely through the ignorance of our common Farriers (who make all inward diseases one sicknesse) the true grounds and causes not being looked into, the infirmity is let passe, and many times poysoned with false potions: but truth it is, that the liver sometimes by the intemperatenesse thereof, as being either too hot or too cold, too moist, or too dry, or sometimes by meanes of evill humours, as Choler, or Fleagm overflowing in the same, Heat ingendring Choler, and Coldnesse Fleagm, the Liver is subject to many sicknesse, and is diversly pained, as by Inflammations, A postumation, or Ulcer, or by Obstructions, Stoppings, or hard knobs: or lastly, by the Consumption of the whole substance thereof. The signes to know if the disease proceede from hot causes, is leshenesse of body, the loathing of meate, voyding Dung of a strong

strong scent, great thirst, and loosenesse of belly. The signes to know if the disease proceede from cold causes, is good state of body, appetite of meate, dung not stinking, no thirst, and the belly neither loose nor collicke. Now to proceede to the particular Diseases of the Liver, and first of the inflammation, you shall understand that it commeth by meanes that the blood through the abundance, thinnesse, boyling heate, or sharpenesse thereof, or through the violence of some outward cause, breake th out of the Veines, and floweth into the body or substance of the Liver; and so beeing dispossest of his proper Vessells, doth immediately putrifie, and is inflamed, corrupting much of the fleshy substance of the Liver, as is either touched or imbrued with the same, whence it commeth, that for the most part, the hollow side of the liver is first consumed, yet sometimes the full side also: This inflammation by a naturall heate is sometimes turned to putrifaction, and then it is called an Apostumation: which when either by the strength of nature or Art, it doth breake and ruine, then it is called an Ulcer, or filthy sore. Now the signes of an inflammation on the hollow side of the liver (which is the least hurtfull) is loathing of meate, great thirst, loosenesse of belly, and a continuall unwillingnesse to lye on the left side: but if the inflammation be on the full side of the Liver, then the signes be short breathing, a dry Cough, much paine when you handle the horse about the Wind-pipe, and an unwillingnesse to lye on the right side. The signes of Apostumation is great heat, long fetching of breath, and a continuall looking to his side.

side. The signes of ulceration, is continuall coldnesse, staring up of the haire and much feeblenesse and fainting, because the filthy matter casting evill vapours abroad, doth many times corrupt the heart and occasion death. Now for the cure of these inflammations, some *Farrriers* use to take a quart of Ale, an ounce of *Myrrh*, and an ounce of *Frankinsence*, and breweing them well together, give it the horse divers mornings to drinke. Others use to take three ounces of the seedes of *Smallage*, and three ounces of *Hysop*, and as much *Sutherwort*, and boyle them well in oyle and wine mingled together, and give the horse to drinke; keepe the horse warme, and let him neither drinke cold water, nor eat dry dusty hay.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of Obstructions, stoppings, or hard knobs on
the Liver.

THESE Obstructions or stopping of a Horses liver, doe come most commodly by travelling or labouring on a full stomacke, whereby the meat not being perfectly digested, breedeth grosse and rough humors, which humors by the extremitie of travell, are violently driven into the small veines, through which the liver ought to receive good nutriment, and so by that means breedeth obstructions & stoppings. Now from these obstructions (when they have continued any long time) especially if the humors be cholerick, breedeth many times hard knobs on the liver, which knobs maketh the horse continually lye
on

on his right side, and never on the left; because if he should lye on the left side, the weight of the knob would oppresse the stomacke, and even sicken all the virall parts in him.

The signes of these Obstructions or stoppings, are heavinesse of Countenance, distention or swelling, great dulnesse and sloath in the Horse when hee be- ginneth his travaile, and a continuell looking backe to his short ribs, where remaineth his greatest paine and torment. Now the cure thereof is to seeth continually in the water which he drinketh, *Agrimony; Fumitory, Camomil; Wormewood, Lycoras, Aniseeds, Smallage, Parsley, Spicknard, Gentian, Succory, Endive and Lupins*, the vertues whereof are most comfortable to the Liver. But forasmuch as the most part of our English Farriers are very simple Smiths, whose Capacities are unable to dive into these severall distinctions, and that this Worke (or Master-piece) is intended for the weakest braine whatsoever, you shall understand that there bee certaine generall signes to know when the Liver of a horse is grieved with any griefe, of what nature or condition soever it bee; and to likewise generall receits to cure all the griefes, without distinguishing or knowing their natures: You shall know then if a horse have any griefe or paine in his Liver by these signes. First, by a loathing of his meate: next by the wasting of his flesh, drynesse of his mouth, and roughnesse of his tongue, and great swelling thereof, and refusing to lye on the side grieved: And lastly, a continuall looking backward.

Now the generall cures for the sicknesse of the Li-
L ver,

vers is, according to the opinion of the ancient *Farrriers*, to give the horse *Aloes* dissolved in sweet wine: for it both purgeth and comforteth the liver. Others use to give him to drinke *Ireos* stamp't and mixt with wine and water together, or in stead of *Ireos*, to give him *Calamint*, called of the Latins *Polimonia*. Others give *Savery* with oyle and wine mixt together. Others use *Liverwort* and *Agrimony* with Wine and oyle. Others use comfortable frictions, and to steepe his Provender in warme water, and to mixe with his Provender a little *Nitrum*, not forgetting to let him stand warme, and lye soft: But that which is generally pray'd above all medicines, is to give the Horse a Woolfes Liger beaten to powder, and mixe either with Wine, Water, Oyle, or any other medicine.

✚ Now for a conclusion of this Chapter, if the *Farrriers* skill bee so good, that hee can distinguish the Nature of each severall infirmity about the Liver, then I would have him for to understand, that for inflammations (which are the first beginners of all diseases) wou'd be used simples that mollifie & disperse humours, as by these, *Linseed*, *Fenugreek*, *Camomil*, *Aniseeds*, *Mellilot*, and such like, to which mollifying simples, would be ever added some simples that are astringent or binding, or as these: red Rose leaves, Bramble leaves, Worme-wood, Plantaine, Mirrhe, Masticke, Storax, and such like. Now for Apostumes, they are to be ripened and voided, and ulcers must be cleansed & scoured downward, either by excrement or urine and therefore the use of such simples as provoke either the one or the other (of which you shall finde

finde plenty in other Chapters) is most necessary.

CHAP. LXX.

Of the Consumption of the Liver.

OF the consumption of the Liver, I have spoken something in the Chapter of the mourning of the Chine: yet because amongst our best Farriers it is diversly taken, I will shew you their divers opinions. First, some hold it commeth onely from sudden cold after heat, taken either by drinking or standing still. Others hold it commeth of any humour, especially of cholericke matter, shed throughout the whole substance of the liver, which rotting by leasurable degree, doth in the end corrupt and confound all the substance of the Liver, proceeding, as they thinke, from corrupt meates, and sweet drinks. And the last thinketh it commeth by extreame heate gotten in travell, which inflameth the blood, doth afterward putrifie, corrupt, and exulcerate the whole substance of the Liver: because the Liver is spungious like the Lungs, therefore the cure of this disease is held desperate; yet it bringeth no speedy or sudden death, but a wasting and lingring infirmity: For the Liver being corrupted, digestion is taken away, and so the body for want of good nutriment, doth in time consume. The signes of this disease is a loathing of meate, and a stretching forth of the horses body at length as hee standeth, hee will seldome or never lye downe, his breath will stinke marvelously, and he will continually cast exceeding foule matter, eyther at one Nostrill, or at both, according as one

side, or both sides of the Liver is consumed; and on that side which he castrerh, he will ever have betwixt his nether jawes, about the middest of them, a hard knob or kuirnell about the bignesse of a Walnut. Now the preservative of this disease, (for in truth it is incurable) is, according to the opinion of some *Farriers*, to take halfe a pint of Malmsey, and as much of the blood of a young pigge, and to give it the horse luke-warme to drinke. Other *Farriers* use to give the horse no other foode for the space of three dayes, then warme Wort, and oates baked in an Oven, being sure that the horse be kept fasting the first night before he received his *medicine*. Others suppose, that if into the wort which he drinketh, you do put every morning two or three spoonfull of the powder made of *Agrimony*, red *Rose leaves*, *Saccharum*, *Rosacum*, *Diarchadon*, *Abbatis*, *Disantalon*, *Licorae*, and of the liver of Wolfe, that is more excellent. Others hold that this powder given with Goates milke luke-warme, is very good: Others hold that Malmsey, and the juyce of Featherfew given to drinke is also good.

Others use (and hold it equall with the best) to take an ounce of *Sulphur vive* beaten into fine powder, and a peny weight of *Myrre* beaten to fine powder; mixe them together with a new laid egge, and give them to drink with halfe a pint of Malmsey, use this divers times, and keepe the horse fasting, ver seperate him from other horses, for this disease is infectious.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of the disease of the Gall.

AS is the Liver, even so the gall of a Horse is subject to divers and many infirmities, as to obstructions, according to the opinion of old Farriers: from whence floweth the fulnesse and emptinesse of the bladder, and stone in the Gall; and these obstructions doe chance two severall wayes: First when the passage by which Choler should passe from the Liver unto the bladder of the Gall, as unto his proper receptacle, is stopped; and so the Bladder of the Gall remaineth empty: for you are to understand, that the Gall is none other thing then a long, slender, little greenish bladder, fixed underneath the Liver, which doth receive all the Cholericke bitter moisture, which would otherwise offend not onely the Liver, but the whole body also. Now if the passage of this necessary vessell bee stopped, there cannot chuse but follow many infirmities, as either vomiting, the laxe, the bloody flux, or the yellowes.

Secondly, when the way whereby such Choler should issue forth of the Bladder of the Gall downe into the guts and excrements, is closed up, and so superaboundeth with too much Choler; from whence springeth dulnesse of spirit, suffocating, belching, heat, thirst, and disposition to rage and fury; and truly to any beast there is not a more dangerous disease then the overflowing of the Gall: But our latter experience findeth that an horse hath no Gall at all:

but that filthy and corrupt matter is wasted and spent either by sweat, exercise, or else doth turne to infirmity. The signes of both these kinds of evils, or obstructions, are yellownesse of the skin, infected with yellow Jaundise, and a continuall costivenesse of the body: and the cures of them are, according to the most ancient Farriers, to give the horse milke, and great store of Saffron, boyled together, or in stead of Milk, to give Ale, Saffron, and Aniseeds mixt together. But there be other Farriers, with whom I more do agree, which hold that Selladine roors and leaves choppt, and bruised, and boyled in Beere; or for want of Selladine, Rue, or herbe of grace, and given the Horse luke-warme to drinke, is most soveraigne.

Now for the stone in the gall, which is of a blackish colour, it commeth from the obstruction of the conduits of the bladder, whereby the choler being too long kept in, becommeth dry, and so converteth first into gravel, and after into a solid and hard stone, of which both the signes and the cure, are those last before rehearsed.

CHAP. LXXII.

*Of all such diseases as are incident to
the Spleene.*

THe Spleene is a long, narrow, flat spongy substance, of a pale fleshy colour, joyning with the Liver and the Gall, it is the recepracle of Melancholy, and the dregges of the blood, and is as subject to infirmity, as any inward member whatsoever, as to Inflammations, Obstructions, knobbes, and swellings

swellings; It is through the Spunginess, and to sucke in all manner of filth; and to dilate and spread the same over the whole body: The appearance thereof is on the left side under the short Ribbes, where you shall perceive some small swelling, which swelling gives great griefe to the midriffe, especially after a full stomacke, taking away much more of the horses digestion then his appetite, and being suffered to continue, it makes faint the heart, and growes in the end to a hard knobbe, or stony substance.

This disease, or diseases of the spleene, are incident to horses most in the Summer, proceeding from the Surfeit, or greedy eating of greene meates. The signes of which diseases are these, heaviness, dullness, paine on the left side, and hard swellings, short breath, much groaning, and an over-hasty desire to his meate. The cure, according to the opinion of our best Farriers, is to make the horse sweate either by labour or cloathes, then to give him to drinke a quart of white Wine, wherein hath beene boyled the leaves of *Tamariske* bruised, and a good quantity of *Comin*-seede beaten to powder, and give it luke-warme. Others use, after the horse hath sweate, to powre into his left Nostrill every day, the juyce of *Myrobalans* mixt with Wine and Water to the quantity of a pint. Others take *Comin*-seede and Honey, of each sixe bunces, of *Lacerpitium* as much as a beane, of Vineger a pint, and put all these into three quarts of water, and let it stand so all night and give the horse a quart thereof next morning, having fasted all night. Others make the horse to drink

of Garlick, Nitrum, Harts-lieand, and Worme-weed, sodden in sharpe Wine; and to bathe all the Horses left side with warme water, and to rub it hard. There be others which use to cauterize or scarifie the Horses left side with a hot Iron; but it is barbarous and vile, and carrieth no judgment in the practise.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of the Yellowes, or Jaundise.

AS before I said, from the Obstructions or overflowing of the Gall and spleene, doth spring this Disease which our common Smiths call the Yellowes, and our better Farriers the Jaundise, and you shall understand, that of this Yellowes or Jaundise, there are two kinds, the first an overflowing of choler, proceeding from the sicknesse of the Gall, and it is called simply the Yellows, or yellow Jaundise; because the outward parts of the body, as Eyes, Skinn, Mouth, inside of the lips, and the like, are dried and coloured yellow: the other an overflowing of Melancholy, proceeding from the sicknesse of the Spleene, and is called the blacke Yellowes, or blacke Jaundise, because all the outward parts are blacke. Now both these Jaundices, or Yellowes, have their beginnings from the evils of the Liver; the yellow Jaundise, when the liver by inflammation hath all his bloud converted into Choler, and so over-whelmes the body: and the blacke Jaundise when some Obstruction in the Liver veine, which goeth to the Spleene, hindreth the Spleene from doing his Office, and receiving the dregges of bloud from the Liver,

Liver, or else when the Spleene is sur-charged with such dregs of the blond, and so sheddeth them backe again into the Veiner.

Now although this distinction of the black Jaundise, or blacke Yellowes, will appeare strange unto our common Farriers; yet it is most certaine, that whensoever a horse dyeth of the Yellowes, he dyeth onely of the blacke Yellowes: for when it commeth unto the case of mortality, then are all the inward powers converted to blacknesse, and the yellow substance is cleane mastered; but whilst the matter is Yellow, so long the horses body is in good state of recovery. Besides, these Yellowes doe ever follow one the other; and the lesser hath no sooner got preheminence, but the greater pursues him; of all the inward diseases in a horses body, this is most common, oftrest in practice, & yet most mortall if it be not early prevented. The signes of this disease of yellow Jaundise, are yelownes of the eyes, nostrils, inside of the lippes, the skin, the yard, and the urine: his ears and his flanke will sweate, and hee will groane when hee lyeth downe, and he will not only be faint, but utterly forsake his meate: &c. The cures which are at this day in practise for this disease, are infinite, and a World of them corrupt and poysonous: Every Smith almost making a medicine of his owne invention, God knowes weake and to little purpose; but for the bestrectites which at this day are used by any good Farriers whatsoever, I will deliver you the whole Catalogue.

First, for the Ancient Farriers, both *Italian* and *French*, they did use to take of Time and Comin, of each

each like quantity, and stamping them together to mingle it with Wine, Honey, and water, and then to let him blood in the pesternes.


But now the *Farrriers* of latter dayes use, first to let the horse blood in the Necke-veine, suffering him to bleede, till you perceive the blood to grow pure, then to give him this drinke: Take of white Wine or Ale a quart, and put thereunto Saffron, of Turmericke, of each halfe an ounce, and the juyce that is wrung out of a great handfull of Sellagine, and being luke-warme, give it the horse to drinke, then keepe him warme the space of three or foure dayes, giving him warme water with a little branne in it. Others use after the horse is let blood in the necke-veine: First to rake him, then to give him a suppositary made of Salt, honey, and Marjoram, and then give him to drinke halfe an ounce of *Myrrhe*, dissolved into a quart of Wine or Ale. Others use to give after blood-letting, onely cold Water and Nitrum mixt together. There bee others which after Blood-letting, will onely stoppe his Eares with Selladine, and then bind them fast up, and let him have no exercise for twelve houres after. Others use after the letting him blood, to give him a Glistet, then to take Saffron, and Turmericke, and mixing them with a quart of Milke, give it him to drinke luke-warme. Others use to let the horse blood in the third barre of the roofof his mouth, with a sharpe Knife, and after he hath bled well, to take a halfe penny worth of English Stiffon; and a penny worth of Turmericke, and a new laid egge, with the shel, and all small broken, and mixe it in a quart of stale

stale Ale or Beere, and so set him up warme.

Others use to take after bloud-letting, of *Turmericke*, and *Saffron* a like quantiry, and two or three Cloves, and fixe spoonfull of Vinegar and Verges, and to put into each eare of the horse, three spoonfulls thereof, and then stoppe his eares with black Wool, and so tye them up for seaven or eight dayes after. Others take long Pepper, graines, *Turmericke*, and *Lycoras*, all beaten into fine powder, then brew them with a quart of strong Beere or Ale, and give it the Horse to drinke. Others use after taking and bloud letting to take the juyce of Ivy leaves, and mingling it with Wine, to squirt it into the horses Nostrills, and to let him drinke only cold Water mixt with *Nitrum*, and let his food be grasse, or new hay sprinkled with water.

Thus you have seen, I dare well affirme, all the best practises which are at this day knowne for this disease, and where they all faile, there is no hope of cure, (as the old Farriers affirme) yet let me thus far further informe you. This disease of the Yellowes, or Jaundise, if the Keeper or Master be not a great deale the more skilfull and carefull, will steal upon you unawares, and (as I have often scene) when you are in the midst of your journey, remote and distant far from any towne that can give you succour, it may be your horse will fall downe under you, and if you should let him rest till you fetch him succour, questionlesse he will be dead.

In this extreamity you have no helpe, but to draw out a sharpe pointed Knife; Dagger, or Rapier for a neede, and as neare as you can (opening the Horses mouth)

mouth) strike him bloud about the third bar of the roofo of his mouth, and so letting him eate and swallowing his own bloud a good while, then raise him up, and be sure he will go as fresh as ever he did: But after you come to place of rest, then be sure to bloud him, and give him halfe an ounce of the powder of  *Diapente* in a pint of Muscadine well brewed together, and thus doe three or foure mornings together, and let him bee fasting before, and fast two houres after, and after the potion give him a little moderate exercise, or else there will a worse fit come upon him.

Now to conclude for the blacke Jaundise, which of some Farriers is called the dry yellows, though for mine owne part I hold it to bee incurable, yet there be other Farriers which are of a contrary humour, and prescribe this Physicke for the cure thereof: First, to give the horse a glister made of Oyl, water, milke, and *nitrum*, after his fundament is raked; then to powre the decoction of mallowes mingled with sweet Wine into his Nostrills, and let his meat be grasse or Hay sprinkled with water, and a little Nitre, and his Provender dried oates: He must rest from labour, and be often rubbed. Now there bee other Farriers, which for this disease would onely have the horse drinke the decoction of wilde Coleworts sodden in Wine; the effects of all which I only refer to experience.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of the Dropisie, or evill habite of the body.

VV Hereas wee have spoken before of the Consumption of the flesh, which proceedeth from surfeits, ill lodging, labour, colds, heates, and such like: you shall also now understand, that there is another Drynesse or Consumption of the flesh, which hath no apparant cause or ground, and is called of Farriers a Dropisie, or evill habite of the body, which is most apparantly seene when the horse by dislike doth loose his true naturall colour, and when baynesse turnes to dunnesse, blacknesse to dunskenes, and whitenesse to Ashinesse, and when he looseth his Spirit, strength, and alacrity. Now this commeth not from the want of nutriment, but from the want of good nutriment, in that the bloud is corrupted either with Feagm, choler, or melancholy, comming (according to the opinion of our best Farriers) either from the spleene, or the weakenesse of the stomacke or Liver, causing naughty digestion.

Others thinke it commeth from foule feeding, or much idlenesse, but for mine owne part, albeit I have had as much tryall of this disease, as any one man, and that it becommeth not mee to controule men of approved judgement, yet this I dare averre, that I never saw this disease of the evill habite, or evill colour of the body, spring from any other grounds, then either disorderly and wilde riding, or from Hunger, or barren Woody keeping. Betwixt it and the Dropisie, there is small or no difference.

For

For the Dropsie being divided into three kinds, this is the first thereof, as namely, an universall swelling of the body, but especially the Legs, through the abundance of water lying betweene the skin and the flesh. The second, a swelling in the covering or bottome of his Belly, as if the Horse were with foale; which is only a whayish humour abiding betwixt the skin and the rim: And the third a swelling in the same place by the like humour, abiding betwixt the great bag and the Kell.

The common signes of this disease, are shortnesse of breath, swelling of the body or legges, losse of the Horses naturall colour, no appetite unto meate, and a continuall thirst, his Backe, Buttocks, and Flanks, will bee dry, and shrunke up to their bones; his Veines will bee hid that you cannot see them, and wheresoever you shall presse your finger any thing hard against his body, there you shall leave the print behind you, and the flesh will not rise of a good space after: when he lyeth downe he will spread out his limbes, and not draw them round together, and his hair will shed with the smallest rubbing. There be other Farriers which make but onely two Dropsies, that is, a wet *Dropsie*, and a windy *Dropsie*, but being examined, they are all one with those recited, have all the same signes and the same cure, which according to the ancient Farriers is in this sort, first, to let him be warme covered with many cloathes, and either by exercise, or otherwise drive him into a sweate; then let his backe and body bee rubbed against the haire, and let his food be for the most part, Cole-worts, Smallage, and Elming Boughes,

Boughes, or whatsoever else will keepe his body soluble or provoke Urine: when you want this food, let him eate grasse, or hay sprinkled with water, and sometimes you may give him a kinde of pulse called Ciche, steeped a day and a night in Water, and then taken out and laid so, as the Water may drop away.

There be other *Farriers* which only would have the horse to drink *Fansley* stamp & mixt with wine, or else the root of the hearb called *Panax* stamp and mixt with wine. Now whereas some *Farriers* advise to slit the belly a handfull behind the Navel, that the Wine and Water may leasurely issue forth, of mine owne knowledge I know the Cure to bee most vile; nor can it be done, but to the utter spoyle and killing of the horse: for a horse is a beast, and wanting knowledge of his owne good, will never be drest out by violence, and that violence will bring down his kell, so as it will never be recovered. Now for these *Dropsies* in the belly, although I have shewed you the signes and the cures, yet they are rare to be found, and more rare to be cured; but for the other *Dropsie*, which is the swelling of the Legs, and the losse of the colour of the haire, it is very ordinary and in hourly practice: the best cure whereof that ever I found amongst the *Farriers* is this.

Take of strong Ale a Gallon, and set it on the fire, and then skum off the white froth which riseth: then take a handfull of wormewood with stalks, and put them into the Ale, and let them boyle till it bee come almost to a quart: then take it off, and straine it exceedingly, then dissolve into it three ounces of the

the best Treacle, and put in albian tunces and a halfe of long Pepper and graines beaten to very fine powder: then brew them all together till it be no more but luke-warme, and so give it the horse to drink, the next day let him bloud on the neck, vein, & annoint his fore-legs with traine Oyle, and so turne him into good Grasse, and feare not his recover.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the Diseases in the guts of a Horse, and first of the Cholick.

A Horses Guts are subject unto many and sundry infirmities; as namely, to the wilde cholicke, fretting of the belly, costivenesse, Laxe, bloody flux, and wormes of divers kindes. Now for the Cholick it is a grievous and tormenting pain in the great Gut or bag, which because it is very large and spacious, and full of empty places, it is the more apt to receive divers offensive matters, which do breede divers infirmities, especially Winde, which finding no ready passage out, maketh the body, as it were, swell, and offends both the stomacke and other inward members. This disease doth not so much appeare in the Stable, as abroad in travaille, and the signes are these: the horse will often offer to stale, but cannot, he will strike at his Belly with his hinder foote, and many times stampe, he will forsake his meare, and towards his flanke you shall see his Belly appeare more full then ordinary, and he will desire to lye downe and wallow. The cure thereof, according to the most ancient *Farriers*, is only to give him a Glister made eyther

ther of Wilde Cucumbers; or else of Hens-dund, Nitrum, and strong vinegar, the manner whereof you shall see in the Chapter of Glisters: and after the Glister labour him.

Others use to give the horse the Urine of a childe to drinke, or a glister of sope and salt water. Others to give him five drammes of Myrre in good Wine, and then gallop him gently thereupon. Others use to give him Smallage and Parsley with his Proven-der, and then to travaile him till hee sweate. But for my own parr, I hold it best to take a quart of Malm-sey, of Cloves, Pepper, Cynamon, of each halfe an ounce, of sugar halfe a quartern, and give it the horse luke-warme. and then ride him at least an houre after; but before you ride him, anoynt all his flankes with Oyle de bay, or oyle of Spike. Now if whilst you ride him he will not dung, you shall then Rake him, and if neede be enforce him to dung, by thrusting into his Fundament a pill'd Onion jagged crosse-waies, that the tickling of the juyce may enforce ordure; and by no meane, for foure or five daies let him drinke cold water, nor eate any grasse or greene Corne, but keepe him upon wholsome dry meate in a warme stable.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of the Belly-ake, or fretting in the belly.

BESIDES the Cholicks; there is also another grievous paine in the Belly, which Farriers call the Belly-ake, or fretting in the belly; and it proceedeth either from eating of greene pulle when it growes

on the ground, or raw undried pease, beanes, or oates
or else when sharpe fretting humours, or inflamma-
tions, or abouondance of grosse matter. is gotten be-
tween the great gut and the panicle. The signes are
much wallowing, great growthing, and often striking
at his belly, and gnawing upon the manger. The cure
according to the opinion of some Farriers, is first to
anoynt your hand with Sallet oyle, Butter or grease,
ayd then thrusting it in at the horses Fundament, pul
out as much dung as you can reach, which is called
raking a horse: then give him a glister of Water
and Salt mixt together, or in stead thereof give him
a Suppositary of Hony and salt, and then give him to
drink the powder of Sentuary & wormwood brewd
with a quart of Malmsey. Others use onely to give
the horse a Suppositary of New-castle Sope, and for
mine owne part I hold it onely the best.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of the Costivenesse, or Belly-bound.

Costivenesse or Belly-bound, is when a horse is so
bound in his belly that hee cannot Dunge, it is a
disease of all other most incident to running horses,
which are kept in a dry and hot dyet. Now my
Masters the great Farriers, affirme that it proceedeth
from glut of Provender, or over-much feeding and
rest, or from winde, grosse humours, or cold, causing
Obstructions, and stoppings in the guts, but I sup-
pose (and imagine that all the best Keepers of Hun-
ting or Running horses, will consent with me) that it
rather proceedeth from much fasting, whereby the

Gut

Gut wanting fresh substance to fill it, doth out of its owne great heate, bake and dry up the little which it containeth: For it is a certaine rule that nothing can overflow before it be full. Or else it may proceede from eating too much dry and hot food, which sucking up the flegme and moysture of the body, leaves not sufficient whereby it may be digested, however it is a dangerous infirmity, and is the beginning of many other evils. The signes are onely abstinence from the office of nature (I meane dunging) which is most usuall in all beasts. The cure whereof according to the opinion of the acientest Farriers, is to take the water wherein Mallowes have beene long boyled to the quantity of a quart, and put thereto halfe a pint of oyle, or instead thereof, halfe a pint of butter very sweet, and one ounce of *Benedicte Laxative*, and powre that into his Fundament Glisterwise: then with a string fasten his tayle hard to his Tuell, and then trot the horse up and downe a pretty while, that the medicine may worke so much the better; then let his tayle loose, and suffer him to voyde all that is in his belly, then bring him into the Stable, and having stood a while, give him a little wel-clarified Hony to drinke, then cover him and keepe him warme; and let him drinke for three or foure dayes bee nothing but sweete warme Mashes of Malt and Water. Other Farriers use to take eleven leaves of Lorell, and stamping them in a Mortar, give it the horse to drinke with one quart of good strong Ale.

Others use to take an ounce of Brimstone finely beaten to powder, and mixing it with Spurge, to

give it the horse in a Mash to drinke: Now for mine owne part, I could wish you, if the disease bee not very extreemly violent, onely but to rake the Horses Fundament, and then to gallop him in his cloathes till hee swear, and then give him a handfull or two of cleane Rye, and a little brimstone mixt with it: for brimstone being given with provender at any time, will scour; but if the disease be raging and violent, rake a quarter of a pound of white Sope, a handfull of Spurge, and a handfull of Hemp-seede, bray them very well together, and give it the horse to drinke with a quart of Ale luke-warme, then let him fast and exercise him more then halfe an houre after; and be sure to keepe him very warme, and let his drinke be onely warme Mashes. A world of other scouring-reccites there be; but you shall finde them more at large in the Chapter of Purgations, Glisters, and Suppositaries.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

Of the Laxe, or too much scouring of Horses.

THe Laxe, or open fluxe of a Horses body, is a dangerous disease, and quickly bringeth a horse to great weakenesse and faintnesse, it proceedeth sometimes from the aboundance of Cholericke humours, descending from the Liver or Gall downe into the Guts: Sometimes by drinking over-much cold Water immediately after his Provender, sometimes by suddaine travelling upon a full stomack before his meate be digested, sometimes by hasty running or gallopping presently after water: and sometimes

times by licking up a Feather, or eating Hens dung: there is no Disease that taketh more sore upon a horse in a short time than this, and yet such nature her selfe in this disease seemeth to bee a Physitian to the horses body, I would not wish any Farrier to goe about too suddenly to stop it; but if you finde that by the continuance, Nature both loseth her owne strength, and the horse the good estate of his body then you shall seeke remedy, and the cure thereof according to the opinion of ancient Farriers is this: Take of Beane-flowre and *Bole-armony*; of each a quarterne, mixe them together in a quart of red wine, and give it the horse luke-warme to drinke, and let him be kept very warme, and have much rest: also let the water that he drinketh be luke-warme, and mixt with Beane-flowre; yet by no meanes let him drinke above 3. once in foure and twenty houres, and then not to his full satisfaction. Others take a pinte of red Wine, the powder of one Nutmeg, halfe an ounce of Cynamon, and as much of the rinde of a Pomegranat, and mixing them together give it the horse luke-warme to drinke, and let him not drinke any other Drinke, except it bee once in foure and twenty houres, halfe a horses draught of warme water mixt with meane flowre. Others take a halfe penny-worth of Allome beaten into fine powder, and *Bole-armony* beaten small, and a quart of good milk, mingle them together till the milke be all on a curd, and then give it the horse to drinke, observing the Dyet before rehearsed: But if this disease shall happen to a sucken Foale, as commonly it will, and I my selfe have seene many that for want of Experi-

ence have perished thereby, you shall then only give it a pint of strong Verdeges to drinke, and it is a present remedy, For the Foale only feeding upon Milke, and that Milke avoyding in as liquid forme as it was received, the verdegas will curdle it, and so make it avoyde in a grosser and more tougher substance.

CHAP. LXIX;
Of the bloody Fluxe in Horses.

IT is not to bee doubted but that a horse may have the bloody Fluxe, for in my experience I have scene it, besides the confirmation of all my masters, the old Farriers. Now of the bloody fluxe they make divers kinds, for sometimes the fat of the slimy flesh which is voyded, is sprinkled with a little blood: sometimes the excrement is watrish blood, like the Water wherein bloody flesh hath bene washed: sometimes blood mixed with Melancholly, and sometimes pure blood, but all these proceeding from one head, which is the exulceration of the Gut, they may all very well be helped by one cure. Yet that you may know whether the Exulceration be in the inward small Guts, or in the outward great Guts, you shall observe if the matter and blood bee perfectly mixt together, then it is in the inner small Guts; but if they be not mixed, but come out severally, the blood most commonly following the matter, then it is in the thicke outward Guts. Now this bloody Fluxe commeth most commonly of some sharpe humours, ingendred either by naughty raw food,

food, or unreasonable travaile, which humours being violently driven, and having to passe through many crooked and narrow waies, doe cleave to the Guts, and with their heate and sharpenesse fret them, and cause exulcerations and grievous paine. Sometimes this bloody fluxe may come from extreame cold, extreame heate or extreame moistnesse, or through the violence of some extreame scouring formerly given, wherein some poysonous simple, as *Stomony*, *Stibium*, or such like might be applyed in too great a quantity, or it may come from the weaknesse of the Liver, or the other members which serve for digestion. The signe of this disease, is onely the avoiding blood with his excrements, or blood in stead of Excrements. And the cure according to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, is to take Saffron one ounce, of *Mirrh* two ounces, of Southerne-wood three ounces, of Parsley one ounce, of Rue three ounces, of Spittlewort and Hyssop of each two ounces, of Cassia, which is like Cynamon, one ounce; let all these be beaten into fine powder, and mingled with Chalke, and strong Vinegar wrought into paste, of which paste make little cakes, and dry them in the shadow, and being dried dissolve some of them in a pint and a halfe of Barley milke, or for want thereof in that juyce which is called *Crimor Prifune*, and give it the horse to drinke: for it not onely cureth the bloody fluxe, but being given with a quart of warme water, it healeth all grieve and paine either in the belly or bladder, which commeth for want of stalling.

Now for mine owne part, I have ever used for

the bloody Fluxe; but this medicine onely. Take of red Wine three pints, halfe a handfull of the Herbe called *Brusa Pastoris*, or Shepheards purse, and as much Tanners barke taken out of the Fat and dried, boyle them in the Wine till somewhat more then a pinte be consumed, and then straining it very hard; give it the horse luke-warme to drinke, if you doe ad unto it a little Cynamon. it is not amisse. There bee other Farriers which use to dissolve in a pint of red wine, four ounces of the conserve of Slows, and give it the horse to drinke; but either of the other medicines are fully sufficient.

CHAP. LXXX;

Of the falling downe of a horses Fundament.

Horses sometimes, by meanes the disease formerly spoken of, which is the bloody Fluxe, and sometimes by a naturall weaknesse in the inward bowells, coming through the resolution of the Muscles, serving to draw up the Fundament, will many times have their fundaments fall downe in great length, both to the much paine to the horse, and great loathsomnesse to the beholders. Now the resolution or falling downe, may come partly by over-much straying to dung when a horse is coltive, and partly by over-great moysture, as it happens in young children: for than a horse no creature hath a moyster body. Now the signe is apparant, hanging downe of the Fundament, and the cure is this. First you shall looke whether the Fundament bee inflamed; that is, whether it be much sweld or no, if it be
not

not inflamed, then you shall anoynt it with oyle of Roses warmed on a Chaffing-dish and coales, or if want of such oyle, you shall wash it with warme red Wine, but if it be inflamed, then you shall bathe it well with a soft sponge, dipt in the decoction of Mallowes, Camomill, Linseed, and Fenugreeke, and also you shall annoynt it well with oyle of Camomill and Dill mingled together, to assuage the swelling: and then with a gentle hand, and warme Linnen clothes, thrust it faire and softly up into his true place, that done, bathe all the tuell about with red Wine, wherein hath bin sodden *Acatium*, Gals, Achorne cuppes, and the paring of Quinces: Then throw upon it either the powder of *Bole-armonicke*, or of *Frankinsence*, or *Sanguis Draconis*, Myrrh, *Acatium*, or such like; and then give him to drink the dry pills of Pomegranats beaten to powder, either with wine or warme water; and be sure to keepe the horse very warme, and in his body neither too soluble or loose, nor too costive or hard bound, but of a mean and soft temper, for the extremity of either is hurtful

CHAP. LXXXI.

*Of the Bots,, Truncheons, and Wormes in
a Horses body.*

MY Masters, the old ancient Farriers are of opinion, that the Gurs of a horse doe breed three sorts of Wormes, that is to say, little short Wormes with great red heads, and long small white Tayles, which wee call Bots: short and thicke Wormes all of a bignesse like a mans finger, which wee call

call Truncheons; and great long wormes as bigge as a mans finger, and at the least sixe inches in length, which wee call by the simple name of Wormes onely.

Now in mine owne experience and all other mens, I finde a fourth sort, which is of a middle size, and are red and fiery, with thick, short, sharpe heades, and are called poysonous red Wormes, and are of all other most poysonous and dangerous, for they will ascend up even to the throate of the horse, and will choake and kill him, and sometimes they will eate through his stomack and so confound him.

Now for mine owne part I am of opinion, that the first which are bots, are not bred in the guts but in the stomacke onely; because having cut up many Horses, I never could yet finde any one Bot in the Guts, yet great store of both the other wormes, nor ever cut up the stomacke of a Horse, but I found great abundance of Bots, and neither of the other Wormes: whence I am confidently opiniated, that Bots are ever bred in the stomacke, and both the other sorts of wormes in the guts: Truth it is, that all three doe proceede from one false cause, which is a Raw, Grosse, and Flegmaticke matter, apt to putrefaction, and ingendred by foule and naughty feeding, and as they proceede from one selfe cause, so have they all one signe, and all one cure. The signes then are, the horse will forsake his meate, and not stand upon his legges, but wallow and tumble, and beate his belly with his feere, and sometimes the paine will be so excreame that he will beate his head against the ground; and truely the violence of the
red-wormes

red-wormes are wonderfully, for I have seene horses whose stomacke have bin eaten quite through with them, so that the meate which they eate, could not abide in their stomacke, but fell upon the swallowing into the body, making the body swell like a Tun, and so have dyed with huge torment. Now the cure according to the ancientest *Farriers* is, to take a quart of sweet milk, of honey a quarterne, and give it him luke-warme; then walke him up and downe for the space of an houre after, and so let him rest for that day, with as little meate and drinke as may bee: and by no meanes suffer him to lye downe. Then the next day when the horse is fasting, take of Rue a handfull, of Savin as much, and being well stampd, put thereunto a little brimstone; and a little Soote of a Chimney beaten into fine powder, put all these things together in a quart of Wort, or new Ale, and there let them lye in steepe, the space of an houre or two, then straine it hard through a faire cloath, and give it the horse to drinke luke-warme, then bridle him, and walke him abroad the space of an houre, then set him up, and let him stand on the bit, two or three houres after, and then give him a little hay.

Other ancient *Farriers* use onely to give the horse for this disease, the warme guts of a new slaine Hen or Chicken, being thrust downe the horses throat, and sure it is passing good, especially if a little Salt be mixed with them: And this must bee done three mornings together fasting, keeping the horse from drinking three or foure houres after. Others use to take three ounces of the roots of capfers, beatē with halfe so much Vineger, and put it downe the horses throat:

Others use (and thinke to be best of all other Medicines) to take the guts of a young Hen or Pidgeon, and roast it first in a little black Soap, then in Bay-salt, and so force it downe the horses throat. Others use (especially for the Truncheons) to let the horse drink Hennes-dung, Mints, Sage, and Rue, with Beere or Ale, and to let him blood in the nostrils. To conclude except you see the horse very much pained, you shall need to give him nothing but Rozen and Brimstone mixt together, and blended with his Provender, having care that you ever give it fasting, and long before the horse doe drinke.

Lastly, and as the chief of all medicines for all manner of Wormes, take as much Precipitate as will buye one silver two pence, and work it with as much Butter as a French Walnut, then lap it in another peece of Butter as bigge as an Hennes egge, and so give it the Horse fasting in the manner of a pill. Ride him a little after it, and give him no water that night, and let him fast two houres, then feede as at other times.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of the paines in the Horses Kidneyes.

THERE is no question but the same infirmities which doe belong unto the Liver or Spleen of a horse, doe also belong unto the Kidneyes, as inflammations, Obstructions, Aposthumes, and Vicers; and truly in opening of horses, I have found the Kidney sometimes wasted; which I imputed to some matter of Inflammation: I have likewise found much

much Gravell, which was onely through Obstru-
ctions, and I have seene the Kidneyes as blacke as inke,
which could not come without an ulcerous Apustu-
lation. But forasmuch as a horse is a beast, who can-
not tell the manner of his paine, nor wee so heedfull
as we might have beene, to observe the *Symptoms*
of every grieve, wee are inforced to conclude all under
one name, which is the paine in the Kidneyes, got-
ten either by some great straine in leading, or by
some great burthen bearing.

The signes are, the horse will goe, rolling and stag-
gering behind, his Urine will be blackish and thicke,
and his stones (if hee have any) will bee shrunk up
into his body; If he have not, you shall perceive the
sheath of his yard to be drawne backward, and the
great veine which runneth up the side of his thigh,
called the Kidney-veine, will slacke and beate conti-
nually. The cure according to the opinion of the
ancient *Farriers* is, first to bathe his back and loines
with oyle, wine, and *Nitrum*, warmed together, and
after he is bathed, cover him with warme cloathes,
and let him stand in Litter up to the belly, then give
him to drinke water wherein hath been sodden Dill,
Fennell, Aniseedes, Schallage, Parsley, Spicknard,
Myrrh, and Cassia, or as many as you can conveni-
ently get of these simples. The next morning fasting
give him to drinke a quart of Ewes milk, or for want
thereof, halfe so much Sallet oyle, and Deeres suet
moken together: or if you can get it, the roots of
Dassadill boyled in Wine, and let his provender be
dried eates; and in this dyet keepe him about tenne
dayes; and he will recover.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of the diseases belonging to the Bladder or Vrine,
and first of the Strangury.

According to the determinate opinion of all the best and ancientest Horse-Leaches, the Bladder of a Horse is subject to three dangerous diseases, as first the strangury, or Strangullion: the second, the Paine-pisse: and the third the stone, or Pissuppress. Now for the first, which is the Strangury, or Strangullion, it is, when the Horse is provoked to stale often, and avoydeth nothing but a few droppes; it commeth without doubt, either by the heate and sharpenesse of Vrine, caused either by great travail or by sharpe and hot meates and drinckes, or else by the Exulceration of the Bladder, or by meanes of some Aposthume in the Liver and Kidneyes, which aposthume being broken, the matter resorteth down into the Bladder, and with the sharpenesse thereof causeth a continuall Provocation of pissing. The signes are (as I said before) a continuall desire to pisse, yet avoyding nothing but a few droppes, and those with such paine, that hee will whiske, wry, and beate his tayle as he pisseth.

The cure whereof, is to bathe the horses hinder Loynes with warme water, and then take bread and Bay-berries, and temper them together with May Butter, and give him two or three balls thereof down his throat three daies together.

Others use (and I have ever found it the best) to take a quart of new milke, and a quarterne of Sugar, and brewing

brewing them well together, give it the Horse to drinke six mornings together, observing to keep the horse from all sharpe meates, as mow-burnt hay, bran, and such like.

CHAP. LXXXIIII.

of the paine-pisse, or pissing with paine.

THis disease of paine-pisse, is when a horse cannot pisse but with great paine and labour, and doth proceede sometimes from the weakenesse of the bladder, and the cold intemperance thereof, and sometimes through the aboundance of fleagm and grosse humours stopping the necke of the Bladder. The signes whereof are, the horse will stretch himselfe out as though hee would stale, and thrust out his yard a little, and with the paine clap his tayle betwixt his thighes to his belly, and having stood so a good while, in the end he will stale a good quantity.

The cure whereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to take the juyce of Leekes, sweete wine, and oyle, and mingle them together, to powre it into his right nostrill, and walke him a little up and downe upon it: or else to give him to drinke Smallage seede, or else the roote of wilde Fennell sodden with Wine. Others use to put fine sharpe Onions cleane pill'd and a little bruised, into his Fundament, and then to chafe him immediatly upon it, either by riding him, or running him in a mans hand, or else to take the scraping of the inward parts of the horses owne hooftes, beaten into powder,

der, and mingled with Wine, and powre it into his right nostrill, and then ride him upon it. Others use to lead the horse to sheepe-cote, or sheepe-penne, where great store of sheepe are wonted: and making the horse to smell of the dung and pisse of the sheep, it will provoke him to stale presently. Others use to give the horse white dogs dung dryed and mingled with *Amomiacum*, Salt, and Wine to drinke: or else hogs dung only with wine, or the dregs of horse pisse and Wine.

CHAP. LXXXV.

Of the stone, or Pisse-suprest in a Horse.

THe Stone, or Pisse-suprest in a Horse, is when a horse would faine stale, but cannot at all, and therefore may well bee called the suppression of the Urine: It proceedeth according to the opinions of my Masters, the old Farriers, sometimes from the weaknesse of the Bladder, when the water conduit is stopped with grosse humours, or with matter descending from the Liver, or from some inflammation or hard knobs growing at the mouth of the conduit, or for that the sinewes of the bladder are numbed, so as the bladder is without feeling: or it may come by keeping a horse in long travaile, and not suffering him to stale, but most commonly and oftest commeth from obstructions in the kidneyes, where, by the causes aforesaid, a certaine red gravell being bred, and falling downe into the Conduits, by mixture of fleagme and other grosse humours, is there brought to be a hard stone, and stoppeth the passage
of

of the urine: For the signs there needeth no more but this, that would faine pisse, but cannot.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the most ancientest Farriers, is first to draw out his yard; and bathe it well with white wine, and pick it, and scoure it well, lest it bee stopped with dirt and filthinesse; then put a little oyle of Camomill into his yard with a waxe candle, and a bruised clove of Garlicke: but if that will not force him to stale, then take of Parsley two handfulls, of Coriander one handfull, stamp them and straine them with a quart of white Wine, and dissolve therein one ounce of Cake-sope and give it luke-warme unto the Horse to drink; and see that you keep him as warme as may be, and let him drinke no cold water for the space of five or sixe dayes, and when you would have him to stale, let it either be of good plenty of straw, or upon the grasse, or in a sheep cot. Others (and those of the best esteem for horse-leach-craft at this day) use only to give white Wine, cake-sope, and butter very well mixt together, and let the horse drink it warme.

Others use to annoint the Horses belly first with warme water; then when it is dried, to annoint it againe with Sallet oyle, Hogs grease and tarre mixt together and made warme, and so hold a hot Iron against his belly whilst it is annointing, that the oyntment may the better enter the skin: But I hold this medicine to be much better for the Strangury, or any other paine in the belly, then for the Stone; yet it is approved good for all. Others use to take a pint of white Wine or Ale, and mixe it with a little Garlicke, and the whites of ten egges, and give

it the horse to drinke : or else give him the juyce of red Cole worrs mixt with white Wine, or the roote of *Alexanders* bruised, and sodden in Wine to drinke, and wash his yard with Vinegar. Others use to take eyther Worme-wood, Southerne wood, or Galingale, or Mallowes, or Pimpernell : some of these, or any one of these, stamp and strained, and give it the horse with Ale to drinke. Others use to take a pint of white Wine, halfe a pint of Burr-seede bearen very small, two ounces of Parsley-seede halfe a handfull of Hysope, halfe an ounce of blacke Sope, mixe them all well together, and warme it, and give it the horse to drinke : or else take un-set *Leches*, and stamp them small, and Sope, *Milke*, and Butter, and being mixt together, give it the horse to drinke. Others use to take a Nutmeg, and a handfull of Parsley seede, beate them to powder, then take as much butter, and mixe them all together in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the horse luke-warme to drinke: or else take the seed of *Snap-lage*, Parsley, *Saxefrage*, the rootes of *Philopendula*, cherry-stone Kirnells, grummell seeds, and Broome-seeds, of each a like quantity, beate them into fine powder, and give it the horse with a pint or a quart of white Wine.

Now albeit these medicines before rehearsed, are daily in practice, and approved very soveraigne, yet for mine owne parr, I have found none more soveraigne then this: Take a quart of strong Ale, and put it into a pottile pot : then take as many Keene Radish roots, cleane washt, being slit through and bruised, as will fill up the pot : then stopping the pot very close that

that no ayre may come in, let it so stand foure and twenty houres, then strain the Ale and the roots very hard into a cleane vessell, and give it the horse fasting in the morning to drink: then ride him a litle up and down, and so let him up warme, and watch him, and you shall see him stale. This you must doe divers mornings together.

CHAP. LXXXVI.
Of a Horse that pisseth blood.

THERE is nothing more certaine then that a horse many times will piss blood in stead of urine, the cause (as the most ancient Farriers suppose) proceeding from some one of these grounds: either overmuch labour, or too heavy a burthen, especially when the Horse is fat: for by either of them the horse may come to breake some veine in his body, and then you shall see cleare blood come out, and no Urine at all, but if the blood be mixt with Urine, then they suppose it cometh from the kidneyes, having some ragged stone therein, which throught great travaile doth fret the veines of the Kidneyes, and make them bleede, through which as the Vrine passeth, it taketh the blood away with it also; but for mine owne part, I have not found any greater cause for the pissing of blond, then the taking up of a horse from grasse in the strength of Winter (as about Christmas) and presently, without a daies rest in the stable, to thrust him into a long and weary journey: from this cause I have scene many horses after two or three dayes journey to piss blood in most grie-

vous manner. The signes are needlesse. The cure according to the opinion of the ancient *Farrriers*, is this: First, let the horse bloud in the palle of the mouth, to convert the bloud the contrary way; then take of *Tragarant* which hath beene steeped in white Wine, halfe an ounce of Poppy seed, one dramme and one scruple, and of *Storax* as much, and twelve pine apple Kernels; let all these things be beeten and mingled well together, and give the horse thereof every morning the space of seaven dayes, the quantity of a Wall-nut, infused in a quart of sweete wine. Other latter *Farrriers* use to let the horse bloud in the necke, and boyle that bloud with Wheate, and with the powder of dried Pomegranate pills; then straine it, and give it him three or foure mornings together to drinke, and let him by no meanes travaile thereupon: or else give him of husked beanes boyled with the huskes of Acornes beaten small, and mixt together. Others use to make him a drinke with the rootes of Daffidill mingled with Wheate flower, and *sumach* sodden long in water, and so to be given to the horse with sweete Wine: or else to make him drinke of Goates milke and Sallet Oyle, straining thereunto a little Frumenty: or else to give him sodden beanes and Deeres suet in Wine, each of these are of like force and goodnesse. Now there be others which use for this disease to rake Barley, and seeth it in the iuyce of Gum-folly, and give him the Barley to eat, and the iuyce to drinke: or else take the powder of Lycoras and Aniseedes rou'd up in Honey, and make round balls thereof, and call downe the horses throat two or three of them: Lastly,

Lastly, and the best, take Lycorae, Aniseeds, and *Gard-licke* bruised together with Sallet oyle and honey, and give it in a quart of new milke to the horse to drinke, it is very soveraign also; and these two medicines last rehearsed, are exceeding good also for any cold or Glanders.

CHAP. LXXXVII.
Of the Colt evill.

THE Colt evill by the most ancient *Farrriers*, especially the *Italians*, whose hot Countrey affoordeth the beasts of more hot and strong natures then ours doth, is thought to be a continuall standing erection, together with an unnaturall swelling of the yard, proceeding either from some winde filling the arteries and hollow sinew, or pipe of the yard, or else through the abundance of seede, provoked by the naturall heate of the Horse; but our *Farrriers*, who have not seene that experience, because our Horses are of a colder temper, say it is onely a swelling of the sheath of the yard, and of that part of the belly about the yard, together with the Cod also, proceeding from corrupt seede, which commeth out of the yard, and remaining within the sheath, there putrieth; And this judgement we finde by experience to be most true. Now you shall understand, that Geldings as well as Horses are subject thereunto, because they want naturall heate to expell their seede any further.

The signes are onely the outward swelling of the sheath and Cod, and none other; and the best

cure is first to wash the sheath cleane with luke-warm Viniger, then draw out the yard and wash it also: which done, ride the horse twice every day, that is, morning and evening into some deep running water up to the belly, tossing him too and fro to allay the heate of members till the swelling be vanished, and if you swim him now and then, it will nor do amisse. Others use to bathe his Cods and yard with the juyce of House-licke, or with the water wherein Kinholm hath bin sod. Now this Colt evill wil sometimes stop the Horses urine that he cannot pisse: then you shall take new Ale, and a little blacke Sope, and give it the Horse to drinke. Others use to wash the horses cods and sheath with butter and viniger made warm. Others use to wash his Yard and Cods with the juyce of Hemlocke, or else take beane flower, vineger, and *Bole armanicke*, and mixing them together, lay it plaister wise to his sheath and Cods. Others make him a plaister of wine Lees, House-lick and bran mixt together, and laid to his sheath and cods: but if the first receipt would serve, I would not wish you to use any other medicine.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

Of the mattering of the Yard.

THis disease of the mattering of the yard, is seldom seene but amongst the hot races or breedes of horses, as the *Jenet*, the *Barbary*, and such like; and it happeneth ever at covering time, when the horse and mare both being too hot, doe burne themselves, by which meanes there issueth forth of the
horses

horses yard much filthy matter. The signs are the falling down of the matter, and a swelling at the end of the yard, and the horse can by no meanes draw up his yard, or cover it within his sheath. The cure is to take a pint of white wine; and boyle therein a quartern of roch allom, and with a large Serring of squirt, squirt in three or four squirt full into his yard one after another, and be sure that your squirt goe home unto the bottom, that the liquor or lortion may scour the bloody matter away: this do five or six times every day till the horse be whole.

CHAP. LXXXIX.
Of the shedding of the seed.

THe shedding of the Seede, or the falling away of the Sperme in horses, is none other then that which we call in men the running of the Reynes: it commeth, as our old Farriers say, either by abundance and ranknesse of seed, or by the weakenesse of the stones, and seed vessels, not able to retaine the seed untill it be digested and thickned; but truly for mine owne part, I thinke it commeth oftner (especially amongst our English horses) by some great straine in leaping, or by teaching a horse to bound, and making him bound the compasse of his naturall strength. The signes are onely the shedding of his seede, which will be white, thinne, and watrish. The cure, according to the ancient experiments, is first to ride the horse into some cold water up to the belly, insomuch that his stones may be covered with water: which done, bathe his fundament with water
and

and oyle, then cover him exceeding warme, and give him every day to drinke, red wine and hogges dung till the fluxe of his seed stay; but latter experience hath found this receipt better. Take of red wine a quart, and put therein a little *Acatium*, the juyce of Planton, and a little Masticke, and give it him to drinke; and then bathe all his backe with red wine, and oyle of Roses mixt together, but other *Farriers* take *Venice* Turpentine, and being washt, beat it well with halfe so much Sugar, and then make round balls as big as Walnuts, and give the horse five every morning, till the fluxe stay.

§ 201

CHAP. XC.

Of the falling downe of the yard.

THE falling downe of the yard, is when a Horse hath no strength to draw up his yard within the sheath, but lets it hang downe betweene his legges ill-favouredly: it commeth (as our best *Farriers* suppose) either through the weaknesse of the member, by meanes of some resolution in the muscles and sinewes, serving the same, caused by some great strain or stripe on the backe: or else through extreame wearinesse and tiring. The signe is onely the apparant hanging downe of the member: and the cure is, (according to some opinions) to wash the horses yard in salt water from the Sea, or for want thereof, with water and salt; but if that doe not prevaile, then prick all the outmost skin of his yard with a sharpe needle, but yet as slightly as may be, and not deepe; and then wash all the prickes with strong vinegar, and this will

nor

not onely make him draw up his yard againe, but also if at any time his Fundament chance to fall, this cure will put it up againe. There be other *Farriers* which for this diseate will put into the pipe of the horses yard, hony and salt boyld together, and made liquid, or else a quick flye, or a grain of *Frankinsence*, or a clove of *Garlicke* cleane pill'd and bruised, and bathe his back with oyle, wine, and *Nitre* made warm and mingled together.

But the best cure according to our English practise is, first, to wash all the yard with white Wine warmed, and then anoint it with oyle of *Roses* and hony mixt together, and so put it up into the sheath, and with a little bolster of Canvase keepe it from falling downe, and dresse him thus once in four and twenty houres, untill he be recovered, and in any case let his back be kept as warm as is possible, both with cloth, and a charge of plaister made of *Bole armonick*, Eggs, Wheate flower, *Sanguis draconis*, *Turpentine*, and Vineger, or else lay next his backe a wet sacke, or wet hay, and a dry cloath over it, and that will keepe his backe exceeding warme.

CHAP. XCI.

Of the diseases incident to Mares, and first of the barrennesse of the wombe.

THE onely Disease incident to the wombe of a Mare (as farre forth as our *Farriers* are experienced) is barrennesse, which may proceede from divers causes, as through the untemperatenesse of the Matrixe, being either too hot and fiery, or too cold and

and moist, or too dry, or else too short, or too narrow, or having the necke thereof turned awry, or by meanes of some obstruction, or stopping in the matrice, or in that the mare is too fat, or too lean, and divers other such like causes. Now the cure thereof, according to the old Farries, is to take a good handfull of Leeks, and stamp them in a mortar with foure or five spoonefulls of Wine, then put thereunto twelve flies, called *Cantharides*, then straine them all together with a sufficient quantity of water to serve the Mare therewith two dayes together, by powring the same into her nature with a Glister-pipe made for the purpose, and at the end of three dayes next following, offer the horse unto her that should cover her, and after she is covered, wash her nature twice together with cold water.

There be others which use to take of *Nitrum*, of Sparrows dung, and of Turpentine, of each like quantity well wrought together, and made like a Suppositary, and put that into her nature, and it will cause her both to desire the horse, and also to conceive. There bee some of opinion, that it is good to put a Nettle into the horses mouth that should cover her. Of all which let onely experience be your warrantise.

CHAP. XCII.

Of the pestilent Consumption in Mares.

There is a certaine pestilent Consumption incident to Mares when they are with foale, proceeding from cold fleagm, gathered by raw foggy food
in

in the Winter season, which descending from the Kidneyes, doth oppresse the matrixe, and makes the Mare consume and pine away, so that if shee be not holpen, she will want strength to foale her foale. The signes are, suddaine leanesse, and a dropping of spirit, with much dislike of meate, and a continuall desire to be layd. The cure is, to powre into her nostrills three pintes of fish brine, called *G rume*, three or foure mornings together, and if the grieve be very great, then to take five pints, and it will make her vent all flegme at her nostrills.

CHAP. XCIII.

Of the rage of Love in Mares.

IT is reported by some of our English *Farrriers*, that Mares being proudly and high kept, will at the Spring of the yeare, when their bloud begins to wax warme, if they chaunce, when they go to the water, to see their owne shadowes therein, that presently they will fall into an extreame love therewith, and from that love into such a hot rage, that they will forget either to eate or drink, and never cease running about the pasture, gazing strangely, and looking oft about and behind them. The cure of this folly is presently to leade the Mare to the Water againe, and there to let her see her selfe as before, and the second sight will utterly extinguish the memory of the first, and to take away her folly.

CHAP.

CHAP. XCIII.

Of Mares which cast their Foales.

THe occasions why mares cast their Foales, that is, to Foale them either before their times, or dead, are very many, as straines, strokes, intemperare riding, rushings, hard wintring, or too great farnessse, and such like. Now you shall understand that this abortement, or untimely casting of a Foale, is most dangerous to the life of the Mare: For nature being, as it were, detained from her true & perfect custom, which is the preservation of health, cannot choose but give way to the contrary, which is Death and Mortality, and the body and pores being set open to the ayre, before it be able to defend the cold, cannot choose but be suffocated with unwholsome Vapours. If therefore you have a Mare at any time which doth cast her Foale, and withall falleth sicke upon the same, you shall presently take her into the house, and set her up very warme, then give her two spoonful of the powder of *Diapente* well brewd in a pint of Muscadine, and feed her with sweet hay, and warm Mash for at least a week after.

CHAP. XCV.

Of Mares that are hard of Foaling.

IF it happen by any mischance, or otherwise, that the passages or other conduits, which leade from the matrix be so straitned that the Mare cannot foale and so be in hanger of her life: then it shall be good that

that you helpe her by holding and stopping her nostrills with your hand in a gentle manner, that her breath may not have passage; and she will foale with a great deale the more ease, & much sooner, and soe the paine is nothing, because a Mare always foaleth standing. Now if at any time when your Mare hath foaled, she cannot voyde her secundine, which is the skinne wherein the foale is wrapped, in that naturall manner as she ought, you shal then take a good handfull or two of Fennel, and boyle it in water: then take halfe a pint of that, and another halfe pinte of olde Wine, and put thereto a fourth part of oyle, and mingle them altogether over the fire, and being but luke warme, powre it into the Mares nostrills, and hold her Nostrills close with your hand, to keepe it in a pretty while after, and no question but she will void her secundine presently.

CHAP. XCVI.

Of making a Mare to cast her Foale.

IF at any time: you would have your Mare to cast her Foale, as having present occasion to use her, crin that the Foale is not worthily enough begot, you shall take a pottle of new milke, and two handfulls of *Savin* chopt and bruised, and putting them together, boyle them till one halfe bee consumed; then straine it very hard, and give it the Mare luke-warme to drinke, then presently gallop her a good pace, then set her up, doe thus two mornings, and before the third she will have cast her Foale. Others use with their hand to kil the Foale in the mares belly,

but it is dangerous, and the former medicine is more sufficient. And thus much of the infirmities of Mares. Now let us returne againe to Horses and Mares in generall.

CHAP. XCVII.

Of the drinking of Horse-leeches by horses.

IF a Horse at any time drinke downe horse-leeches, they will sucke his blood and kill him. The signes are, the Horse will hang downe his head to the ground, and abondance of filthy flaver will fall from his mouth, and sometimes some blood also. The cure is, presently to give him a pint of faller oyle to drinke, and that will make them fall away and kill them. But the best is to give him halfe an ounce of *Diapente* brewed in a pint of good strong Beere or Ale.

CHAP. XCVIII.

Of swallowing downe Hens-dung, or any venemous thing whatsoever.

IF a horse chance to swallow downe any hens dung with his hay, it will fret his guts, and make him to avoyde most filthy matter at his Fundament. The cure whereof is to take a pint of Wine, halfe a pint of honey, and two spoonefuls of Smallage seed bruised, and mixing them well together, to give it the horse to drinke, and then to walke him well upon the same that he may empty his Belly. But if the horse chauce to lick up any other venemous thing, as Neut, or such like,

like, which you shall know by the instant swelling of his body, and the trembling of all his members; then the cure is first to put him into a sweate, either by cloathes or exercise, then to let him bloud in the palate of the mouth, and looke how much he bleedeth, so much let him swallow downe hot: or else give him strong Wine and salt mixt together: or else take the roote, and leaves, and fruite of Briony, which being burnt to ashes, give the horse a good spoonfull thereof with a pint of sweet wine to drinke.

Now for mine own part, I have ever used to take a pint of Saller oyle, and two spoonfull of Sugarcandy beaten to powder, and as much of the powder *Diapente*, and brewing them together, give it the Horse to drinke: or for want of *Diapente*, so much of the shaving either of Ivory, or of an old Stags home, especially the tips thereof burnt.

CHAP. XCIX.

*Of purging Medicines in generall, and first
of the Suppositary.*

PURging is said of our most ancientest Farriers, to be an emptying and discharging of all and every superfluous humours which distemper the body with their evill qualities: For such humours breed evil nutriment, which when it will not be corrected nor holpen with good Diet, alteration, nor the benefit of nature and kindly heate, then must it by force either be taken away by Purgation, Glisters, or Suppositary. Now for as much as a horse is troubled with many diseases in the Guts, and that nothing can
○
purge

purge the gut with that gentlenesse which a Suppositary doth, I will here first begin to speake of Suppositaries.

Understand then that a horse being surfeited, and full of evill humours needing to be purged, it is best first to give him a Suppositary; least if you should come to apply a Glister, the great Gut being stopped with dry, hard, and hot excrements, the medicine nor able to worke beyond it, loose both labour and vertue; so that I make account the Suppositary is but onely a preparative to the Glister, and but onely to cleanse and make loose the great gut, which cometh to the tuell. The gentlest Suppositary then, and that which purgeth fleagme in the best manner, is to take a square piece of cake-sope, or white new castle sope, about five or sixe inches long, and shaving it round till it be not above three inches about in the midst, and a little smaller at each end then in the midst; then annoint it over with Sallet oyle, and so with your hand thrust it up more then a full spanne into his Fundament: then suddainly clappe his taile to his tuell, and hold it hard and close more then halfe an houre, in which space the most part of the Suppositary will be wasted, then gently take away your hand, and let him void the Suppositary at his pleasure. The next Suppositary to this, and which purgeth choler abundantly, is to take Savin, stamp small, staves-aker and salt, and boyle them in heny till it be thicke, then take and knead it, and role it of a pretty thicke long role, as before you were taught for the hard sope, and minister it at his tuell. The next to this, and that which purgeth melancholy, is

to take a keene Onion, and pilling off the skinn, jag it a little crosse-wise with your knife, and so thrust it up into the horses Fundament. There is besides these Suppositaries, one other Suppositary, which is to take a quart of honey, and boyle it on the fire til it come to be thicke like a Salve, then powre it forth upon a table, and kneade it like a piece of dough: then when it begins to harden, or grow stiffe, (as it will doe when it begins to coole) then role it up under your hand, and make it in the forme of a Suppositary, as is before shewed, and administer it in the same manner. This Suppositary is good to purge the gut of any foule humor, and therewithall is comfortable to the body.

Now you must also understand, that as these Suppositaries are preparative before Glisters, so they are likewise to be used simply of themselves, where the sicknesse of the horse carrieth no great danger: For upon every slight occasion, or small drinesse which is to be dissolved with the most gentle Medicine, to administer a Glisten, were to bring the horses Body to such an intemperate loosenesse, as would prove much worse then the former contrary drinesse, Therefore I wish every carefull Farrier (because the body of a horse would not bee tempered withall too much by physicke) first, in the case of costivenesse, or inflammation of the inward parts, to approve a Suppositary: as namely the first prescribed and naked like a mans fist, or else like a role or quantity of Roch Allome, or else foure inches of a great tallow Candle or Percher of foure in the pound: which if it worke effectually, and keepe the horses

O 2

body

body soluble, then to proceede no further; but in case it doe not, but that the offensive matter stil breedeth and encreaseth, then to administer a Glisters; and where that faileth to take away the offence, to administer a purgation. Now by the way, you are to take with you this generall rule, and never to faile in the performance, which is, never to administer either Suppositorary or Glisters, but first immediately before you give it, to rake your horse, which Raking is in this manner. First, you shall annoynt all your hand and arme over either with Saller Oyle, sweete butter, or fresh grease; and then thrust it into the horses Fundament, and draw out all the Dung, fleagme, and filthy matter that you can feele, even as high up as the great bagge: Which done, then either administer your Suppositorary or Glisters, which you please, at your leisure; and in any case, whilst the horse is thus in Physicke, keepe him exceeding warme.

CHAP. C.
Of glisters and their Vses.

THe natures and properties of Glisters are divers, and therefore it is necessary that every carefull Farrier learne to know to what end they serve, and with what drugges or simples they ought to be compounded: For every glisters is to be made according to the disease. Now of Glisters, some are to ease griefes, and to allay the sharpnesse of the humours, some to binde, some to loosen, and some to purge, and some to heale ulcers. These Glisters by cleansing the

the Guts; refresh the vitall parts, and prepare the way before for every inward and strong Purgation. Therefore whensoever a horse through greifenesse of humours, corruption of blood, or abundance of fleagm, choler, or melancholy, is brought unto that evill habite of body, that of necessity he must be purged, and that especially his paine is in his Guts and body, you shall then, as before I said (having made a probation of a Suppositary) first of all to administer a Glister; left by purging suddenly with any Purgation or Potion; you stirre up a multitude of evill humours, which finding no passage downward (because the guts be stopp'd with winde and dregs) do stirre upwards; and so perhaps put the horse into much greater danger.

Now for the composition of Glisters you shall understand that they be made of foure things; that is, of Decoctions, of Drugs, of Oyle, or such like unctuous matter, as butter, or soft grease, and fourthly of divers salts, to provoke the vertue expulsive. A decoction is the broath of certaine hearbes and simples boyled together in water, untill the third part be consumed. Now sometimes for want of such decoctions, you may if you please, use some far Beefe broth, or the broth of a sheepes head, or such like, or Milk or whay, or some such like liquor, mingled sometimes either with Honey or with Sugar, according to the quality of the disease: the Glister being either Lensive, that is to say, easing of paine: or Glutinative, which is, joyning of things together: or else Absterfive, which is, wiping away, or cleansing of filthy matter. Now of this decoction or broath bee-

ing very cleane strained, you shall never take above three pints at the most, and many times but a quart, into which you shall put such drugges as are needefull, exceeding not at the most, above three or foure ounces, according as the simples be more or lesse violent: of the oyle you shall never use in a Glister above halfe a pinte, and of Salt not above three or foure drams. You shall also continually administer your Glister like warme, either with some long horn, or a large Glister-pipe made for the purpose, and fixed to the largest bladder you can get, and this Glister-pipe is of all the best, and doth least loose labour. When you doe administer a Glister, you shall set the horses hinder parts somewhat higher then the foreparts, and then you shall put the Glister-pipe in at his ruell into his Fundament up to the head, and having the confection within the bladder, wring it with a very good strength into his body. A Glister would be administered to a horse when hee is rather empty then full paunced, whether it be in the fore-noone or after-noone. Now for the retaining or holding of the Glister in the horses body, three quarters of an hour is sufficient, of what quality soever it be. Now you are to note by the way, that as soon as the Glister is administered into the horses body, you must draw out the pipe with all the gentlenesse that may bee, and suddainely clappe his tayle to his ruell, and so hold it with your hand, without any moving or stirring of the horse, till the medicine hath his full time of working.

Now to come unto particular glisters, that you may know which Glister is for which purpose, the first is,
take

take of the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, halfe an ounce, of *Dragantium* three quarters of an ounce, of *Centuary* and of *Worme wood*, of each halfe a handfull, of *Castoreum* a quarter of an ounce, boyle them in three pints of water, then being strained you shall dissolve therein of *Gerologundinum* three ounces, of salt three quarters of an ounce, and of oyle Olive halfe a pint, and so take warme administer it Glister wise, as hath bin before expressed: this Glister is exceeding soveraigne for the pestilence in horses; or for any Fever of what nature soever.

The next is to take the decoction of Mallowes, and to mixe therewithall either fresh butter, or Salted Oyle, and so take warme administer it: this is of all Glisters the most gentlest, and as the former Glister is absterive or cleansing, so this is lenitive and a great easer of paine, it is most soveraigne for a Horse that is taken, or that hath any contraction or Convulsion, and generally for any costivenesse in a horse whatsoever, proceeding from inward surfeite or sicknesse, as from the surfeit by provender, tounding in the body, and such like. The next is to take of salt water, or cleane Brine a quart, and dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Sope, and then take warme administer it: this Glister is very good for the Cholicke, or any other sicknesse of the guts or Belly. And thus from these three Glisters you may compound many Glisters, but in mine opinion, if you use no more then them onely, they will be fully sufficient.

CHAP. CL
Of Purgations and their Uses.

THE purging of horses is ever by one of these two wayes, either by Pills, or by Potion: Pills are any solide and substantiall stuffe fixed together in one body, and being made into round balls, are cast down the Horses throat. And a Potion is, when you give the Horse any liquid purging matter to *drinke*, whether it bee purging powders dissolved in Wine or Ale, or that it be any other liquid stuffe. Now for Pills; they onely purge and make cleane the head and braine, bringing fleagme and other grosse humours downe into the Excrements: And Potions cleane the stomacke, guts, and every other inward member. Now the Art of the true carefull Farrier is in choosing of the simples, whereof these Pills or Potions are to be compounded, and in aptly, or artificially applying of a same. First then, it is needfull that every good Farrier (before he go about to purge his horse) know with what ill humor a horse is oppressed, as whether it proceede from choler, fleagme, or melancholy; and where the humours doe most abound, and then what simples are best to purge those humours, and with what property, quality, and temperament they bee endued; for some simples are most violent, and next neere to strong poysons, as *Scammony*, or *Coliquintida*; some againe are gentle; and rather nourishing then medicinall, as *Manna*, *Cassia*, whay, prunes, and such like: and some are neither too violent, nor too gentle, but of a mean, as *Renbarbe*,

Agarick

Garlick, Selt, and *vine*. Now the ancient *Arabs* did use to purge their horses with the pulpe of *Coliquintida*, sometimes with the floores of wilde *Cucumbers*, and sometimes with the broth of a sodden Whelp mixt with *Nitrum*, and such like; but at this day they are more for pride, and therefore I wish him that for his experience still to make a tryall of strong medicines, to know the working of every simple (which is a most praise worthy Ambition,) first to make his proofes upon Jades, whose losse he respecteth not, and so by that working to adventure on better horses, as on a braber still. A. g. n. W.

But to returne to my purpose, the *Farrier* who goeth about to purge a horse by purgation, must consider the nature of the horses disease, & the strength of the horse, and with them joine the nature, strength, and quantity of the medicine: hee must also consider the climate under which the horse is bred, the time of the disease, the time of the year, and the time of the day. For as the diseases and the humours which cause the diseases, are sundry, so they must be avoided by sundry medicines, sundry wies compounded, according as experience from a continuall practice shall instruct you: wherein you are to observe and note, that weak delicate, and tender horses are not to be purged with that Violence which strong, stubborn, and sturdy horses are, and therefore in such cases, the qualitie and quantity is to be looked into of every simple. The Climate is to be respected, as whether it be hot or cold; and the time of the disease: For some diseases must be purged at the beginning, as Fevers, Pestilence, Yellows, Staggers, and all Vio-

lent

leer inward diseases, and let not till the matter be
thoroughly digested, as Galls, Strangles, and Apo-
sumations. Now albeit the sicknesse proceeds from
cold humours, yet you must not administer as hot
simples in Summer as in Winter; nor in the contra-
ry case, so cold things in Winter as in Summer,
whereby you see the time and the season of the year
is to be respected. Then touching respect of the day
you are to observe that day to be best that is most
temperate, for too much heate maketh a horse faint,
and too much cold doth hinder the medicine from
Working. A little regard is to be had to the winde
and weather, for a moyst day hath a South winde,
is to be preferred before a North winde with a dry
day. Now the best houre of receiving any kinde of
Potion, is ever in the morning, after he hath fasted
from meate and drinke all the night before. As soone
as your horse hath received any pil or potion, let him
be walked or gently ridden up and downe one houre
at the least, and then set up, and suffered to stand on
the Bit two houres after, well littered, cloathed,
and stoped; but if you perceive that hee beginneth
to grow sicke or ill (as most commonly horses will)
then you shall suffer him to lye downe, and as soone
as his sicknesse is past, you shall offer him to drinke
a Mash of Malt and water luke-warme: for any other
meate keepe him fasting till his medicine have done
working.

Now to come to particular receipts and medi-
cines themselves, you shall easily understand that al-
though the ancient *Farrriers* doe make but two kinde
that is to say, Pils and Purgations, yet I divide them
into

ined three, that is to say, Scourings, Pils, and Purgations. Scourings are those wholesome, naturall, and gentle purging medicines, which stirring up no great Fluxe of humours, doe onely keepe the body cleane from such evils as would arise and grow, being every way as wholesome in health, as in sickness, and may most properly be termed preparatives, or preparers of the body to entertaine more strong medicines. To speake then first of the most gentlest and naturall scouring, it is onely grasse being given to a horse onely fifteene dayes together, and no more, for after that it fasteth and now scoureth. Next unto grasse is forrage, which is onely the blades of greene Corne, as Wheate, Rye, Barley, and such like, being given seven dayes and no more. Next is greene Thistles, being cut up, and given the horse to eat the space of five dayes and no more. And the last of this nature is the Masse made in this manner: take a pecke of ground malt, and put it into a pail, then take a gallon and a halfe of Water boyling hot from the fire, and put it into the malt, then with a staffe, mash and stirre them together at least halfe an houre, till tasting the Water you it feel as sweete as Honey, then being luke-warme, give the horse to drinke. All these scourings do onely but cleanse the guts and coole the body, adding comforts to the spirits, and ingendring strength, onely the masse is to be used after labour, or in stead of drinke in the time of any great sicknesse. Scourings of a little stronger nature are these: first, when you give your horse any Provender, to mixe with halfe a pecke of Oates, a handfull or two of cleane drest hemp-seede: or else

to take a good quantity of Boxe tree-leaves, and put them into a powder dish, then set them before the fire, and let them dry leasurely till they be so hard that you may crush them into powder, then take as much of the powder of Brimstone as there is powder of Boxe, and mixt them together, and amongst halfe a pecke of Oates mixe a handfull of this powder, and give it the horse to eat, both these scourings are to be used after labour, especially when the horse hath sweat much.

These two scourings worke upon no matter, but what nature is willing to expell, they purge the stomacke, head, and in trailes, they kill all kind of wormes, and dry up fleagin. Scourings of the strongest nature, are to take of Sallet oyle half a pint, and of new milk from the Cow a pint, brew it together, & give it the horse warme: or else take a pinte of *Muskadine*, and halfe a pint of Sallet oyl, and being mixt together give it the horse to drink: Or else halfe a pint of oyl, and pint of sack mixt together, and given the horse to drinke luk-warme.

These scourings cleanse the Head, Body, and gins, of all fleagme or molten grease, which any violent labour hath dissolved: they are exceeding good for any manner of cold or stoppings in the Winde-pipes, and if you adde unto them good store of Sugar-candy, it will preserve and keepe the horse from sickness. Now for pills, you shall very plainly understand that the first and best are these, either to take twenty cloves of *Garlicke* cleane pild and bruised, then a quarter of a pound of sweet Butter, and so role up the *Garlicke* in foure or five balls

or pellers, as big as two Walnuts a peece: And so taking out the Horses tongue thrust them down his throate one after another: or else to take a quarter of a pound of Butter, and as much red Saunders, beate them well together in a mortar, and then make it into four or five balls, and put them downe the Horses throate. Pills of a somewhat strong nature, are to take a handfull of Rosemary leaves, and chopping them small, mixe them with a quarter of a pound of sweete butter, and then making it into round balls, give them unto the horse: Or else take round pieces of raw Mellons, and thrust them downe the Horses throat: Or else to take five Greene figs, and put them down the horses throate.

The strongest Pill is this: take of Lard two pound laid in water two houres, then take nothing but a quarter of a pound of the cleane fat thereof, and stampe it in a Mortar, and thereto put of Lycoras, of Amleedes, and of Fenogreeke, of each beaten into powder, one ounce and a halfe, of Aloes likewise in powder one ounce, of Agerick halfe an ounce, knead all these together like paste; and make thereof foure or five balls, and give it the horse. The last recited Pill is singular good for the dry cough, and all the other pills are most soveraigne for all infirmities of the head, which grow either from fleagme, melancholy, or any other cold or moyst cause whatsoever. Now for Purgations, which are the strongest cleansers of the bodie, they be these: take two ounces of Mirre, & mixe it with a pint of wine, and it will purge all sickness which proceedeth of Choler: the signs whereof are, his belly will swell, be very hot, and hee can neither

neither dung, nor break winde. Take a pint of wine and beate a raw egge therein, and adde to it a quarter of an ounce of Brimstone, and halfe an ounce of Myrr beaten to powder, and give it the horse luke-warme, and it will purge all inward diseases proceeding of melancholy. Two spoonfuls of the powder *Diapente*, given with halfe a piate of swines grease, purgeth all diseases proceeding of fleagme. Take as much black Sope as a Walnut, a quart of new milke, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet oyle, and give it the horse luke-warme, and it purgeth all cold infirmities, but maketh the horse exceeding sicke. Take the gurs of a Tench or Barbell, being cut into little small peeces, and give it the horse in a quart of white Wine, & it will purge the horse from all costivenesse or pain in the gurs; Rye being boyled, so that it burst nor, then dryed again, and given the horse in stead of Proven-der, purgeth and killeth all manner of wormes. Take of Raddish roots one ounce, of the root called *Panax*, and of *Scamony*, of each halfe an ounce, beat all these together, and boyle them in a quart of honey, then give the horse two spoonfuls of this in a quart of ale luke-warm to drink, and it will purge all grosse humors, from whence proceedech either the falling evil, or any disease of the braine.

Take and boile *Elicampane* rootes in milke till they be soft, that you may bruise them to pap, and then adding thereto halfe a pint of Sallet oyle, give it the horse to drinke luke-warme, and this will purge and cleanse any kinde of Glanders. Take of sweere sope a quarter of a pound, and make it into three balls, and give them to the horse, & it wil purge

all evil humors whatsoever both violently; and most
abundantly.

CHAP. CII.

*A most excellent rare scouring for any horse, sicke or
sound, and especially for running or hunting
horses, whose grease must necessarily
be molten.*

FORasmuch as the greatest Art which doth belong
to the keeper either of running or hunting horse,
consisteth in the taking away from the horse his
grosse glut and fat; which not onely offendeth the
virall parts, but also stoppeth up the conduites and
vessels of winde, and that it cannot any way be done,
but by scouring after exercise; you shall understand
that the best of all scourings, which hath hitherto
beene approved, is this which I will here set downe:
You shall take twenty Raisings of the Sun; and pick
out the stones, and tenne figges, which you shall stir
in the middest round-wine, boyle them in a pottle of
running water till the water be consumed, and thick-
ned: then take the powder of Lycoras, Aniseedes,
and Sugar-candy finely sear'd, and mixe it with the
Raismes and Figges, stamping and working them to-
gether till it bee brought to a stiffe paste, then ma-
king round balls thereof of a pretty bignesse, role
and cover them all over with sweet Butter, and give
so many of them unto the horse as you shall thinke
meet for his strength; provided that the day before
you must give your horse such exercise as will be-
sure to melt his grease, and that immediately before
you

you give him this medicine, you also warme him thoroughly, that the humours being againe stirred up, the medicine may worke more effectually.

CHAP. CIII.

Of Needling or fumigation, and the use

thereof.

THere is yet also another manner of purging of a Horse, and especially his head, and that is by forcing him to neeze or sneeze violently at his Nose, casting forth all filthy and grosse matter, which otherwise would offend and oppresse the Braine; and this needling is wrought sometimes by fumes or Smoaks, sometimes by powders, and sometimes by oyles, the sharpest of which, tickling the tender and quick parts of the head, doe compell this sneezing and needling: Surely there is no purgation more wholesome, for as it cleanseth and separateth grosse matter, so it comforteth and maketh strong the Braine. Now to come unto the particular medicines which doe procure this needling, they be these: squirt into a horses nostrills either mans urine which is old, or the urine of an Ox which hath had much rest and it will force a horse to neeze, and is most wholesome for any Quotidian Fever. Take the powders of Gumdragant, Essens, and damask Roses wel mixt together, and blow it with a quill into the horses nostrills, and it is good either against the Fever in Summer or Winter. Take warm vinegar and squirt it into his nostrills, and it is comfortable against the Fever which commeth by raw digestion.

Take

Take of Garlick stalkes a handfull, being broke into little pieces, and a good quantity of *Frankincense*, and being put upon a chafing dish and coales, hold the chafing dish under the horses nostrills, so that the fume may ascend up into his head: and this is most excellent against the head-ache. Take feathers and brimstone, and burne them on a chafing dish and coales under the horses nose: or blow pepper and *Periberebe* beaten to powder up into his Nostrills, either of both these are most excellent against the sleeping evil. Take the powder of Mother-wort and blow it up into a horses nostrills, and it is good against the falling evil. Take two Goosefeathers annoynted over with *Oyle de Bay*, and thrust them up and downe in the horses nostrills: or else to take Sage, Penyrill, and Wheate, long sodden together, and put into a bagge as hoc as may bee, which bagge would be so close fastned to the horses head, that all the smoake and savour thereof may ascend up into his nostrills: Or take a clout annoynted with Sape or *Oyle de Bay*, and rub it up and downe his nostrills as high as may be. Any of all these, or all these together are most excellent against any cold, poze, or other obstruction in the head. Take Orpiment and Sulphure, and burne them on the coales, and hold it under the horses nose: or take oyl de Bay, *Euserbium*, and white *Ellchore*, and annoynting two feathers therewith, thrust them up into the horses nostrills: both these are good against the Glanders.

Take of the stalkes of Briony or wild Vine, two handfulls, and bruise them betwixt two stones, and being so bruised, put them into a linnen bag, and fasten

the bag so to the horses head, that the sent may go up into his nostrills without touching the hearbe with his mouth : And this is excellent against the mourning of the Chaine, or any inward cough. Take of Rosemary, of Nard, and of Sage, dried and beaten into fine powder, of each like weight, and with a quill blow them up into the horses nostrills : or take the powder of white Pepper, or of Salt-niter, or of *Ris-Irrica*, or black *Elcharis*, and blow them with a quill up into the horses nostrills : or take Linnen chopr dipr in the dregs of oyle, and setting it on fire, then suddenly put it out againe, and let the smoake ascend up into the horses nostrills : or squirt into his nostrills *Aristolochia*, mixt with wine, or Salt-niter mixt with water : or salt and Roch-allum mixt with wine : or take ground Ivy beaten small, and thrust up into his nose : or Bay-berry beaten small, and burnt on the coales under the horses nose : or a coale of fire put into a dump of wet hay, making a smothering smoake, and held under the horses nose : Any of these are most excellent against any disease of the head, especially Staggers, Colds, Glanders, Strangle, and such like.

¶ Yet all these have their severall imperfections: the best Sumethen of all others whatsoever, is to take the best Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamine, and bruising them grossly together, burne them under the horses nose.

CHAP. IV.

Of Frictions and Bathes, and of their severall uses.

Friccions or Bathes, are a certaine rubbing, an-
nointing, or bathing of a horses body all over, e-
specially against the haire, because the medicine
may sinke in so much the better with comfortable
and soveraigne Unguents, whose vertues do loosen
the skine, cheare up the inward spirites, and spread
a lively heate and feeling over the whole body:
And of Frictions, both according to the opinion
of the old Farriers, and also of the best of this pre-
sent age, these are the most soveraigne. Take of Da-
maske Roses one pound, of old Oyle a pint, of strong
Vineger a pint and an halfe, of Mints and Rew, bea-
ten into powder, of each one ounce and a halfe, to-
gether with one old dry Nue: beat them, and min-
gle them well together: Then being strained and
made like warme, if it be in the Summer time, and
that the Sunne shine hot, take the horse abroad:
But if otherwise, keepe him in the stable, and
heating a barre of Iron exceeding hot, hold it over,
and on each side the Horse, and with the oymtment
rubbe and chafe the horse all over against the haire,
untill the horse beginne to sweate, then cloath the
horse very warme and let him stand. This Friction
is excellent against all Winter Fevers, or any inward
sicknesse that commeth of Cold. Take of blacke
Elleborus two or three handfuls, and boyle it in a
sufficient quantity of strong Vinegar, and with that
rubbe and chafe all the horses head and body quite

over once or twice a day ; and it is most excellent against Frenzy, madnesse, or any drynesse, or scalines of the skinne.

Take oyle de Bay, or *Dialthea*, and anoynt all the horses body all over therewith, holding a pan of coales, or hot barre of Iron, where the oymment to make it sinke in, or else make him a bathe of running water, wherein is boyled Rew, Worme-wood, Sage, Juniper, Bay-leaves, and Hyssope, and bathe all his body therewith. Either of these are most soveraign for the mourning of the Chine, or any disease of the Liver, Lungs, or Spleene. Take wine and oyl, and having mixt them together, chafe & rub the horses body therewith, and it is most soveraigne for any inward sickness, especially the liver. To bath a horse in salt water is very wholesome, both for the horses skin, and also for any disease in the stomacke.

Lastly, take of Mallows, of Sage, of each two or three handfuls, and a Rose-cake, boyle them together in water, then being boyled till the water bee all consumed, adde a good quantity of Butter, or Sallet oyle, and mixing them together, bathe all the horses foure legs therewith, and all the parts of his body also; and there is nothing more soveraign for a horse that hath been tyred or over-travailed. To let bloud, and with that bloud, and oyle, and Vinegar, presently to anoynt his body, helpeth most sort of infirmities.

CHAP. CV.

*Generall Drenches or Medicines for all the inward
Diseases or farfets in horses.*

There is no medicine more soveraigne for all diseases which breed in a horses body, then to take halfe an ounce of the powder called *Diapente*, and brew it either with a pint of Sacke, if it be for colds, or Muscadine if it be for heart sickness, and so give it the horse to drinke fasting in the morning: and do this at least three mornings together, especially when the horse beginneth first to droop. The next to this, is to take of Silladine two handfuls, both roote and leaves, chop them and brüise them: then take of Rew as much, of red Sage and Mint as much, and of Aloes halfe an ounce: boyle these in a pottle of Beer or Ale till the one halfe be consumed, and then give it the horse luke-warme to drink.

Take foure ounces of *Diapente*, and mixe it with foure ounces of clarified Honey, and keep it in a close glasse, and give halfe an ounce thereof with a pint of sweete wine to the horse to drinke; and it is an excellent drench. Take of Lycoras an ounce, of Aniseedes Comen-seeds, and *Elicampane* roots, of each halfe an ounce, of *Turnerick* and Baies, of each a quarter of an ounce, of long Pepper & *Rennugreek*, of each two drams, beat these small and searce them, and put five spoonefuls thereof into a quart of Ale warmed, with a litle butter or oyle, and it is very soveraigne for any disease comming of cold causes. Take a quart of good ale or wine, a raw egge bearen and mingled

with twelve scruples of quicke Sulphure, and foure scruples of *Myrrh* made into powder, and give it the horse to drinke, it is a good drench. The powder of Brimstone mixt with sweet wine, is a good drench also. The roote of the Sea onion, the rootes of popler, called the Greeke *Albomari*, mingled with common Sale, given in water, keepeth the horse long in health. Take fine powder of *Fennegreke*, and bruise it, seeth it in water till it waxe thicke, add a pound of sweete butter, an ounce of Linseed Oyle, and as much of the Oyle of Nuts, mingle them well together, and give it the horse in three or foure dayes to drinke, by a pretty quantity at a time. Selladine, simply of it selfe, or Rue simply of it selfe, boyled in Beere or Ale, and as much Brimstone at a Wall-nut, is an excellent Drench for any long taken, surfeite. Garlick and Houlick beaten together in a Mortar, and then boyled in beere or Ale from a pottle to a quart, then mixt with Licorise, Aniseeds, and Sugar candy, and a pretty quantity of Sallet oyle, is an excellent Drench for any inward sicknesse which doth proceed from hot causes, as is the Frenzie, the Anticor, and such like. And thus much of general drenches, and their uses.

CHAP. CVI.

How to make the powder called Diapente.

THis word *Diapente* is as much as to say composition of five simples: for the receipt is this compounded. Take of *Gentian*, of *Aristolochia*, of *Bayberries*, of *Myrrh*, and of the shavings of *Ivory*, of each like

like quantity, beate them into very fine powder, and then searce it. This powder is praised to bee a soveraign preservative or medicine against all inward diseases: and therefore I would with every Farrier, and all such as are the masters of good horses, never to be without it.

CHAP. CVII.

A most famous receipt, which is both a singular drench and a singular ointment, called of the
Italians Accopum.

TAKE of *Enforbium* halfe an ounce, of *Castoreum* one ounce, of *Adraces* halfe a quarter of a pound, *Bdelium* halfe an ounce and halfe a quarter, of *Pepper* a quarter of a pound, *Fox greale* halfe an ounce, *Opoponax* one ounce, *Lacerpitium* three quarters of an ounce, *Amoniacum* halfe a quarter of a pound, *Pidgeons dung* as much, *Galbanum* halfe an ounce, *Nitrum* one ounce one quarter, *Spuma Nitri* three quarters of an ounce, *Ladanum* a full quarter of a pound, *Perethrum*, and *Bay berries*, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Cardadum* two ounces, seede of *Rew* halfe a quarter of a pound, seede of *Agnus Castus* one ounce, *Parsley* halfe an ounce, dried rootes of *Ireos*, or *Flower-de-luce* one ounce one quarter, *Hyssop* and *Carpobalsanum* a quarter of a pound, *Oyle of Flower-de luce* a quarter of a pound and halfe a quarter; *Oyle de Bay* as much, *Oyle of Spikenard* three quarters of a pound, *Oleum Cyprinum* three quarters of a pound and halfe a quarter; the oldest *Oyle Olive* one pound and a halfe,

halfe, pitch a quarter of a pound and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound; melt every one of these that will melt, severally by themselves, and then mingle them together with the rest of the Simples beaten into fine powder: and after that they have beene a little boyled on the fire, take it off, and straine it into a faire Vessell, and whensoever you will give your horse any thereof, give it him with Wine, or foure or five spoonefull with a pinte of Sacke or Muscadine: and if with long keeping it waxeth any thing stiffe or hard, then soften it with the oyle of Cipresse, so that it may bee good and thicke.

This Confection is both a medicine and an oynement, if you put it in the horses nostrils, it will draw out all noysome humors, and discharge his head of all griefe: if you annoint his body therewith, it healeth all convulsions, colds, and drinesse, or withering of the body, and if you bathe his Limbes therewith, it driveth away all wearinesse and tiring; and if you give it him with wine to drinke, it cureth all kind of inward maladies.

CHAP. CVIII.

How to make the oyle of Oates.

TAKE of Milke two Gallons, and warming it on the fire, put thereto a quarter of a pound of burnt Allome, which will make it run of Curds, then take out the Curd and cast it away; then straine the whay through a course cloath in a cleane vessell: then take a quarter of a pecke of cleane husked Oates that were

were never dried, and put them into the whay, and set them on the fire till the Oares burst, and be soft, then take them off, and put them into a Collander that is full of holes, so that the whay may goe gently from them without any pressing (for you must keep the Oares as moist as may be :) this done, put the Oares into a frying pan, and set them over the fire, stirring them continually till you see the Vapour or smoke of them to ascend upwards, but as it were ruine about the pan; then suddenly take them off, and putting them into a presse, presse them most exceedingly, and looke what cometh from them is onely the oyle of them, which you must save in a close glasse. Now there are other more artificiall and curious waies to distill and extract this Oyle, but this of all other is the most easiest and surest for every meane capacity. This oyle of Oares is of all medicines and simples whatsoever, the most excellent and soveraigne for a horses body, as beeing extracted from the most naturall, wholesome, and best foode which doth belong unto a horses body. This oyle being given by foure or five Spoonfull at a time in a pint of sweete Wine, or a quart of strong Ale, and some of the whay powred into the horses Nostrills, doth cure the Glanders before all other medicines. It is also (given in the same manner) the best of all Purgations; for it purgeth away all those venemous and filthy humours which feedeth the most incurable Farreyn whatsoever. And for mine owne part, as long as I can conveniently come by this oyle of Oares, so long I will never in any medicine whatsoever, use any oyle or unctions matter

ter then it onely: I having found by experience, that it is the Sovereigne of all Simples of that kinde, whatsoever they be.

CHAP. CIX.

Certaine briefe observations to be observed at home and abroad, whilest the horse is in health.

THese observations now following, are gathered from the most exact principles, and unfallible grounds of all the best and surest approved horsemen, either of this Kingdome, or of any other Nation within Christendome.

First then for the generall feeding of your horse when he is in health, you shall feede him with straw, Hay, Oats, fine little Wheat, Beans, Barly, bread made of Beans, Pease, or Pitches, or any other meate that swels not in the horses body.

It is the opinion of *Camerarius* first to give provender, then hay, and lastly water; but our English custome is, first hay, then water, and lastly provender.

In your travaile feede your horse betimes for all night, that thereby the horse may sooner take his rest.

The quantity of Provender which you shall give your horse at one time, shall bee as much as you can hold in the palms of both your hands at six times, or three pints by measure.

Horse bread which is made of cleane beans, cleane pease, or cleane fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

Let your horses meate and drinke bee exceeding sweete and cleane, yet his water by no meanes ex-

treame

treame cold running water from the rooke; for it
pierceth too much.

To rub your horses mouth with Salt and Wine,
will make him burkeate and drink with a better be-
et appetite.

Let your horse neither eate when he is hot; nor
drinke when he is hot; neither presently after his
travaille.

Let your horse moderate when the weather
is either extreame hot or extreame cold; that so you
may avoid extreame heates; or sudden colds.

Travail not your horse too late; that your owne
eye may see him well dried; and well fed before you
take your own rest.

Never take your saddle from your horse back sud-
dainely.

Lead nor your horse; least your selfe walke on
foote.

Let your horse eye cleane and dry; keep your stable
sweete; let no swine lye neare it; nor let any pullen
come within it.

Let your horse be ever tied with two Remes.

Let the light of your stable be ever toward South
and North; yet so as the North windows may in the
Wintre be shut close at pleasure; and opened in the
Summer to give fresh ayre.

Ride your horse oft a litle on stony wayes; that
hee may the better feele his feete; and harden his
hoofes.

Have ever near your stable some close plain green;
that your horse being let loose; hee may oft tramble
himselke thereon.

Let

Let your horses bed be of soft sweete straw, some what above his knees, of which, Wheate straw is the best: for though Barley straw be the softest, yet a horse will cover to eat it, and it is unwholsome, and Wheate straw is not unwholsome to eate; yet it is hard to lye upon: as for Oat straw it is the best in the Superlative, for it is both wholsome to eate, and soft to lye upon.

Curry or dresse your horse twice a day, that is, before water, and when hee is curried, rub him with your hand, and with a rubber, his head would bee rubbed with a wet cloath, and his cods made clean with a dry cloath: his fore-top, his maine, and his taile, would be often wet with a wet main comb, and ever where the horses hair is thinnest, there curry the gentlest.

Let the plaunchers of your stable lye even and Levell, that your horse may stand at his ease, and not prove lame by too much oppressing his hinder parts.

Let not any mud wal be within your horses reach; for he will naturally cover to eate it, and nothing is more unwholsome.

Give your horse plenty of Garbadge (which is chopp wheate straw) both with his provender, and without.

Let your hay bottles be very little, and tyed very hard; for so your horse shall eate with the best stomack, and make least wast.

To sprinkle water upon your hay, is most wholsome, and to sprinkle Fenugreek upon your Provender, is as soveraigne: the first is good for the winde, the latter for wormes.

Give

Get your horse daily exercise, for that gets the best stomach to his meate.

Purge your horse once a year with grasse, or with green blades of Corn called Forrage, for fifteen days together, yet before you purge him, in any case let him blood, and whilst he is in purging, by no means let him have any provender.

A horse after travail hath ever more blood than any beast whatsoever.

Green grasse or Forrage cleanseth the blood, encreaseth strength, healeth diseases, avoydeth melancholy, helpeth the horses growth, and maketh the skin smooth: whilst the horse is at foyle, by no means let him take cold.

The Northern man watereth two houres before he rideth at the least: then lets the horse eate a little hay, then gives provender, but not much, and bridlith the horse up a quarter of an houre before hee rideth: At night he watereth two miles before hee taketh his lodging, then rideth easily: he neither walketh his horse, nor stuffeth him, nor looseth any girt, but onely rubbeth him very cleane, and so lets him bite upon his bridle halfe an houre after, with good store of litter under him; then hee gives the horse hay, and after provender: before hee goeth to water againe, (yet but a little) then seeth the horse thoroughly well dressed and rubbed, well littered, and most sufficiently meated.

There bee others which walke after labour, then rubs wel, littereth and unbridlith: both which bee good, so that the one have not too much walking, nor the other too cold a stable. But howsomever,
Ruffe

stusse not your horse backward, but betwixt his fore legs, and formost girt: for backward stuffing is perilous, least drawing his yard when hee would stale, he draw backe in his sheath any of the Litter that stop him. The Northerne mans use agreeth with the *French* principles, which saith: Use no other walking then your selfe on your horse backe, by riding him gently till you come at your Inne, and so make him cold, then shake litter under him, rub his legges, his belly, and every part of his body well, till he be dry, then unbridle him, rub his head well, and give him hay, slacke no girt till it bee night that the windowes be shut; suffer the horse to drinke but a little at once, to avoide suddaine cooling of the stomacke, or driving the horse into a shaking Fever: At night rub and curry well, and feede according to the horses stomack.

Other good Farriers ride gently till the Horses sinewes be chafed, and never water in travaile till the horse have staled, and forbear to travaile him fast before he hath drunke, that he may not drink in his great heare, and they hold the standing water the best; after water for a mile they ride softly till his water be warmed in his belly, and before they come to their Inne they do not water, nor of an houre after they have unbridled: then they cloath well, and give Provender, having a care that their horses stand not in the winde, and that they have bin rubbed dry and cleane. Now all these principles are exceeding good, yet I would wish every travailer to learne how his horse hath beene used, and that custome (if it bee not too much against reason) still to follow.

If

If you come late to your Inne, and that your journey be great and earnest, so that your horse will not eate till he have drunke, and yet is hot notwithstanding, then let his drink be milk given in the dark, lest the whitenesse make him refuse it: this is both cordiall and pleasant: if you cannot get milk enough, then mingle milk with Water luke-warme, for no drinke would be given a horse hotter.

If your horse either by labour or any surfeires be brought low, leane, and weake, you shall give him *Mares milk* to drink many days together, and it will make him strong.

It is not good to wash your horse, especially if he be either hot or very fat: otherwise you may wash his legs above his knees, so that in no case you wash his belly, and that you ride him a good round pace after his washing, then by no means walk him, but set him up and dresse him: The purer the water is wherein you wash your horse, the more wholsome it is, so that it be not too extreame cold.

The best houres to water your horse in, (when he lives at rest) is betwixt seaven and eight in the morning, and foure and five in the evening.

When yoe travail, at every steep hill light, both to refresh your horse and your selfe.

Let a fat or hot horse have his water at four times, and not as much as he will drinke at once, give him provender twice at night, and but once in the morning: let his cloath neither bee too hot, nor with straw too much stuffed: when hee eateth good hay, let him have lesse provender then when hee eateth straw: give his meate by little at once to avoid g lutting.

ting of him, and let him stand two houres every day without meate.

Rubbing much, hard, and well, doth profit, preserve, and doth keepe both strength of body; and legges: for in rubbing and combing, a horse doth take much delight, and it doth better then much meate.

To feed with Barley (according to the opinion of the ancient *Italians*) ingendreth good bloud, encreaseth strength and courage, and maintaineth health, but with us here in *England*, we find oats to be much better feeding.

In the dogge-dayes it is not wholsome to ride your horse oft into the water to allay his naturall heate.

The Masters eye to see his horse well curried, and with the hand well rubbed, and well meated, and the stable sweet and cleane kept, preserveth health, and wonderfully feedeth the horse.

Cleanse and picke the soles and bottomes of your horse feet oft, and stuffe them well with Oxe dung, anoynt his hooves with fresh grease, tarre, or turpentine.

Much rest is the mother and the nurse of many diseases.

When you ride, look oft to your saddle, & your horses shooes, and you shall finde much more ease in your journey.

CHAP.

CHAP. CX.

*Certaine speciall Principles in Foales and
in Horses.*

THe Foals whose legs be long, wil ever be tall, for of all beasts their legges in length ever grow the least, and by the bignesse of your legs you shall guesse the strength and greatnesse of their bodies.

Let your Colts, if you can possible, never be housed till they be past three years old.

The *Greek* horse (which we call the *Turkey* horse) is a most excellent horse, swift, bold, wel headed, tall, and strong, many of them be White, some Bay, some Sorrell, and some black.

Arabian horse is most swift, and most beautifull.

The horse of *Affrica*, which we call the *Barbary* horse, is of good courage, swift, and nimble, & therefore both the *Turkey* horse and he must be used with all lenity and gentlenesse, and not with beating.

The *Frizeland* horse is fiery, yet the worst of any.

The *Flemish* horse is worse then the *Frizeland*.

The *spanish* Jenet is good, swift, and light,

The *Neapolitan* Courser for all uses is most excellent and beautifull.

And the *English* horse is best both for great burthen or long travaile.

Observe ever to winne your horse by patience and gentlenesse, and never be angry or madde with your horse, if hee be of great mettle; onely the dull horse must with much beating bee quickned and enflamed.

Annoynt your bit when you put it first into your horses mouth, with honey, and the powder of Lico-ras, or else with honey and salt: and at no time put any Bit or Snaffle into your horses mouth before you have washt.

Never take your horses backe before you have the bridle reines fast in your hand; and when you walke downe any Hill, by no means drive your horse loose before you.

If your horse have a long back, let him have a large saddle, and if he have a low back, let the Saddle have a high seat - and if his back be short, let the boulders stand the neerer and closer together.

If your horse be dul, you must spur him soundly, and after such spurring, rub his sides with Salt.

CHAP. CXI.

Certaine generall observations concerning Mares.

IN length and height, a Mare groweth till she be five years old, and a horse till he be six.

When a Mare is past two yeares old she may be covered, but the best time is after four year old.

Common Mares may bring Foales every year, but let your best Mares bring but every second yeare, especially if they bring horse Colts.

After covering by no meanes travaile your Mares.

To get horse Colts, cover before the full of the Moone, and when the signe is a Female: and to get Mare colts cover after the ful, and in the Male signe: for note it, there be twelve signes, sixe Male, and sixe Female.

To

To make a Mare stand to her horlings, set her by the horse two or three dayes, that hee may much desire and bee acquainted before hee cover her: After bring them out, and let him serve her, and have ready a payle of water, which when the horse shrinketh from her, powre upon the ridge of the Mares backe: then set them so farre assunder as that the one may not heare the other: Do this three mornings, and abree evenings together, that let her not come neere the horse after, till shee be knit, least the desire of him againe, make her to shoot out that which she kept before.

To know whether your Mare be with Foale about Christmas or no, powre a little Water into her eare, and if shee onely shake her head, shee is then with Foale, but if she shake both head and body also, she is not with Foale.

When you wean your Foales, take them from the Mares foure dayes before the full of the Moone, and after the Foales have so remained foure and twenty houres, let them againe sucke till they waxe very full: then remove them for altogether, and the next morning give every one three slips of Savin, and so after let them have till they be three years old, all plenty of meate abroad rather, then in the stable.

Let your Stallion for Trotters be either *Neapolitan* Courser, or *Arabian*, *Turke*, or *Barbery*, and for amblers, either the *spanish* Jenet, or the *Irish* hobby.

Put your Mares to the Horse, from middle *March* till middle *May*, or middle *June*, the Moone having newly changed.

It is good to put the horse and the Mare for three

or foure nights together in some vast empty house, and in the morning take the horse away, and feed him well; but feed your Mare sparingly, especially give her little water.

At the end of six months, by no means chafe your Mares: for then they are in quickning, and may easily be made to cast their Foales.

The Wal-eye either in Mare or horse, doth never see perfectly, especially when there is any snow on the ground.

A mare goeth with Foale eleven months and ten dayes.

Let your Mares be of a meane stature, large, and broad, and of good shapes; and the Stallion of like shape, but somewhat taller; and temper their natures thus: Put unto the hot horse the coole mare, and to the hot mare the coole horse: and let your grounds wherein you breede, be dry, hilly, and with running streames in it.

CHAP. CXII:

Certaine speciall notes to be observed in the buying of a horse.

- First, marke his colour and his shape, that is to say, a comely well proportioned head, with an our-looking eye, good well rayfed shoulders, and a thick large breast, broad brawne, large and broad flat legges, short pasternes, and little feete: for long pasternes shew weakenesse, and broad feete shew dulnesse: feele if hee have no Glanders betweene his chaps

chappes, no splents, curbe nor spaven, looke hee be not purficke or broken-winded : put your hand before his eyes, to know if he see well. Looke into his mouth for his age : if hee be past eight yeares old, feele all downe the strunt of his rayle with your hand, and if you feele that it be smooth, then the horse is not very old, but if it have any rough knobs towards the end, buy him not, for his good dayes are past. Let him runne at the halters end, for if hee be lame (having that liberty) hee will favour that Legge which is amisse, and leane upon it. If he turn up the white of his eye, or lay his eare to his necke when he is ridden, hee is a sullen Jade, and full of naughty qualities : if when you stirre him in the stable, he stare and looke back upon you with a stout Countenance, it is a token of a good stomacke in him, and great aptnesse to be taught : if hee stirre the end of his rayle as hee passeth out and is ridden, and yet doth not whiske it, it sheweth that his pace is unperfect : bee sure to see him turne as short as may be, that you may know whether hee be swayed in the back or no: the middle stature is the best, and the short knit horse is the strongest. The wall eye ever seeth the worst.

The horse that is of nature Gentle, Swift, Light, Nimble, of easie pace, and good colour, strong feet, good Loyns, speedy in eating, and good at his Provender, is ever the best for use, and the readiest money in the Market at all times. See if the haire in the spurring place be white, for it argueth slownesse and spur-galling.

The Horse that will paw and beate the ground

with his foote when hee is stayed from going forwards, is ever like to bee good and durable in tra-vaile.

Many other notes there are that are needesse to rehearse, which by the observing of these will easily come into your memory.

CHAP. CXIII.

*Generall notes concerning some Simples
already spoken of.*

AL L manner of Marrowes or Pithes, of what kinde soever they bee, must bee kept by themselves in a dry coole place, and preserved from all filth or uncleannesse, and from the annoyance either of wind or fire, and so they will last fully out a whole yeare.

You shall keepe no Syrrups, nor sweete Electuaries, nor Pilles, nor powders, nor conserves of Flowers, nor any oyntments, Sewers, or Emplaisters, above one whole yeare, onely bitter Electuaries, or conserves of Fruites or Roots, will last fully out two yeares.

Of Oyles, some will last long, some must bee new made: Oyles extracted out of Wood or metalls, will last long.

Gather roots in Autumn, but take the small sprigs from them, and make them cleane and dry.

Dry small Rootes in the shade and Winde, and great rootes either in the Winde and Sunne, or by the fire: lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keepe long, provided that neither

Sunne

Sonne nor moysture injure to hurt them.

Gather all manner of hearbs when they doe most flourish, and dry them in the shade, except they bee very moyst and apt to putrifie; they last for the most part a whole yeare.

Gather seedes and fruites when they be fully ripe; they also last but one whole yeare.

Gather the Rinde or Barke of any simple
when the Hearb is ripe: drye
them, and they will last
many yeares.

The end of the first Booke.



[Faint handwritten text at the bottom of the page]

1941

THE SECOND BOOKE:

CONTAINING ALL CURES
Chyrurgicall, or such infirmities as
being onely outward, crave the use of
*Chirurgery, and are called in Horse-
leath-craft, Horses Sorrvances.*

Newly Imprinted, Corrected, and En-
larged with many notable Additions, and
most certaine approved Medicines,
never revealed before this
Sixt Impression.

Written by *Gervase Markham* Gent.



Imprinted at London by *John Okes*, dwel-
ling in the Well yard in little St. Bar-
tholmewes neer the Hospitall
Gate, 1643.

THE SECOND

BOOK

THE SECOND PART OF THE

STORY OF THE LIFE OF

THE GREAT MAN

WHO WAS THE FIRST

TO BE KNOWN AS

A GREAT MAN

IN THE HISTORY OF

THE WORLD

AND THE FIRST

TO BE KNOWN AS

A GREAT MAN

IN THE HISTORY OF

THE WORLD

AND THE FIRST

TO BE KNOWN AS

A GREAT MAN

IN THE HISTORY OF

THE WORLD

AND THE FIRST

TO BE KNOWN AS

A GREAT MAN

IN THE HISTORY OF

THE WORLD

AND THE FIRST

TO BE KNOWN AS

A GREAT MAN



THE SECOND BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

What proportion of measure is required in every member of a well-shapen Horse.



RASMUCH as the great substance of this Art of Chirurgery, or second part of Horse-leach-craft, applyed onely unto outward infirmities, consisteth of Incisions, Cauterizings, Corrodings, and Dismembrings, as well as of Comfortings, Incarnating, Cleansing, Conglutinating, and binding up members in their true forme, and that all joyntly together, goe but about to make a true and well-formed Body: I thinke it meetest that I beginne with the true proportion and measure which is required in every member of a well shaped horse, that the carefull Farrier thereby understanding how, and in what fashion every Lineament should be placed, or what portion and quantity they doe continue, hee may at no time through ignorance
either

either dismember or disgrace the same : as I have many times seen simple Farriers doe, when contrary to all Art and Rule, they have cut in sander the maine cords, sinews, and tendants, by which a horses limbs are governed.

To begin then, you shall understand that according to the description of the most ancient and worthy Farriers : there are in a horses Palate of his mouth twelve bars or degrees like steps, one above another, standing (when his mouth is turned upward) like a paire of staires : his tongue would bee halfe a foote long, his upper lip fixe inches, and his neither lip five inches long, each of his Jawes would bee ten inches long, his head from his eyes downe-ward ful twelve inches long, his eares five inches long, the circuit or compasse of his eye, foue inches about, his necke from the nape of his head unto the withers would be seven handfulls, from the withers to the fillers twelve handfulls, and from the fillers to the setting on of the tayle sixe handfulls : The length of the shoulder would bee twelve inches, and the length of his shanke sixe inches, the length of his hinder hoofe would bee twelve inches, and his cambrell five inches, and the length of the whole body from the head to the taile would be an hundred inches. Now as horses are bigger or lesser, so these measures either exceede, or are lesse, neither doe I confidently build upon these inch quantities of the auncient Farriers, becaule I having my selfe measured many horses, I never yet could finde any certaintie in the proportions : onely this is the most certaine rule that ever I could finde, that looke what quantity

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

11.

12.

13.

14.

15.

16.

17.

18.

19.

20.

21.

22.

23.

24.

25.

26.

27.

28.

29.

30.

31.

32.

33.

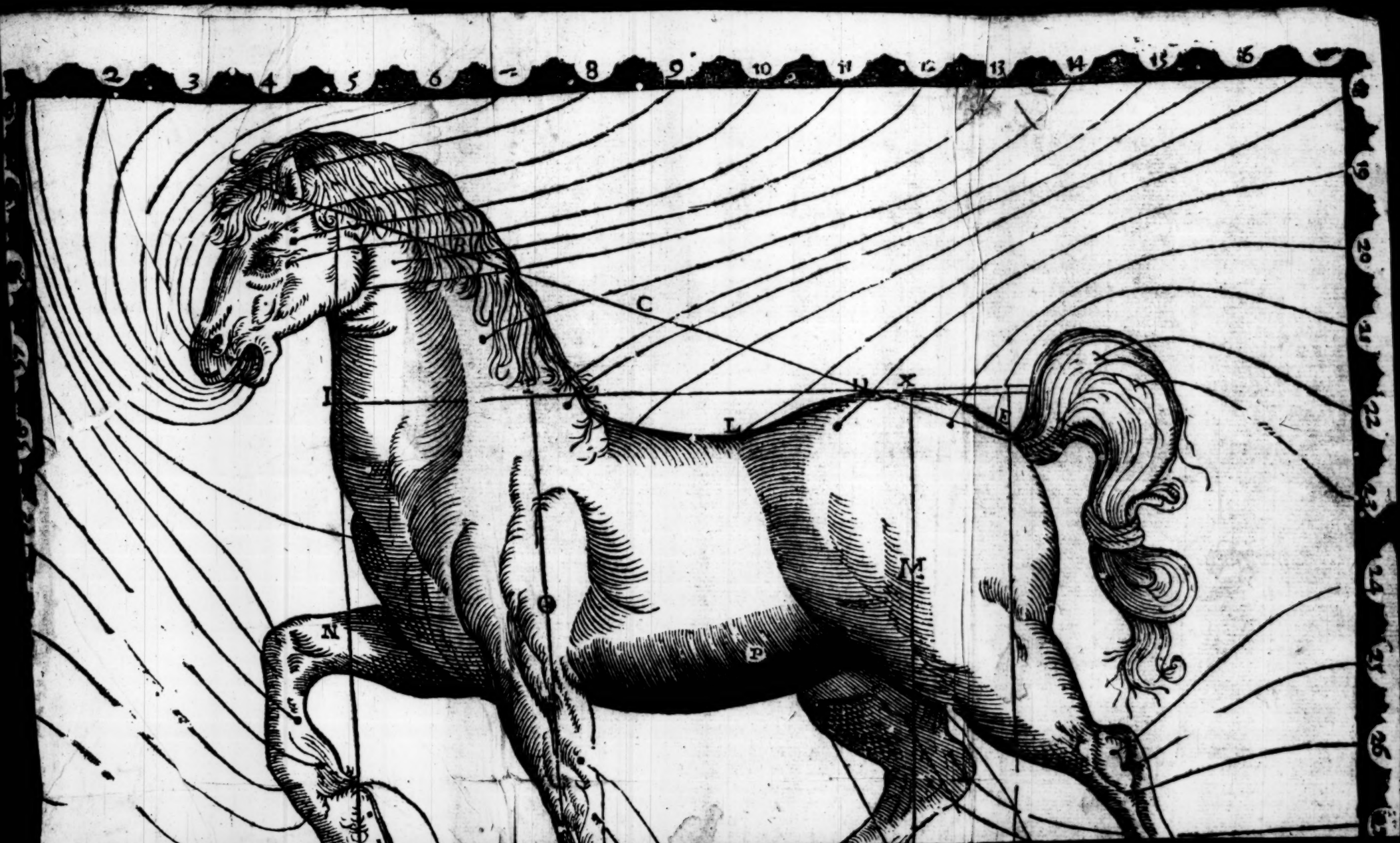
34.

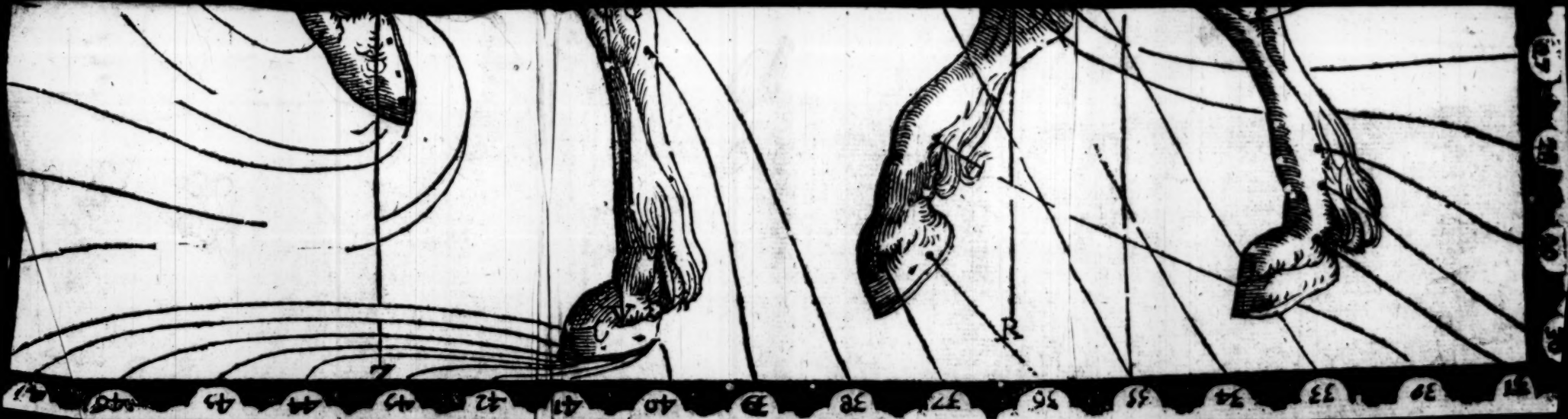
35.

36.

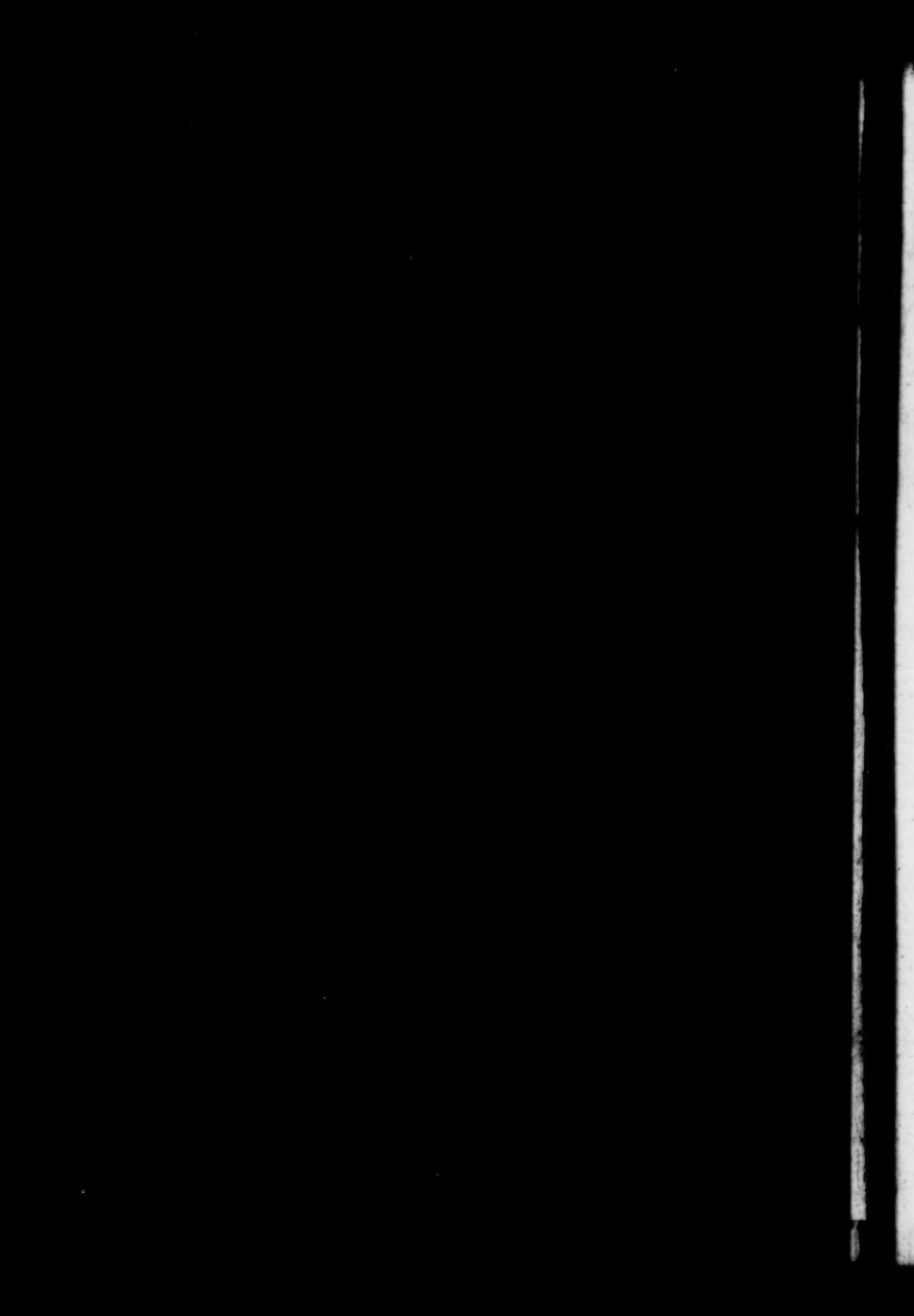
37.

38.





31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41



is betweene the Nape of the Horses necke, and the uttermost part of the Withers, there must ever bee twice so much betweene the Withers and the setting on of the tayle: and looke what quantity is betweene the top of the shoullder-blade, or top of the Withers to the elbow of the horse, it must bee twice so much from the elbow to the setting on of the Hoofe: And looke how much it is from the top of the Hippe to the stifling place, it must be twice so much from the stifling place to the setting on of the hinder hoofe: And this is the certaineft rule that ever I could finde for a horses trueft proportion. And therefore for your better satisfaction, behold this picture that is now heere placed, which is the Anatomy of a most perfect horse, with lines drawne from every member, directing and shewing all the outward diseases or Sores belonging to a Horses body.

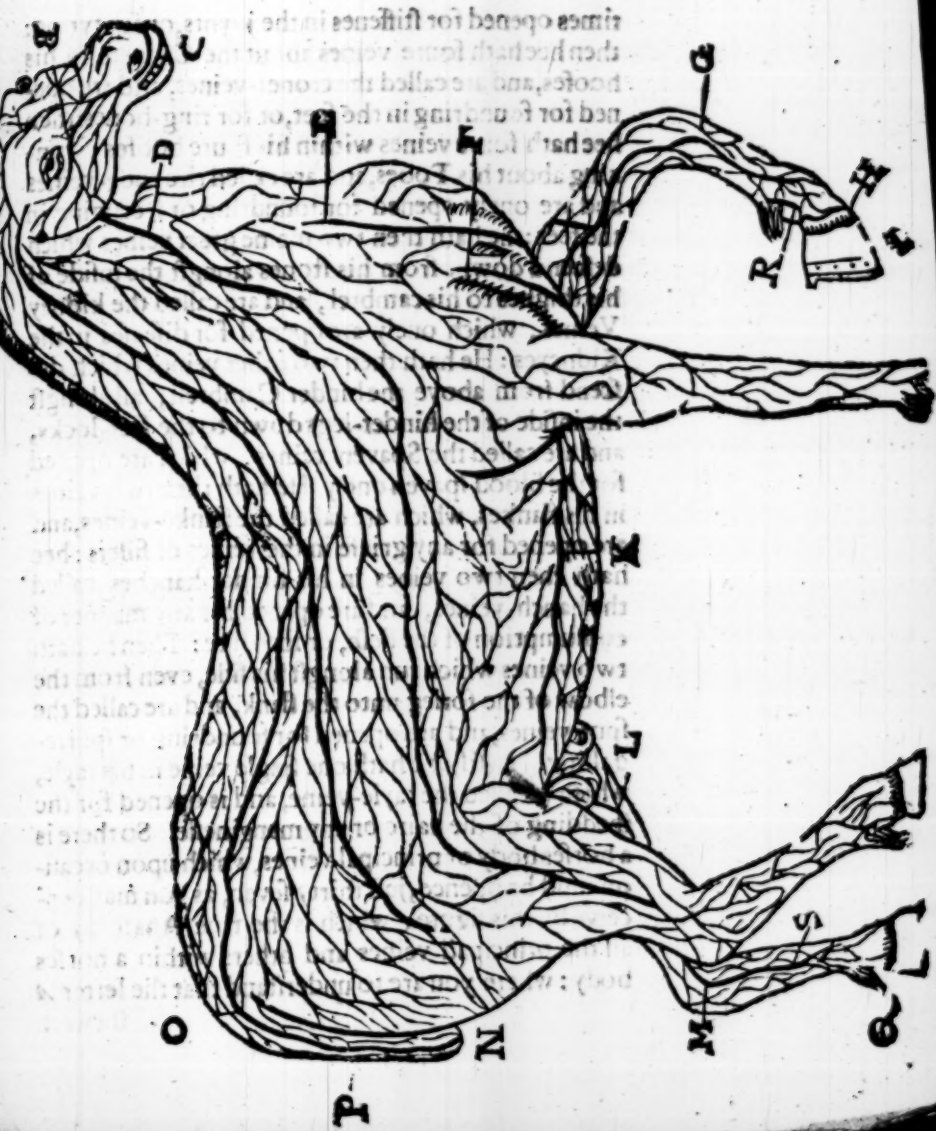
CHAP. II.


Of the veines belonging to a Horse, and how many there be;

IT is most necessary that every good carefull Farrier know all the principall veines in a horses body, especially those which in the time of need, or in sicknesse are to be opened: And therefore to beginne you shall know that from the Liver, which is the Fountaine of blood, both in Man and Beast, doth arise one maine grear conduit or large veine, which ascending into the body, doth divide it selfe into thus many severall branches or lesser Rivers. First within

within the palate of the mouth, above the first and third barres, are two notable veines which the best Farriers doe touch and strike when the horse hath any disease in his head, braine, or stomacke. He hath also other two which descend downe from the lower parts of his eyes unto his nostrils, and are ever opened for any griefe in the eyes. Hee hath two others which are above his eyes, and runne crosse the Temple of his head, and are called the Temple veines, which are likewise opened for all manner of cold diseases in the head; hee hath also two great maine veines running alongst each side of his windepipe, even from the upper most joyns of his neather chapp downe to the breast, which are called the necke veines, and are those which are ordinarily opened for any disease whatsoever. He hath then two veines which arise upwards from betweene his fore legs to the top of his breast, and are called the breast-veines, and they are opened when the horse hath any Fever, or is sick at the heart. He hath other two which likewise ascend from betweene the fore-legs, but do not mount so high as the breast-veines, but rest upon the formost bough of the fore-legge; and they be called the Plat-veines, and they be opened either for soundring, or other griefe in the Limbes. He hath other two veines which run downe from the elbow of the fore-shoulder, downe all along the inside of the fore-legg, and are called the shanke-veines, which are opened for splenis, mallanders, or such like. He hath then foure veines which runne alongst the fetlockes of the horse, and are called the shackle-veines, which albe it they are but small, yet they are many times







times opened for stiffness in the joynts, or for tying: then hee hath foure veines about the Croners in his hooves, and are called the cronet-veines, and are opened for foundring in the feet, or for ring-bones: then hee hath foure veines within his foure hooves, running about his Toes, and are called the tooe-veines and are onely opened for foundring or frettizing in the feet: he hath then two maine great veines which descend downe from his stoncs alongst the inside of his thighs to his cambrel, and are called the kidney Veines, which onely are opened for diseases in the Kidneyes: He hath then two other veines which descend from above the hinder Cambrell, all alongst the inside of the hinder-legs down to the feet-locks, and are called the Spaven-veines, which are opened for the blood spaven onely: He hath then two veines in his flanks, which are called the flanke-veines, and are opened for any grieve in the reines or fillers: hee hath then two veines in his hinder hanches called the hanch-veines, and are opened for any manner of consumption of the flesh, or such like: Then he hath two veines which run alongst his side, even from the elbow of the foreleg unto the flank, and are called the spur-veines, and are opened for foundring or spurregalling. Lastly, he hath one single veine in his tayle, which is called the tayle-veine, and is opened for the shedding of the haire or any manginelle. So there is a horses body of principall veines, which upon occasion must be opened, just thirty seven, as you may perceive by this figure, which is the true Anatomy of all the principall veines and others within a horses body: where you are to understand that the letter A

sheweth

sheweth the Temple-veine, *B* the eye-veines, *C* the Palate-veines, *D* the Neck-veines, *E* the breast-veine, *F* the Plat-veines, *G* the Shank-veines, *H* the Cronet-veines, *I* the Hoofe-veines, *K* the Spurre-veines, *L* the Kidney-veines, *M* the Spaven-veines, *N* the Flanke-veines, *O* the Hanch-veines, *P* the Tail-veines, *Q* and *R* the Fet-locke-veines. Now for the other small thrids, or veines, which as it were, overspread the whole body, because nature will allow no part or member to be empty or voyd of blood, they be also veines, derived from the other maine great veines, yet of no efficacy or force, but such as upon any necessary incision may very well be cut asunder without any fluxe of blood, or other danger: but for the other master veines, they may not be cut but with great perill. And thus much for veines, which are the instruments of heate,

CHAP. III.

Of the sinewes in a horses body

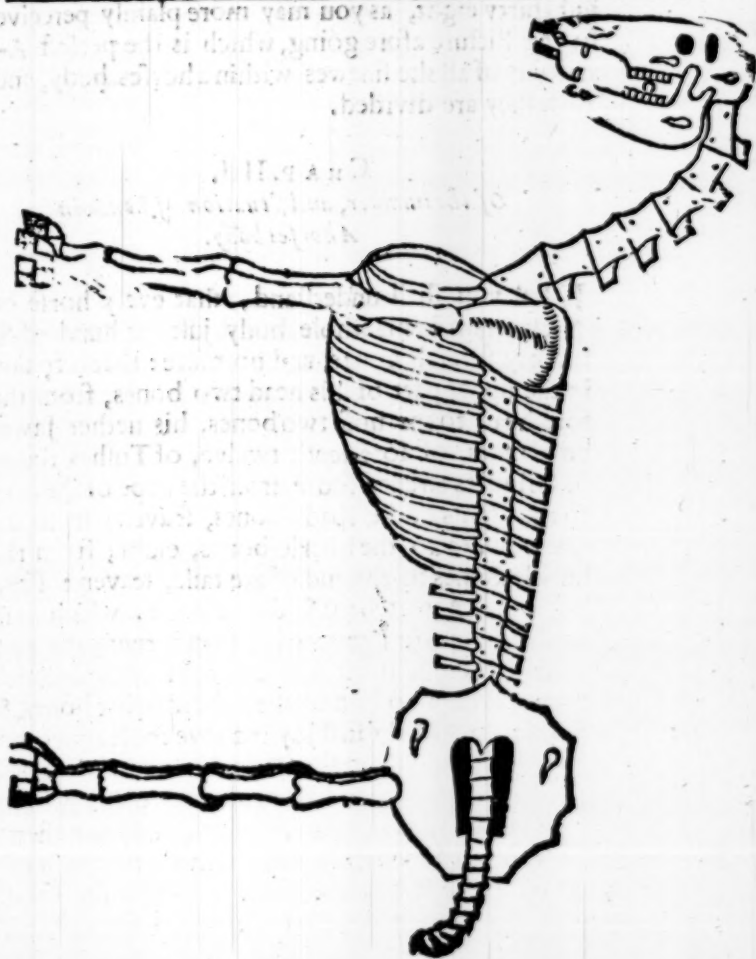
Touching the sinewes within a horses body, you shall understand that from the Braine, which is the principall Fountaine or Well-spring of sinewes whatsoever, there is derived one great maine sinew or tendant, which passing through the hollownesse of the neck and backe-bone, doth extend it selfe even to the nethermost joynt of the horses strunt: From this maine sinew is derived two smaller branches, which passing through certaine holes in the top of the horses skull, runne downe alongst the horses cheekes, even to the poynt of his nostrils: Then

R

hath

hath hee two other branches, which passing through certaine holes in his nether chap, knit that and the upper together, and so runne downe by his great teeth; and meete just below his nether lippe: then hath hee twenty eight small thrids, which running through so many small holes in the seaven bones of his necke, knit them fast together: So likewise hath Knit all his Chine even to the very nether end of his Strunt fast together: The number whereof is infinite and uncertaine: Then hath hee two maine great sinewes which extending themselves over both the spade bones, are divided into many branches, & runne downe into the fore-legges, even into the Coffins of the hooves, and knit every joynt fast and substantially together: then hath he two other main sinewes which comming through two holes to the great columell or flat bones of the hippes or huckle, doe extend themselves (being divided into many Branches) downe both the hinder legs, even within the Coffins of the hoofs also, and bind all these severall joints fast and strongly together. Now lastly, you shal understand that from the setting on of the horses necke, unto the flat columel or huckle-bone, doth extend one great broad sinew of three inches broad, being of one only thick and smooth substance, without any one thrid or branch derived from it, which not onely holdeth together the shoulder blades, but also covereth all the horses chin quite over, and this of the common *Farriers* is called Pax-waxe: So that a horse hath in all of maine and principall sinewes, from whence a world of other sinewes are derived,

just

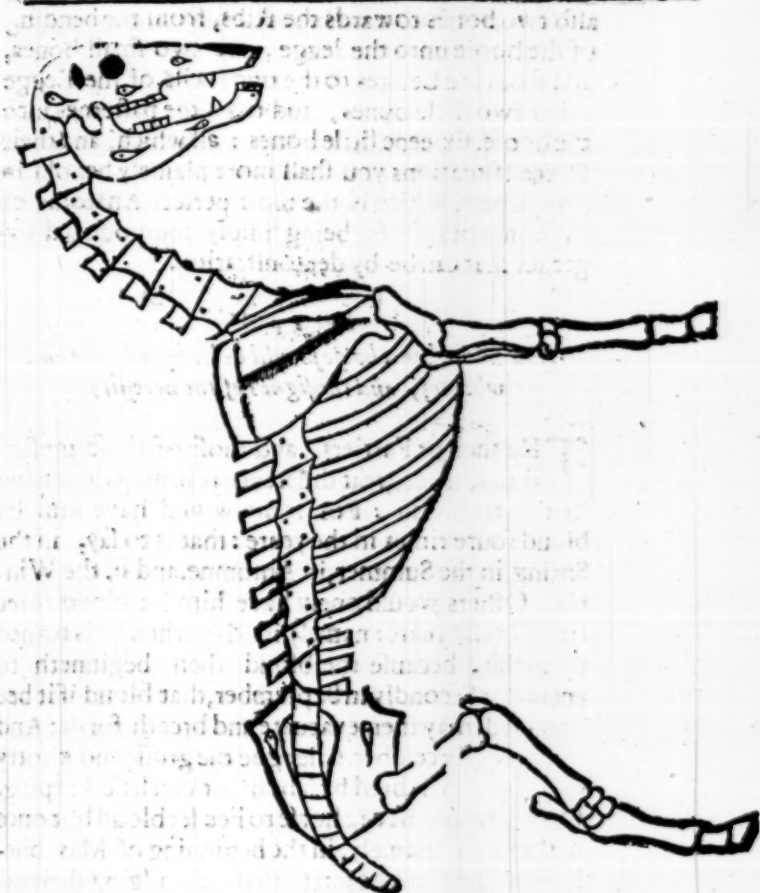


just thirty eight, as you may more plainly perceive by the Picture afore going, which is the perfect Anatomy of all the sinewes within a horses body, and how they are divided.

C H A P. IIII.

*Of the number, and situation of Bones in
A horses body.*

First you shall understand, that every horse or Ox hath in his whole body, just one hundred & seventy severall bones, and no more: that is to say, in the upper part of his head two bones, from the fore-head to the nose two bones, his nether Jawes two bones, of fore-teeth twelve, of Tusshes foure, of Grinders twenty foure, from the nape of the neck to the points of the spade-bones, seaven; from the spade-bones to the huckle-bones, eight; from the huckle-bones to the end of the taile, seaven: Then is there the great broad hinder bone. which hath twelve seames or joynts in it; then is there the two spade-bones, & from thence to the forcels or canel-bones, other two bones called the marrow bones, & from thence to the first joynt above the legges other two bones, and from thence to the knees, two called the thigh-bones, and from thence to the pasterns other two called the shanke-bones, and from thence downe-ward into the hooves be in al 16 little bones. Then there is a great bone in the horses breast, whereunto are fastned 36 Ribbes great and small, and to the costumell behind be two bones, and from the molairs to the joynts other two bones; and also



R 3

also two bones towards the Ribs, from the bending of the hoofe unto the legge, are two small bones, and from the Legges to the two fociis of the Legge other two little bones, and from the pasternes into the hoofe, sixteene little bones: all which, and their severall situations you shall more plainly behold in this picture, which is the most perfect Anatomy of the bones of a horse, being simply compounded together that can be by demonstration.

CHAP. V.

How and when a horse should be let blood, the end whereof, and the signes of the necessity.

THe ancient Farriers, and those of these present times, are at great difference touching the letting of a horse blood: For some would have him let blood foure times in the yeare: that is to say, in the Spring, in the Summer, in Autumne, and in the Winter. Others would onely have him let blood three times in the yeare: namely in May when he is turned to grasse, because the blood then beginneth to encrease: Secondly in September, that blood if it bee inflamed, may then evacuate and breath forth: And thirdly in December, to let goe the grosse and knotty blood which is bred by labour or carelesse keeping. Others would have a horse to bee let blood but once in the yeare: namely, in the beginning of May onely, when hee is to be put to grasse, alleadging this reason, that if the horse bee not let blood in the Spring, the new blood being mixt with the old corrupt blood, will be apt to be inflamed, and so draw upon
the

the horse some grievous sickness, & this reason is excellent good. Others would have the horse to be let blood in the veine not above once in a year; namely, at the beginning of *May*: but in the palate of the mouth they would have him let blood at least once every moneth, alledging that it will cleare the sight, comfort the braine, and give him good appetite to his meate, but to conclude, there is not any of these opinions but are sound and good, so the horse bee yong and in strength, his blood increasing; but if hee bee old, and his blood in the ebbe, then you cannot let blood too seldome. Now that it is fit a yong horse should bee let blood, is proved by the daily experience of the *Palsander* horses, who being at liberty (out of naturall instinct in themselves) saile not once a yeare to let themselves blood; yet wee have divers of our best Farriers who would not have a horse let blood before there bee urgent necessity, lest the use of letting blood bring a horse to an evill custome, and draw on sickness unexpected; but with that opinion I cannot agree, because I hold it more vertue to prevent a danger before it come, then to drive it away being present. Now that oft letting of blood breedeth in a horse weaknesse, and maketh the blood to resort to the inward parts, cloying the heart and intrailles, and making the outward parts fat and unwelody, there is no question but that the letting a horse blood twice in the yeare; namely, at the beginning of *May*, and the end of *December*, (at which times onely I would have a horse let blood and no other) should be accounted oft, I see no reason. Now for Stallions, the ancient Farriers would

by no meanes have them let blood, because say they, the covering of Mares is as great an expence of blood as may bee, affirming that one ounce of seede doth countervaille five ounces of blood, and truely I am of that opinion too : but whereas they likewise advise by no meanes to let Geldings blood, because the losse of their stones is the losse of their naturall heate : to that I am much contrary, because I have found it by continuall experience, that Geldings doe as oft dye through the corruption and abundance of blood as horses : nay, and much more often, in as much as they want the helps which horses have for purging their bloods from uncleanness. Now in the letting of horses blood, every carefull Farrier is first to respect the Climate under which the horse is bred, knowing that those horses which are bred in cold Countries, have ever more blood then those which are bred in the hot : then he must consider the time of the yeare, which would ever bee the Spring, or the fall of the Leafe, both these times being most temperate, neither exceeding in heate nor in cold. Next hee must regard the time of the day, which would ever be in the morning fasting, so it be not at the horses awaking from sleepe, but at least an houre or two after : then he must looke unto the state of the Moone, that the signe be not in that part of the body where he intendeth to let blood, next he must looke to the horses age, for if hee be yong, and not come to his growth, it will hinder his waxing; and if he be old and come to decrepidnesse, his blood had more neede be repaired then wasted. Lastly, he shall look to the horses strength and ancient custome, and so
accor-

accordingly he shall deale with him, observing that some horses may better spare two or three pound of blood, then other some one pound. Now thus much I have spoken touching ordinary and naturall letting of blood, without compulsion of any sicknesse or disease; but in case where sicknesse or infirmity craveth this office of letting blood, there you shall neither respect Climate, season of the year, time of the day, signe, age, strength, nor custome, but setting all aside, apply your selfe onely to the removing of the infirmity. Now the signes to know if a horse stand in neede to be let blood are these: His eyes will looke red, and his veines will swell more then ordinary: also he will have a certaine itch about his Main and his Taile, and still be continually rubbing them; and sometimes will shed some of his haire also: hee will now and then pill about the roores of his eares, or in those places where the head-stal of the bridle lyes: his urine will be red and high coloured, and his dung will be black and hard: also if hee hath red inflammations, or little bubbles on his backe, or doth not digest his meate well, it is a signe the horse would be let blood: or if hee have any apparant signe of yellownesse in the whites of his eyes, or in the inside of his Lippes, either upper or nether, it is a signe he would be let blood: for after any of these signes doth most commonly follow some one or other grievous sicknesse, which to prevent is the true art of a skilfull Farrier. Now it is meete that when you intend to let a horse blood (having leasure to doe the same) that you suffer him to be thinly dyetted a day or two before hee be let blood, to the end
that.

that his body may bee quiet, and not troubled with digestion. Now for the manner of letting a horse bloud, you shall as neere as you can, let him stand upon even ground, & if it be the necke-veine which you would strike, you shall take a small long cord with a noose, and putting over to the horses necke, as close to the setting on of the shoulder as you can, there draw it as straight as is possible, and then fasten it with a running knot, and presently you shall see the veines to appeare as bigge as a mans little finger, even from the nether chap downe to the necke. Now you are to observe that the place where you are to strike the veine in, is even with three fingers or foure fingers at the most of the nether chap: as thus; if your horse have a long, fine, thin necke and skinne, then you may strike the veine within three fingers, or lesse of the chap) sith the higher is ever the better) but if he have a short chub necke, with a thick skin, and many wreathes or rooles, about the setting on of his chaps, then you shall strike the veine at least foure fingers from the chap, least those wreaths together with the thicknesse of the skin, do so defend the veine that your Fleime cannot reach it. When you have thus raised the veine up, you shall cause one to stand on the contrary side of the horse, and with his fist to thrust the veine forth hard against you: then you shall either with a wet sponge, or with a little spittle, wet the part of the veine which you meane to strike, and then separating the haire, set your Fleime even and directly upon the veine, and then with a good smart blow strike it into the veine: Which done, you shall cause one to put his finger

finger into the horses mouth, and rickling him in the rooff thereof, make him chaw and moove his chappes, for that will force the blood to spin forth. Now the blood which you rake from the horse, it is very necessary that you save in divers vessells, for divers causes: as first, that you may see when a'l the corrupt blood is come forth, and that when the colour thereof is growne pure, and so remaineth being cold; that then you suffer the horse to bleed no more: or else that you save it to bathe the horses body therewith, which is most wholsome: or else to make a medicine therewithall by mingling with the blood vinegar and oyle, and so bathe the horses body therewith, especially that place which was let blood: For the ancient Farriers hold an opinion, that it is endued with a certaine naturall vertue and power to comfort the weake and feeble members of a horse, and to dry up all evill humours. Now as soone as your horse hath bled sufficiently, you shall let loose the cord, and immediatly the veine will stoppe: then with that cord you shall stroake downe the Veine just over the Orifice twice or thrice, which will both close up the hole, and also turne the course of the blood: this done, set the horse up in the stable, and let him stand fasting two or three houres after, and then after dyet him according as in your discretion you shall thinke meete, that is to say, if he be a sicke horse, then like a sick horse with good provender and warme mashes: but if he be a sound horse, then like a sound horse, either turn him to grasse, or keepe him in the stable after his ancient custome.

Now

Now if you would let your horse blood either in the Temple-veines or the Eye-veines, you shall then cord him hard about the midst of the necke, and not neere his shoulders, having care that you touch not his wind-pipe, and so throttle him : for it will make both these veines shew most apparantly. If you intend to let the horse blood in the breast-veines, or Plat-veines, of some called the fore-thigh veines, you shall then cord him behind the shoulders, close to the elbowes of the horse, and over-thwart his withers, and that will make these two veines shew. Now you shall understand, that not any of these veines last spoken of, as about the head or the breast, must be let blood by striking them with a Fleime; (though it be the manner of our common Smithes) for it is most beastly and butcherly, and also full of much danger by striking through the veine, (if he be not skilfull :) but you shall with a fine sharpe Lancer open the veine, even in such sort as you see a skilfull Chirurgion open the veine in a mans arme. Now for the letting a horse blood in the palate of the mouth, you shall but only with a sharpe pointed knife, prick the horse betweene the second and third bar, as deep as a Barley-corne is long, and hee will bleed sufficiently : as for all other veines in a horses body whatsoever, which are to bee opened, you shall understand, that whensoever it is needfull that they bleed, that then they must bee taken up, and not corded at all. Now touching the taking up of veines, and the manner how to doe it, you shall read more at large in particular Chapters towards the end of this booke.

CHAP. VI.

Of outward Sorrancess what they are, and of certaine generall observations in the cure of them.

Outward Sorrancess, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of wayes, that is to say, either it is an evill state and composition of the body, which is to be discerned either by the shape, number, quantity, or sight of the member evill affected and diseased: or else it is the loosening and division of any unity, which as it may chance diversly, so it hath divers names accordingly. For if such a division or loosening be in the bone, then it is called a Fracture: If it bee in any fleshy part, then it is called a wound, or an ulcer: If it be in the veines, then a rupture: if in the sinewes, then a convulsion or crampe; and if it be in the skinne, then it is called an Excoriation: and of all these severally I intend to intreate in the following Chapters. Now forasmuch as in this generall art of *Chirurgery*, or *Sorrancess*, there are certaine generall observations or caveats to be held inviolate, I will before I proceede any further, give you a little taste thereof.

First, you shall therefore understand, that it is the duty of every good *Farrier*, never to burne or cauterize with hot *Iron*, or with oyle, nor to make any incision with knife, where there be either veines, Sinewes, or joynts, but either somewhat lower, or somewhat higher.

Item, You shall never apply to any joynt or Sinewe part, either *Resalgar*, *arsenicke*, *Mercury*, sublimated,

mate, nor any such violent Corrasive.

Item, It is ever better to launce with a hot Iron then a cold, that is, it is better to cauterize then to incise.

Item, Bloud doth ever produce white and thicke matter, Choler a warrish thin matter, but not much, salt Flegme great abundance of matter; and Melancholy many dry scabs.

Item, When you let bloud, you must take but the fourth part from a Colt, which you take from a growne horse.

Item, You must never let bloud, except it be either to divert sicknesse, and preserve health, or to refresh and coole the bloud, or else to diminish bloud or to purge bad humours.

Item, In all Impostumes or swelling Sores, called Tumors, you must observe the foure times of the sicknesse, that is to say, the beginning of the grieve, the increase of the grieve, the perfection and state of the grieve; and lastly the declination and ending of the grieve.

Item, In the beginning of every such swelling Apostumes (if you cannot quite destroy them) use repulsive medicines, if they be not neere some principall part of the body; but then not, for feare of indangering life; and in augmentation, use mollifying medicines, & supplying to ripe them; and when they are ripe launce them, and let them our, or dry them up, and in the declination of them, use cleansing and healing medicines.

Item, All swellings are either hard or soft, the hard commonly will corrode, the soft will continue long.

Item,

Item, If you thrust your finger upon any swelling upon a horses legges,, then if it presently rise againe, and fill, then is the hurt new and recoverable, but if the dent doe remaine and continue still behind, then it is hurt old, and commeth of cold humours, and askes great art in healing.

Item, When sores begin to matter, then they heale, but if the putrification be gear, then beware they rot not inwardly.

Item, All cauterizing or burning with hot Irons, strayneth things enlarged, dryeth up what is too much moystned, dissolveth things gathered together or hardned, draweth backe things which are dispersed, and helpeth old griefes: for it ripeneth, dissolveth, and maketh them to run and issue forth matter.

Item, You must sometimes burne under the soare, to divert humours, and sometimes above, to defend and with-hold humours.

Item, It is ever better to burne with Copper then with Iron, because iron is of a malignant nature, Steele is of an indifferent vertue betwixt both.

Item, All actuall burnings is to burne with instrument, and potentiall burning is to burne with medicines, as are Causticks and Corrasives.

Item, If you use to blow powders into a horses eyes, it will make him blind.

Item, By no meanes take up any veines in the fore-leggs, unlesse great extremity compell you: for there is nothing that will sooner make a horse stiffe and lame. Many other observations there are, which because they are not so generall as these bee, and that I shall

shall have occasion to speake of them in other particular Chapters, I thinke it here meet to omit them, and the rather because I will not be tedious

CHAP. VII,

Of the diseases in the eyes, and first of the weeping and watering eye.

THe eyes of a horse are subject to many infirmities, as first to the Rhumatick, or watry, then to be bloud-shoten, to be dimme of sight, to have the pin and webbe, the haw, the wart in the eye, the inflammation of the eyes, the canker in the eye, or a stroake in the eye : of all which, some come of inward causes, as of humours resorting to the eyes: and some of outward causes, as Heate, Cold, or else by some stripe or blow.

And first to begin with the Rhumaticke, or watry eye, you shall understand that according to the opinion of the ancient *Farrers*, it doth proceed many times from the fluxe of humours distilling from the Braine, and sometimes from the anguish of some blow or stripe received. The signes are, a continuall watring of the eye, and a close holding of the liddes together, accompanied sometimes with a little swelling. The cure, according to the opinion of some *Farrers* is to take of *Bolearmonicke*, of *Serra-sigillata*, and of *Sanguis draconis*, of each a like quantity, make them into powder, and then adde unto them as much of the white of an Egge and Vinegar. as will make them moist: and then spread it a plaister-wise upon a cloath. and lay it to the

the

the horses temples of his head above his Eyes : and doe this three dayes together. Others use to let the horse bloud in the Veines under his Eyes : then to wash the eye twice or thrice in the day with White wine, and then to blow into the sore eye with a quill, the powder of *Turkey*, *Salgemma*, and Curtel bone, of each like quantity : or else take the yolk of an Egge roasted hard, and mixe therewith the powder of Comen, and binde it on to the Eye and so let it rest a night more. Other Farriers use to take of Pitch and Rozen, and of Maffick a like quantity, melt them together : Then with a little stick, having a Clout bound to the end thereof, and dip therein, annoynt the Temple veins on both sides a handfull above the eyes, as broad as a twelve pence, and then clap unto it immediately a few flocks of like colour to the horse, holding them close to his head with your hand, until they stick fast to his head, then let him bloud on both his Eye-veines, if both eyes be sore, and then wash his eyes with white Wine.

Others use only to take a pretty quantity of life honny, and to dissolve it in white Wine, and to wash the horses eyes therewith : and sure if it proceede from any blow, it is a medicine sufficient enough, but if it proceed from any Rhume, or inward causes : Then you shall take ground Ivy beaten in a mortar, and mixt with Waxe, and so laid to the eyes like a plaister, or else boyle worm-wood in white Wine, and wash the horses eyes therewith : also to spurt beer or Ale now and then into the horses eyes, will clear the sight passing well.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the blond-shotten eye, proceeding from any
cause whatsoever.

FOR any blond-shotten eye, proceeding from any cause whatsoever, either outward or inward, you shall take (according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) of Rose water, of Malmsey, & of fennel water, of each three spoonefulls, of Tully as much as you can easily take up betweene your thumbe and your finger, of Cloves a dozen beaten into fine powder, mingle them well together, and being lukewarme, or cold, if you please, wash the inward parts of the eye with a feather dip therein twice a day untill the eye be well: or in stead thereof to wash the eye either with the white of an egge, or with the juyce of *Selladine*. Others use to take the topps of Hawthorns and boyling them in white wine, wash the eye therewith. Other *Farriers* take a dram of *Synoper*, and as much life Honey, and as much of Wheat flower, mixe them with fair running water, so that they may be liquid and thin: then feeth them with a very soft fire till they be thick like an oyntment, and therewith annoint the eye.

But the best receipt that ever I found for this grief, is to take the whites of two egges, and beate it till it come to an oyle, then put to it two spoonfull of rose water, and three spoonfulls of the juyce of Houslick, mixe them wel together, then dip therein little round plegants or flat cakes of soft Tow, as bigge as a horses eye, and lay them upon the horses eye, renuing them

them as oft as they grow hard, and in a day or two it will make the horses eye sound againe.

CHAP. IX.

Of dimnesse of sight, or blindnesse.

Dimnesse of sight or blindnesse, may happen to a horse divers wayes, as by some straine when the inward strings of the Eyes are stretched beyond their powers, or by the violence of great labour, or by the supporting of a great burthen beyond the horses ability, or by some blow or wound: any of these are mortall enemies to the eyes or sight. The signe is the apparant want of sight, and an eyill affected colour of the eye. Now for the cure, it is thus:

If the sight be gone, and yet the ball of the eye bee sound, then you shall take, according to the opinion of some Farriers, a pretty quantity of May Butter; with as much Rose-mary, and a little yellow Rozen, with a like quantity of *Selladine*, then stamp them and fry them with the May butter, then strain it and keepe it in a close boxe (for it is a jewell for sore eyes) and annoynt your Horses Eyes therewith at least twice a day; it is also good to heale any wound. Other Farriers doe use to let the Horse blood in the Eye veins, and then wash his eyes with red Rose water. Others use to take the Gall of a blacke sheepe and beate it, and strayne it, and then to wash the eyes therewith: others use to burn the horse under the eye that the ill humours may distill forth, and then to annoynt his eyes either with the marrow of a sheepes shanke, and Rose water mixt together, or else with

the juyce of ground Ivy. Other Farriers use to take a Mould warpe, and lapping her all over in Clay, burne her to ashes, and then to take of that powder and blow it into the horses eyes. Others use to take an empty egge shell, and filly with Bay salt, then burne it till it be blacke: Then adde to it of burnt Allome the quantity of your thumb, beat them together to fine powder, then mixe some of this powder with fresh butter, and wipe it into the horses eye with a feather; then chap the white of an egge dipt in flaxe, over his eyes, do this once a day for a seven night, and after burne once in two dayes: This is most excellent for any film, and also for a pearl. Others use to take two dry file stones, and rub them together, and blow the powder of it with a quill into the horses eyes four dayes together.

*A most rare approved medicine for any desperate blinde-
ness in a horse, proceeding from any Rheumatick
cause, surfeit, straine, stroke, or
such like.*

TAKE of Vermillion, Bastony, and Lavender, and beat them in a mortar with the best Venice Turpentine, till they come to a thicke salve like paste: then make into Cakes or Troches, each as broad, as a Groate, and dry them: then lay one or two of them upon a Chaffing-dish and coals: And then covering them with a Tunnell, let your horse receive the smoake up into his nostrills, and this do Morning and Evening: and every time you thus Fume him

him, you shall also wash his eyes inwardly, either with the water of Eye-bright simply, or with the water of Eye-bright, and the iuyce of ground Ivy mixt together. Now I have known many which doe mistake this ground Ivy, and suppose that the Ivy which is common, and runnes along on the ground to be ground Ivy, but it is not so: for ground Ivy is a weede which commonly growes in bottomes of hedges, by the Dikes side, in good big tufts, it hath a little round rough leafe, and is jagged on the edges, and of all simples none is more soveraign for the eyes.

CHAP. XI.

*Another most excellent and approved receipt
for any desperate blindness in a Horse
or any beast whatsoever.*

TAKE the shels of halfe a dozen egges, and cleanse away the inner felme from them so cleane as may be, then lay those shels betweene two cleane Tyles, and so lay them in hot glowing Embers and cover them all over, and on every side, and so let them lye a good space till the shels be all dried, then take them up and beat the shels to very fine powder, then searce it through a lanne to fine dust, then with a Goose quill blow this powder into the Horses eye, that is offended with Pin, Web, Filme, or any thickenesse or foulness and it is a certain cure, and thus do morning, noone, and night.

But if it bee for any watered or inflamed eye, for any bruise, Stripe, Lunaticke, or descending hu-

mours, then take a spoonfull and a halfe of fine searft powder of white Sugar-candy, and mixe it with the former powder of shels: then with as much May butter, (if you can get it) or for want thereof the best sweet butter without salt, work all into a gentle salve, and therewith anoint the horses eye, morning, noon, and night, for it cleanseth, purgeth, comforteth, and copleth.

CHAP. XII.

*Of the Pearle, Pinne, Webbe, or any spowine
a horses eye.*

THe Pearle, the Pinne, the Webbe, or any unnatural spot, or thicke filme over a horses Eye, proceedeth, for the most part, from some stroke received: Yet the Pearle, which is a little round, thicke, white spot like a Pearle, growing on the sight of the Horses eye, comes many times from naturall causes, and even from descent of Syre and Damme, as I have often found by experienc. The signe is, the apparant sight of the infirmity, and the cure, according to the opinion of the most ancient Physicians, is to take sixe leaves of ground-ivy, and a branch of Selladine, and bray them in a Mortar, with a spoonfull or two of Womans milke, and then straine it through a cleane linnen cloath, and put it into a close glasse, and when drop of it as much into the horses eye at a time, as will fill halfe a halfe-nutshell, and it is the fittest to be done at night onely: doe this thrice at the least, and for sixteen dayes after keepe the horse as much as may bee from any light.

Other

Other Farriers use to annoynd the horses eyes with the marrow of Goates shankes; or Deeres shankes; and Rose-water mixt together; or else to wash his Eyes with the juyce of the Berries and Leaves of ground Ivy, or other Ivy mixt with white wine; and to blow into his eyes the powder of blacke flint, or of land Oysters: but that powder must bee made so exceeding fine, as by art in searcing can any wayes be brought to passe: And for the taking away of any filme or pearle, there is no medicine more soveraign. There be other Farriers which use to take the leane of a Gammon of Bacon, and dry it, and thereof make a powder, and blow it into the horses eye. Others use to take white Ginger made into very fine powder, and blow it into the horses eyes; yet before you do so, if the Web have continued any long time; it shall nor be amisse, first to annoint the horses eye with Capons grease. Others use to blow into the horses eye, the powder of Elder Leaves dried, or else the powder of mans dung dried: or the powder of a gray whet-stone mixt with the oile of hony, and put into the horses eye: others use to take the yolk of an Egge with Salt burnt and beaten to powder, and blow it into the horses Eye: Or else the powder of the Cutrell-bone. Others use to take either Elder leaves dried, or mans dung dried, and mixe it with the powder of the shell or bone of the Crab-fish, and blow it into the horses eye. Others take Tully beaten to powder; and with a quill blow it just upon the pearle.

Other Farriers use to take (and sure it is not inferior, but better then any medicine whatsoever)

a good quantity of white salt, and lapping it round up in a wet cloath, put it into the fire, and burne it to a red coale: then taking it forth and breaking it open, you shall finde in the middest thereof a white coare as big as a bean, or bigger: Then pick out that choare, and beat it to powder, and mix it with a little white Wine: then after it stood a while, take the thick thereof that lyeth in the bottom, and put it into the horses eye, and with the thin wash his eye, do thus once a day till the pearl be consumed.

Others use to take the juyce of Rue, and put it into the horses eye, or else to make a hole in an Egge, and put forth all that is within it, and fill the shell with Pepper, and closing it in an earthen pot, put it into a hot burning Oven till it bee white hot, then take it forth, and beate the Pepper to powder, and blow thereof into the horses eye. Others use to take of Pumistone, of Tartarum, and *Salgemma* of each like weight, and being beaten into very fine powder, to blow a little of that into the horses eye, continuing so to do till the eye be well. Others use onely to blow the powder of *sondevoire* into the horses eye, affirming that it alone hath sufficient force and vertue to breake any Pearle or Webbe in a very short space, without any other composition: but surely I have found the powder of flint, and the powder of white Salt burnt, to bee much more stronger.

CHAP. XIII.

*A most excellent and infallible cure for any
Pinne, Webbe, Pearle, or spot in
a horses eye.*

TAKE an egge, and making a hole in the top, put out halfe the white, then fill up the empty place with Salt and Ginger finely mixt together, then roste the egge extreame hard, so as you may beate it to powder, having formerly lapt it in a wet cloath, then morning and evening, after you have washt the horses eye with the juyce of ground Ivy, or eye bright water, you shall blow of this powder thereinto, and it is a certaine remedy.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Haw in a horses eye.

THE Haw is a gristle growing betwixt the nether Eye-lidde and the eye, and it covereth sometimes, more then the one halfe of the eye. It proceedes of grosse and rough flegmy humours, which descending downe from the Head, and knitting together, doe in the end grow to a Horne or hard Gristle. The signes thereof, are a watring of the eye, and an unwilling opening of the nether lidde: besides any apparant shew of the Haw it selfe, if with your thumbe you do but put downe the nether lidde of the horses eye. The cure is, take a needle and a double threed, put it through the tippe of the horses eare, which done, put the needle likewise through the

the upper eye lid of the horse upwards, and so draw up the eye-lid, and fasten it to the eare, then with your thumbe put downe the neather lidde, and you shall plainly see the Haw: then thrust your needle through the edg of the Haw, and with the thrid draw it out, so as you may lap it upon your finger, then fasten the thrid about your little finger, to hold it constantly, and then with a very sharpe knife cut crosse the Gristle of the inside next the horses eye, and so separating the skinne and the fat from the Gristle, cut the Gristle quite out; then cutting your thrids draw them cleane out, both of the eye-lids, and out of the Haw: then wash all the horses eye either with Ale, Beere, or White wine, and plucke away all the long haire from about the horses eyes, being sure to leave no blood within the horses eye. And in this manner of cure you must observe, that by no meanes you cut away too much of the wash or fat about the Haw, or any part of the black that groweth by the end of the Haw, for that will make the horse blear-eyed. There be other Farriers which use after they have cut out the Haw, to annoynt the eye sixe days after with Sallet oyle, the marrow of Sheepes-shanks and Salt mixt together.

Others doe rake of the juyce of ground Ivy stamp in a mortar, with the juyce of Ivy berries, and mixe them either with water or white wine, and so plaister wise lay it to the horses Eye, renewing it morning and evening, and it will eate away the Haw. Others use after the Haw is cut away, to lay to the eye a plaister of Camomill and of honey beaten together, and of all which is sufficient enough. Now you
are

are to note by the way, that the horse which hath one Haw, commonly hath two, for they continually goe together,

CHAP. XV.

Of Moone-eyes, or Lunaticke-eyes.

THE Moone-eyes, or Lunaticke-eyes, are of all fore eyes the most dangerous and noysome, and doe proceede from hot humours, descending from the head, and stirred up by the extremitie of over-riding, or compelling a horse to do more then nature will give him leave: as I have seen a Heathfull and heavy horse brought to bee Moone-eyed by the folly of his rider, who would force him to stand and Trot, contrary to the vigour of his spirit: So likewise I have seen delicate mortall horses brought to be Moone-eyed, when the riders would not temper the freewill of their natures, but have given them leave to runne into all violence. Now they be called Moone-eyes, because if the Farrier doe observe them, hee shall perceive that at some times of the Moone the horse will see very prettily, and at some times of the Moone hee will see nothing at all. Now the signes hereof are, when the horses eyes are at the best, they will look yellowish and dimme: and when they are at the worst, they will look red, fiery, and angry.

The cure is to lay all over the temples of the horses head, the plaister of Pitch, Rozen, and Masticke, mentioned in the Chapter of watry eyes: then under each of his eyes with a sharpe knife make a slit

of

of an inch long about foure fingers beneath his Eyes, and at least an inch wide of the eye-veines; then with Corner loosen the skin about the breadth of a groat, and thrust therein a round piece of leather as broad as a two-pence with a hole in the midst, to keepe the hole open: and look to it once a day that the master may not be stopped, but continually run the space of tenne dayes; then take the leather out, and heale the wound with a little flaxe dipt in this salve. Take of Turpentine, of Honey, and of Waxe, of each like quantity, and boyle them together, which being a little warmed, will bee liquid to serve your purpose: and take not away the plaisters which are upon his temples untill of themselves they fall away; which being false, then with a small hot drawing iron, make a Starre in the middest of each temple-veine, where the plaisters did lye, which Star would have a hole in the midst, made with the button end of your hot drawing iron in this sort.

Now there bee other Farriers which in stead of the slits under the eye, & the pieces of leather, which is a plaine Rowel, onely doe take a small blunt hot iron, and about an inch and an halfe beneath the nether lidde, to burne some five holes all of a row, according to the compasse of the horses eye, and to burne those holes even unto the bone, and then once a day to annoynt them with fresh grease, or sweete butter.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Canker in the eye.

A Canker in the eye commeth of a rank and corrupt blood, descending from the head into the Eye, where it congealeth and breedeth a little worme in manner as it were the head of a Pismire, which groweth in the neather end of the Horses Eye next to his Nose-ward: it proceedeth many times into the Gristle of the nose, which if it chance to eate through, it will then passe into the head, and so kill the horse. The signes thereof are, you shall see red pimples, some great and some small, both within and without the eye, upon the Eye-lids, and all the Eye it selfe will lookered, and be full of very corrupt matter. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is to take as much burnt Allome as an hazle nut, and as much of greene Copperus, and Bake them both together upon a Tyle-stone, and then grinde them into powder, and put thereto a quarter of a spoonefull of honey, and mixe them all together, and then with a cloute dip therein, rub the sore till it bleede: and do thus seaven dayes together, and it will cure the Canker. There be other Farriers which for this Canker in a horses eye, will first let the horse blood in the necke-veine of the same side that the sore eye is, and take away to the quantity of a pottle of blood: then take of Roch-Allome, and of greene Copperus, of each halfe a pound, of white Copperus one ounce, and boyle them in three pints of running water, untill the halfe be

be consumed: then take it from the fire, and one a day wash his eye with this water, being made lukewarme, with a fine linnen cloath, and cleanse the eye therewith, so as it may look raw, and do this till the eye be whole.

CHAP. XVII.

For a stripe or blow upon a horses eye.

IF a horse shall catch any stripe or blow upon his eye, either with whip, rod, cudgell, or any such like mischance, or by one horses biting of another, when they either play or fight; Then for the cure thereof (if you take it when it is new done) you shall onely blow into his eye either the powder of Sandevoire, or the fine powder of white Salt, after the eye hath been washt with a little beere, but if the eye be more sore and have continued longer, then you shall take a small loafe of Bread, and pull out all the crummes; then fill the Loafe full of burning coales, untill it be well burned within, then take of that crust and put it in White Wine, and after it is well soaked lay it to the sore, then take Sope-water, and cold water mixt together, and wash all the Eyebrowes therewith, and if for all that it go not away, then you shall let him blood on the Templeveines; and if hee doe rub or chafe his eye, you shall let him blood of the veines under his eyes, and wash his Eyes with cold Sope-water, but if his Eyes doe chance to looke red with the blow, then you shall lay unto them a plaister of redde Lead and Sallet Oyle beaten well together. Others use to take

take the juyce of Plantine, stamp and mixt with white Wine, and so laid to the sore eye. Others use both for this disease, or any other sore eye, to stamp strong nettles with a little Beer, and then straining it to squirt thereof into the Horses eye, twice or thrice together: then to put of the fine powder of Sandevoire a little into his eyes, and then be carefull to keepe the horses eye from Winde or Cold: but if you must needes ride him, then put a wollen cloath before the horses eye, also it is not amisse to let him bloud on his eye-veins, and the twice dressing will be sufficient.

Other Farriers use first to annoint the sore eye three dayes together with Hennes or Capons greafe to mollifie it: Then take a little life honey, and warming it, wipe it into the horses eye with a feather. Others take the juyce of Plantine mixt with Hony, or else the juyce of Time mixt with honey, and put it into the eye. Others use to take the ashes of an old shoe-sole burnt in an Oven, and put into the horses eye: or else the powder of a gray Whetstone blowne into the sore eye, both are speedy remedies. Others use to take the juyce of Smallage and of Fennell, and mixing them with the white of an egge, put it into the horses eye once a day till the eye be whole.

CHAP. XVIII.

For a Wart in the eye.

A Wart in a horses eye, is a fleshy execration, or a fleshy knot growing either upon the eye, or upon

upon the edge or inside of the eye-lids, it proceedeth from a thicke fleagm, which descendeth to the eye by meanes that the horse is too much kept in a darke stable without light: and this infirmity will make a horses eye consume and grow little. The cure is to take rock Allom, and burne it on a Tile-stone, and then put as much white Copperus thereunto not burnt, and grinde them to powder, then lay some of that powder just upon the head of the wart, and do this once a day till the wart bee consumed away.

CHAP. XIX.

For any inflammation in a Horses eye.

Horses may diversly have inflammations in the Eyes, as by long standing in the stable, with foule feeding and no exercise, or by moates falling into his eyes, or by ranknesse of blood and such like, any of which will breed an inflammation or sorenesse in the eye. The signes are itching and rubbing of the Eyes, and a little swelling, with some loathnesse to open the eye-lids. The cure is, first to let him blood upon the temple-veines, and upon the eye-veines, and then to wash his eyes with milk and honey mixt together. Others after blood letting, will wash the horses eyes with honey and *Aloes Epatica* mixt together: And others will wash his Eyes with *Aloes* dissolved in white Wint, any of which is approved to be most excellent for any sore eye.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Impostume in the eare of a horse.

Impostumes which breed in the Eare of a horse proceede from divers causes, as from some great blow about the head, or from Wringings with a hard halter, or from some evill humours congealed in the eares by some extreame cold. The signes whereof appeare plainely by the burning and painefull swelling of the rootes of the eares, and the other parts thereabout. The cure thereof, is first to ripe the Impostume with this plaister: take of Linseed beaten into powder, and Wheate flower, of each halfe a pint, of Honey a pint, Of Hogges grease, otherwise called Barrowes grease, one pound: warme all these things together in an errthen pot, and stirre them continually with a flat sticke or slice untill they be thoroughly mingled and incorporated together, and then spread some of this plaister being warme, upon a piece of linnen cloath or soft white leather, so broad as the swelling and no more, and lay it warme unto it, and so let it remaine one whole day, and then renew it againe, continuing so to do, untill it either doe breake, or else grow so ripe that you may launce it downeward, so that the matter may have passage out, then taint it with this taint of flax dipped in this salve even to the bottome, that is to say, take of Metrofatum, of Sallet oyle and Turpentine, of each two ounces, and mingle them together, and make the horse a biggen of Canvase to close in the sore, so as the taint with the oyntment may abide within the

T

fore

fore, renewing the taint once a day untill it bee whole: but if the horse have paine in his eares, without any great paine or inflammation, then thrust into his eare a little blacke Wooll, dipt in the oyle of Camomile, and that will ease him: but if the Impostume be broken before you perceive it, and that you see matter runne from the Horses eares, then you shall take of oyle of Roses, of Venice Turpentine, and of honey, of each like quantity and mixing them wel together, warm it luke-warm upon a few coals, and then dipping blacke wool therein, thrust it down into the horses eare that runneth, renewing it once a day till the eare leave running.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Pole-evill.

THE Pole-evill is a great swelling inflammation, or Apostume in the hape of the horses neck, just betweene his eares towards his maine, and proceedeth sometimes from the horses struggling or striving in his halter, especially if the halter bee of hard new twound Hempe: sometimes it proceedeth from evill humours, gathered together in that place, or else from some stripe or blow given to the horse by some rude Keeper, Carter, or Man of little discretion: for that part being the weakest and tenderest part about the head, is the soonest offended and grieved with Sorrance. The signes of this disease is an apparant swelling betweene the horses Eares, and on each side his necke, which in continuance of time, will breake of its owne accord, yet doth ever

ever not more inwardly then outwardly, from whence it comes that this disease is more commonly called of our common and ignorant Farriers, the *Fistula in the neeke*, then the *Polle-evil*, and in truth it is an Ulcer so hollow and so crooked, and so full of sharpe matter, like unto like, that it differeth very little from a *Fistula*, and is of all *Impostumes*, except the *Fistula* it selfe, the most hardest to cure: therefore I would wish every carefull Farrier to take this cure in hand so soon as is possible, that is to say, before it breake, if it may be.

Now for the generall cure (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus: First, if it be not broken, ripe it with a plaister of Hogges grease, laid unto it so hot as may bee, and make a biggen for the pole of his head to keepe it from cold, which biggen would have two holes open, so as his eares may stand out, and renew the plaister every day once untill that breake, keeping the fore place as warme as may be, and if that you see it will not break so soon as you would have it, then looke where it is softest, and most meetest to be opened, take a round hot Iron or a Copper Iron (for that is the better) as big as a mans little finger, and sharp at the point, made like an Arrow head, and then about two inches beneath the soft place, thrust it in a good deepnesse upward, so as the poynt of your *Canterizing Iron* may come out at the ripest place, to the intent that the matter may descend downeward, and come out at the nether hole, which would alwayes be kept open: And therefore taint it with a taint of flaxe dipt in hogges grease warme, and lay also a plaister of hogges grease

grease upon the same, renewing it every day once for the space of foure dayes, which is done chiefly to kill the heate of the fire: then at the foure dayes end, take of Turpentine halfe a pound, cleane washed in nine sundry waters, and after that thoroughly dried, by thrusting out the water with a slice on the dishes side then put thereunto two yolkes of egges, and a little Saffron, and mingle them well together: That done, search the depth of the hole, either with a quill or a probe, and make a taint of a piece of dry sponge never wet, so long as it may neare reach the bottom, and so big as may fill the wound, and anoint the taint with the afore-said oyntment, and thrust it into the wound either with that quill, or else by winding it up with your finger and thumb by little and little, untill you have thrust it home, and then lay on the plaister of hogs grease made luke-warme, renewing it every day once untill it be whole: but if the swelling cease, then you need not to use the plaister, but onely to taint it; and as the matter decreaseth so make your taint every day lesser and lesser, untill the wound be perfectly cured.

Now if this disease of the Pole-evil have broken of it owne selfe, and by neglecting looking unto, have continued so long that it is turned to a Fistula, which you shall know both by the great and crooked hollownesse inwardly, and by a sharpe thin water which will issue out thereof outwardly, then you shall take (according to the opinion of the Farriers) of unsleackt lime, and of *Arsniske*, of each like quantity, beat them together into very fine powder, put thereto of the jayce of Garlick, of Onions, and of Wal-

Wal-woort, of each a like quantiry, and of Holly as much as all the rest; boyle them upon a soft fire, and stirre them all well together untill they be as thicke as an oyntment; then wash the sore with very strong vinegar, and fill the hole full of the afore-said oyntment, by dipping a taint therein twice a day; then lay a plaister of hogs grease upon the Taint to make it keepe in, and use this untill the horse bee whole.

Other Farriers use to take orpiment, unleackt lime, and verdigrease, of each like quantity, temper them with the juyce of pellitory, blackeinke, honey, and strong vinegar, of each like quantity, boyle them and stir them well together, untill they be very thicke, then make thereof small rolles, and put them into the hollow place of the same sorrhance: now you are to note, that both this and the last recited salve before this, are onely to kill the rankerous and sharpe humour which brings the sore unto a Fistula, which so soone as you have killed, which you shall know by the matter which will be white and thicke, then you shall heale up the sore either with the powder of Savin, or the powder of hony and lime baked together or else by anointing it with tarre and faller oyle, or fresh hogs grease mixt together. There be other Farriers which for this sorrhance doe first open the sore with a hot Iron, and then take red leade and black sope, and mixing them well with water till it bee good and thicke, taint the horse therewith till hee be whole.

Others use to take a quart of water, halfe a pound of roeh allum, foure penny worth of Mercury, a quar-

ter of a pound of Verdigreale, and mixing them well together, wash the horses fore with his water till it begin to dry up, and then heale it with the powders before named. See further in the new Additions for the Fistula, marked thus ¶

CHAP. XXII.

*A true and certaine approved cure for any
Pole-evil whatsoeuer.*

¶ **F**irst shave off the haire from the swelling, then lay on a plaister of blacke Shooe-makers waxe, spread upon white Allom'd leather, and let it lye till it have ripened and broake the Impostume: then take a pint of Wine vinegar, and when it is boyling hot, mixe with it as much clay loame with the strawes, and all in it, as will bring the vinegar unto a thicke pulvis, then apply this as hot as the horse can suffer it to the sore, and renew it once a day till the impostume be whole.

CHAP. XXIII.

*Of a horse that is lave-ear'd, and how to
helpe him.*

¶ **F**OR a horse to be Lave-ear'd, is as foule a disgrace and as much deformity to his beauty, as to want the true proportion and use of any outward member whatsoeuer. It proceedeth from a naturall infirmity, and is ingendred even from the first conception, and although

although few of our Farriers either have endeavoured themselves, or know how to helpe it; yet there is nothing more certaine then that in this sort it may be cured. First, take your horses eares, and place them in such manner as you would have them stand, and then with two little boords, or pieces of Trenchers three fingers broad, having long strings knit unto them, binde the eares so fast in the places where they stand, that by no meanes or motion they may stirre, then betwixt the head and the roote of the eare, you shall see a great deale of empy wrinkled skinne, which with your finger and your thumbe you shall pull up, and then with a very sharpe paire of Sizers you shall clippe away all the empy skinne close by the head: then with a needle and reade silke you shall stitch the two sides of the skinne close together, and then with a salve made of Turpentine, Deeres suet, and honey, of each like quantity melted together, and made into an oynment, heale up the sore; which done, take away the splents which held up his eares, and you shall see within a short time that his eares will keepe the same place still as you set them without any alteration: And this you shall ever finde to be as certaine and true, as the healing of a cut finger.

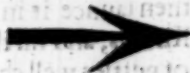
CHAP. XXIV.


*Of the Vives or Hard Kernels betweene the
Chaps and the necke.*

THe Vives are certaine great Kernels which grow from the roote of the horses eare, down to the lower part of his neather jaw, betweene the chappe and the necke, they are in proportion, long, narrow, and round, and are naturall things, proper and due to every horse: but when either through ranke-nesse of blood, or abundance of corrupt humours, resorring to that place, they begin to bee inflamed, then they become very foule Sorrances and Impostumations most dangerous: they are inwardly very full of little white salt Kernels, and they breed great paine in the horses throat. This disease as farre forth as I can finde by any demonstration, is the disease which in men we call the Squinancie, or Quinzie, & not as some of the old Farriers suppose, the Strangle for that hath no coherence with the infirmity. For the signes of the disease, there needes small repetition, insomuch as the griefe is apparant to the eye: and the cure, according to the opinion of the oldest Farries, is thus: If you see the Kernels begin to ranke and swell, you shall rake the horses eare, and laying it downe alongst the necke of the horse, at the very end or tippe of the eare, cut a hole through the skinne of the necke, the length of an Almonde, or better: and then with a crooked Wire, picke out all those Kernels which you finde inflamed: Which done, fill the hole full of Salt: then about the end
of

of three dayes, you shall finde the sore beginne to matter: then wash it either with bark water, or with the iuyce of Sage: Then take of honey, of sweet butter, and of tarre, of each halfe a spoonefull, and melt them together, and as soone as you have washed the sore clean, put into it of this oymntment the quantity of a beane, and so dresse the horse once a day untill he be whole.

There bee others of our most ancient English *Farrriers*, which for this Sorraunce use first to draw the sore right downe in the midst with a hot Iron, from the roote of the eare, so farre as the tip of the eare will reach, being pulled downe, and under the roote againe draw two strikes on each side, like an Arrow head in this forme:



then in the midst of the first  Line, launce them with a Lancer, and taking hold of the Kernels with a pair of fine thinne Pinsons, pull them so farre forward as you may cut the Kernels out without hurting the veine: that done, fill the hole with salt, and heal it up as is aforesaid. Now most of the *Italian* *Farrriers* use this cure: First, take a sponge steeped well in strong Vinegar, and binde it unto the sore place, renewing it twice a day untill the Kernels bee rotten: That done, launce it then in the nethermost part, where the matter lyeth, and let it out, and then fill up the hole with salt finely brayed, and the next day wash all the filth away with warme water and a sponge, and then annoynt the place with honey and Fitch flower mixt together, but in any case beware, during this cure you touch not the Kernels with your
bare

hate finger, for feare of venoming the place, which is very apt for a Fistula to breede in. Now there be other English Farriers, which use either to ripen the sore by laying to a plaister of hot hogges grease, or a plaister of Barley meale mixt with three ounces of Raisins sod well together in strong Wine, or else they cut out the Kernels. Now whether you cut them out, burne them out, or rot them out (of all which I hold rotting the best,) you shall ever fill the hole with nettles and salt being chopt and mixt together, or else taint it with taints dipt in water & mixt with sallet oyle and salt. Others use to burne them downwards with a hot iron in the middest, from the ear to the jaw-bone, drawing two crosse stroakes, and then launce it in the middest, and plucke out the Kernels, and fill the hole with bay Salt, and the crops of nettles well chopt and mixt together: or else put only Salt into the hole, and take the crops of nettles well chopt and mixt with Bay salt, and two spoonfull of strong vinegar: and straine it, and put in either eare a spoonfull thereof, and put some blacke wooll after it, and so bind up his eares.

Others use to ripen them, either by laying to the sore wet hay, or wet horse-litter: And as soone as they are ripe (which you shall know by the softnesse) to launce the skinne, and take out the Kernels, and then fill the hole with the powder of honey and unslett lime mixt together, and burne upon a Tile-stone. Others use likewise after the Kernels are ripened and taken out, to take of Egrimony, honey and violet leaves, of each like quantity, and stamping them well together, to plaister the sore there-

with

with, till it be whole. Others use after the Kernels are taken out, to wash the fore with Copperus Water, and then to taint the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge, and after to heale it with Waxe, Turpentine, and Hogges grease m-aren well together.

CHAP. XXV.

A most rare and certaine approved medicine, which will cure the Vives without either burning, melting, roasting, or any such violent extremity.

Take a pennyworth of Pepper beaten to fine powder, of Swines grease one spoonfull, the joyce of a handful of Rue, of vinegar two spoonful, mix them all well together, and put it equally into both the horses eares, and tye them up with two strings, or else fitch them together: Then shake the eares that the medicine may sinke downwards: Which done, you shall let the horse blond in the necke-veine, and in the temple-veines. And this cure is infallible.

CHAP. XXVI.

Another cure for the Vives, most certain and approved.

If in any of the former receipts you can finde either difficulty or doubt, then to make certaine and speedy Worke: first shave off the haire from the sweld place, and then clap upon it a plaister of Shoomakers waxe, and remove it not till the sore breake, then renew the plaister & it wil both heale and dry it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Strangle.

TH E Strangle (howsoever our old Farriers make a long discourse thereof) is not (as they suppose) a kinde of Quinzy, but a meane inflammation of the throat, proceeding from some Cholericke or bloody fluxion, which comes out of the branches of the Throate-veines into those parts, and there breederth some hot inflammation, being stirred up either by some great cold Winter, or cold taken after Labour: It is a grear and a hard swelling betweene the horses nether chaps, upon the rootes of the horses tongue, and about his throate, which swelling, if it be not prevented, will stop the horses wind-pipe, and so strangle or choake him: from which effect, and none other, the name of the disease took it his derivation. The signes of this disease, besides the apparant signe thereof, and the palpable feeling of the same, is, the horses temples of his head will be hollow, and his rongue wil hang out of his mouth his head and eyes also will be swolne, and the passage of his throate so stoppt, that he can neither eate nor drinke, and his breath will be exceeding short. The cure thereof, according to the most auncient Farriers, is with a round small hot Iron to thrust a hole through the skin on both sides the wessand, and then after it beginneth to matter, to mixe butter, Tanners water, and Salt together, and every day anoint the sore therewith till it be whole. Other of the ancient Farriers use first to bathe the horses mouth
and

and tongue with hot water; and then annoynt the fore place with the gall of a Bull, that done, give him this drinke; : Take of old Oyle two pounds, of old Wine a quart, nine Figges, and nine Leekes heads well stamped and brayed together, and after you have boyled these a while, before you straine them, put thereunto a little *Nitrum Alexandrinum*, and give him a quart of this every morning and evening: Also you may if you will, let him blood in the Palate of the mouth, and powre wine and oyle into his nostrils, and also give him to drinke the decoction of Figges and Nitrum sodden together, or else to anoint his throate within with Nitre, Oyle, and Honey, or else with honey and hogs dung, mixt together. Other Farriers use to rowell the horse under the throate, and to draw the Rowell twice or thrice a day, annoynting it with fresh butter, and keeping his head warme. Other of our latter and better experienced Farriers, use first, (if his yeares will permit him) to let the horse blood in the necke-veine, then to lay to the fore this ripening plaster: Take of Mallowes, Linfeed, Rue, Smallage and ground Ivy, of each like quantity; boil these together in the grounds of beere: then put to it some Oyl de Bay, and a little *Dia Althea*, then take it off the fire, & make of it a plaster, and lay it to the fore, suffering the horse to drinke no cold water: after the sore is broken, lay bran steeped in Wine unto it, till it be whole. Others use to cut the Kirnels out between the jawes, and then to wash the sore with butter and Beere, giving the horse to drinke new milk and garlicke, and the juyce of the leaves of Birtch, or in winter

ter the bark of Birch, or else to anoyne it with tere-
and oyle till it be whole. Now, for mine own part,
the best cure that ever I found for the Strangle, was
this. As soon as I found the swelling begin to arise be-
tweene his chaps, to take a Waxe candle, and holding
it under the Horses chappes, close unto the swelling,
burne it so long till you can see the skinne be burnt
through, so that you may as it were rayse it from the
flesh, that done, you shall lay unto it, either wet hay,
or wet horse-litter, and that will ripen it, and make
it breake: then lay a plaster unto it onely of Sho-
makers Waxe, and that will both draw and heale
it. Now if it breake inward, and will not breake out-
ward, and so avoydeth onely at his nose, then you
shall twice or thrice every day, perfume his head by
burning under his nostrills either Frankinsence or
Masticke, or else by putting a hot coale into wet hay,
and so making the smoke thereof to ascend up into
the horses head: or else to blow the powder of Eu-
forbium with a quill into his nose, and also more that
whatsoever cureth the Vives, cureth the Strangle
also.

CHAP. XXVIII

Of the cankerous ulcer in the nose.

THAT which wee call the cankerous Ulcer in the
Nose, is only a fretting humour, eating and con-
suming the flesh, and making it all raw within, and
not being holden in time, will eate through the Gri-
tle of the nose. It commet of corrupt blood, or else

of a sharpe hunger ingendred by meanes of some ex-
tremed cold.

The signes are, the horse will oft bleede at the
nose, and the flesh within his nose will bee raw,
and filthy stinking faecibus and matter will come out
at the nose.

The cure thereof, according to the ancient Far-
riers, is to take of Greene Copperus and of Allome
of each a pound, of white Copperus one quarterne,
and boyle these in a pottle of running water untill a
pint be consumed: then take it off, and put thereun-
to halfe a pinte of honey: then cause his head to bee
holden up with a drenching stalle, and squirt into
his nostrils with a squirt of Brasse or Pewter, some
of this water being luke-warme, three or foure times
one after another; but betwixt every squirting give
him liberty to hold downe his head, and to snort out
the filthy matter: for otherwise perhaps you might
choake him: and after this it shal be good also with-
out holding up his head any more, to wash and rub
his nostrils with a fine clout bound to a stickes end,
and dipt in the aforesaid water, and doe thus once
a day untill the horse be whole. Other Farriers use,
if they see this Canker to be of great heate, and bur-
ning in the fore with exceeding great paine, then
you shall take the juyce of Purslaine, Lettice, and
Night-shade, of each like quantity, and mixe them
together, and wash the fore with a fine cloath dipt
therein, or else squirt it up into his nostrils, and it wil
allay the heate.

Others take of Hyssope, Sage, and Rue, of each a
good handfull, and seeth them in urine and water.

to the third part of them : then straine them out, and put in a little white Copperus and honey. and Aquavita, and so either wash or squirt the place with it, then when the Canker is killed, make this water to heale it : Take of Rib-wort, Bettony and Daisies, of each a handfull : then seeth them well in Wine and Water, and wash the sore three or foure times a day therewith untill it be whole. Others use also to take Chrysell, and beating it into fine powder, to strow it upon the Canker, and it will kill it.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of bleeding at the Nose.

MAny horses, (especially young horses) are oft subject to this bleeding at the nose, which I imagine proceedeth either from the much abundance of blood, or that the veine which endeth in that place, is either broken, fretted or opened. It is opened many times by meanes that blood aboundeth too much, or that it is too fine, or too supple, and so pierceth through the veine. Againe, it may be broken by some violent straine, cut, or blow. And lastly, it may be fretted and gnawne through by the sharpnesse of the blood, or else by some other evill humour contained therein. The cure is, according to the ancient Farriers, to rake the juyce of the rootes of Nettles, and squirt it up into the horses nostrils, and lay upon the nape of the horses necke, a wadde of hay dipt in cold water, and when it waxeth warme, take it off, and lay on a cold one. Other Farriers use to take a pint of red wine, and put there-

in a quarterne of Bole-armonike beaten into fine powder and being made luke warme, to powre the one half thereof the first day into his nostrile that bleedeth, causing his head to be holden up, so as the Wine may not fall out, and the next day to give him the other half.

Others use to let the horse bleed on the breast-veine, on the same side that he bleedeth at severall times: then take of Frankinsence one ounce, of Clove halfe an ounce, and beate them into fine powder, and mingle them thoroughly with the whites of three egges untill it be as thicke as honey, and with soft Hares haire thrust it up into his nostrile, filling the hole so full of Ashes, Dung, or Hogges dung: some horses dung mixt with Chalke and Vinegar.

Now for mine owne part, when none of these will remedy or helpe (as all have failed me at some times, when I have used this) take two small whipcords, and with them garter him exceeding hard about some ten or twelve inches above his knees of his fore legges, and just beneath his elbowes, and then keepe the nape of his necke as cold as may bee, with moist cleaths, or wet hay, and it will staunch him presently.

CHAP. XXX.

*Of the bloody rifts, or chops in the palate
of the horses mouth.*

THese Chops, Clefts, or Rifts, in the palate of a horses mouth, do proceed (as some Farriers suppose,) from the eating of rough hay, full of whims, thistles, or other pricking stufte, or Provender full of sharp seed, which by continuall pricking and fretting the furrows of the mouth, do cause them to rankle, swell, and breed corrupt blood, and stinking matter, and without speedy prevention, that Ulcer will turn to the foulest Canker.

The cure thereof is (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) to wash the sore places very cleane with Salt and vinegar mixt together, then to anoynt it with Honey and Allome mixt together. Other Farriers use (especially if the Palate be much swelled,) to pricke the roose of the mouth with an hot iron, that the humours may issue out abundantly, and then to anoynt the place with Honey and Onions boyled together, till they be whole.

CHAP. XXXI.

*Of the Gigges or Bladders in a horses
mouth.*

THese Gigges, Bladders, or Flappes in a horses mouth, are little soft swellings, or rather pustules with blacke heads, growing in the inside of the horses

horses lips, next unto his great jaw-teeth: they will sometimes be as great as a Walnut, and are so painfull unto him, that they make him let his meate fall out of his mouth, or at least keep it in his mouth unchawed, whereby the horse can in no wise prosper: they do proceede either of eating too much grasse, or naughty rough pricking hay or provender, they are most apparantly to be felt: and the cure is (according to the opinion of the oldest and most experienced *Farriers*) first to draw out the horses tongue of the one side of his mouth, and then take a Lancer and slit the swellings the length of a Date, and then with a Probe picke out all the Kernels like Wheate cornes very cleane: then take the yolke of an Egge, and as much salt as will temper it thicke like leaven: then make it into little Bals, and thrust into every hole, and faile not to doe so once a day untill it bee whole.

Other *Farriers* use after they have slit them with an incision Knife, and thrust out the corruption, only to wash the sore places either with vineger and Salt, or else with Allome water. Others use with a small hot Iron to burne the swellings, and then wash them with Beere and Salt, or Ale and Salt, and it will heale them. Now that you may prevent this Disease before it come, it shall be good to pull out the horses tongue often, and to wash it with Wine, Beer, and Ale, and so shall not Blisters breed thereon, nor any other disease.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Lampasse.

The *Lampasse* is a swelling or growing up of the flesh, which overgroweth the upper teeth, which are the shearers in the upper Chap, and so hindreth the horse from eating. They doe proceede from a boundance of blood resorting to the first Furrow or bar of the mouth, I meane that which is next to the upper fore-teeth, it is most apparant to be scene, and therefore needeth no other signes. The cure is (according to the custome of the oldest Farriers,) first with a Lancer to let them blood in divers places of the swelling flesh: then take an Iron made at one end broad and thin, and turned up according to this Figure, and bearing it red hot, burne out all that superfluous sweld flesh which overgrowes the fore-teeth, and then annoint the fore place with fresh Butter untill it bee whole. Others use after it is burnt out,



ly to rub the fore place with Salt onely, or wash it with Salt and Vinegar till it be whole. Others use to take a hooked Knife made very sharpe and very hot, and therewith cut the swolne places in two parts crosse against the teeth; but if they be a little sweld, then cut but the third ranke from the teeth, and so let him bleed well: then rub it with a little Salt, and the Horse will be well: but if you finde afterwards that either through too much burning, or cutting, or through the eating of too course meate, that the wound doth not heale, but rather rankleth: then you shall

shall take a Sancer full of honey, and twelve pepper-cornes, and bray them together in a mortar, and temper them up with vineger, and boyle them a while, and then once a day annoint the sore therewith til it be whole.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the Camery, or Frounce.

THE Camery, or Frounce in Horses, are small Pimples, or Warts in the midst of the Palate of the mouth above, and they are soft and sore, they will also sometimes breede both in his Tongue and in his Lips: it proceedeth sometimes from the eating of frozen grasse, or by drawing frozen dust with the grasse into their mouths: sometimes by eating of moyst hay, that Rats or other Vermine have pist upon, and sometimes by licking up of venome. The signes are, the apparant seeing of the pimples, or whelkes, and a forsaking of his foode, both through the sorenesse of them, and through the unfavourinesse and stanknesse of the foode that hee hath eaten before.

The Cure (according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers) is first to let him blood in the two greatest veines under his tongue, and then wash all the sore places with Vinegar and Salt: Then get the horse new bread, which is not hot, and give it him to eate, and the Horse will doe well enough. But take heede you give but a small quantity of such bread for feare of surfeite, which is both apt and dangerous.

Others use with a hot stoll to burne the pimples on the head, and then wash them with Wine and Salt, or Ale and Salt untill they bleede, and they will soone heale. Other Farriers use to take out his tong, and to pricke the veines thereof in seaven or eight places, and likewise under his upper Lippe also, and let him bleede well. Kitchin rub every sore place with Salt well: then the next day wash all the sore places with white wine warme, or else with strong vinegar, and rub it againe with Salt: then for two or three dayes let the horse drinke no cold water, and he will doe well.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the Canker in the mouth.

A Canker is said of the ancient Farriers to be nothing but the rawnes of the mouth and tongue, which is full of very sore blisters, from whence will runne a very hot and sharpe lye, which will fret and corrode or rot the flesh wheresoever it goeth. The signes are, the apparant sight of the sore, besides the forsaking of his meate, because he cannot swallow it downe, but lets it lye halfe chewed betweene his jaws: and sometimes when he hath chewed his meat, hee will thrust it out of his mouth againe, and his breast will savour very strongly, chiefly when he is fasting.

☞ This disease proceedeth ofttest from some unnaturall heate comming from the stomacke, and sometimes from the venom of filthy food.

The cure is (as the oldest Farriers instruct us)

to take of Allome halfe a pound, of hony a quarter of a pint, of Collumbine leaves, of Sage, of each a handfull, boyle all these together in three pintes of running Water untill one pinte bee consumed, and wash all the sore places therewith, so as they may bleed, and do thus once every day untill it be whole. Other Farriers use first to cast the horse, and with a rolling pinne to open his mouth, then with a crooked Iron wrapt about with Tow or Flaxe, to take out all the stinking grasse, or other meate that lyeth in his jawes, and under the roote of his tongue: then when you have cleansed it thus, you shall heat strong wine vineger somewhat warme, and then with the same Iron wrapt in tow, and dipt in wine vineger, you shall wash all the sore places till they bleed: then wash all his tongue and lippes with the same vineger, and so let him rise: and then feede him at least seven dayes with warme Mashes and hot graines: but in no wise with any hay, and hee will soone bee whole.

Other Farriers use to take of the juyce of Daffadil rootes seven drams, of the juyce of Hounds-tongue, as much, of vinegar as much, of Allome one ounce: mixe these wel together, and wash the Canker therewith once a day untill it be whole. Others use to take of Saven, of Bay salt and of Rue, of each like quantity, and stamp them together with as much Barrows grease, and anoynt the sore places therewith untill the Canker be kild, which you may know by the whitenesse, and then heale it up onely with Allome water.

Others use first to wash the Canker till it bleede

with warme Vineger, to take a good quantity of Allome beaten into very fine powder, and to mixe it with strong vineger till it be as thicke as a Salve: then to anoynt all the sore places therewith, and do not faile thus to doe twice or thrice a day untill the Canker be whole.

Now for mine owne part, the best cure that ever I found for this Sorrhance, is to take of Ginger and of Allome, of each like quantity, made into very fine powder: then with strong vineger to mixe them together till they be very thicke like a Salve, then when you have washt the Canker cleane, either with Allome-water or with vineger, amoynt it with this Salve, and in twice or thrice dressing, the Canker will be killed, and after it will heale speedily.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of heate in the mouth and tips of a horse.

THE unnaturall and violent heate which ascendeth up from the stomack into the mouth, doth not alwayes breed a *Canker*, but sometimes onely beareth and inflameth the mouth and lippes, making them onely swell and burne, so as the horse can take no joy in his foode, but through the grieve refuseth his meate. The cure thereof is, first turne up his upper lip, or that which is most swel'd, and with a Lancer jagge it lightly, so that it may bleede, and then wash both that, and all his mouth and tongue with vinegar and Salt.

CHAP. XXXVI.

*Of the Tongue being hurt with the bit,
or otherwise.*

IF the tongue of a horse be either hurt, cut, or galled by any accident or mischance whatsoever, the best cure is (as the old Farriers suppose) to take of English honey, and of salt Lard, of each like quantity, a little unbleached Lime, and a little of the powder of Pepper: boyle them on a soft fire, and stirre them well together till they bee thicke like unto an Oyntment: then wash the wound with white Wine warmed: after that, annoynt the wound with the said oyntment twice a day, and by no means let the horse weare any Bit till he be whole.

Other Farriers use first to wash the sore with Allome water, and then to take the leaves of a blacke bramble, and to choppe them together small with a little Lard: that done, to binde it with a little clout, making it round like a ball: Then having dipped the round end in honey, to rubbe the tongue therewith once a day untill it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

*Of the Barbes or Pappes underneath
a horses tongue.*

THe Barbes are two little pappes which naturally doe grow under every Horses tongue whatsoever, in the nether jawes: yet if at any time they shoote out, and grow into an extraordinary length

or

or by the over-flow of humours become to be inflamed, then they are a Sorrance, and with the extremity of their paine, they hinder the horse from feeding. The cure of them is, both according to the opinion of the ancient and late Farriers, absolutely to clip them away with a paire of sheares, close to the jaw, and then to wash the sore either with water and salt, or else with Tarrar and strong vinegar mixt together, or else with vinegar and salt. Any of all which will heale them.

CHAP XXXVIII.

Of the paine in a horses teeth, of Wolfes teeth, and jaw teeth.

A Horse may have paine in his teeth through divers occasions, as partly by the descent of grosse humours from the head downe unto the teeth and gummes, which is very proper to Colts and young horses, and plainely to be seene by the ranknesse and swelling of the gummes, and also he may have paine in his teeth, by having two extraordinary teeth, called the Wolfes teeth, which bee two little teeth growing in the upper jawes, next unto the great grinding teeth, which are so painefull to the horse, that he cannot endure to chaw his mear, but is forced either to let it fall out of his mouth, or else to keepe it still halfe chewed. Againe, a horse will have a great paine in his teeth, when his upper jawe teeth be so farre growne, as they over-hang the neather jaw teeth; and therewith also be so sharp, as in mooving his jawes, they cut and raze the in-

sides

sides of his cheekes, even as they were razed with a Knife. Lastly, a horse may have great paine in his teeth, when either by corruption of blood, or some other naturall weaknesse, the horses teeth grow loose and sore in such manner, that through the tendernes thereof, hee is not able to chaw or grinde his forde. Now for the severall cures of these infirmities, you shal understand that first as touching the general pain in a horses teeth, which doe come by meanes of the distillation of humours, it is thought fit by the ancientest Farriers, first to rub all the outside of the horses gummies with fine Chalk and strong vineger well mixt together.

Other ancient Farriers use after they have so washed the gummies, to strow upon them the powder of Pomegranate Pils, and to cover the temples of the head with the plaister of Pitch, Rozen, and Mastick molten together, as have been before sufficiently declared.

Now for the cure of the Wolfes teeth, or the jaw teeth (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus. First, cause the horses head to be tyed up high to some post or rafter, and his mouth to be opened with a cord so wide that you may easily see every part thereof: Then take an instrument of Iron, made in all poynts like unto a Carpenters Gouge, and with your left hand set the edge of the toole at the foote of the Wolfes teeth, on the outside of the jaw, turning the hollow side of the toole downward, holding your hand steadily, so as the toole may not slip nor swarve from the aforesaid teeth: Then, having a mallet in your right hand, strike

strike upon the head of the toole a good stroake, wherewith you may loosen the tooth, and make it bend inward, then straining the midst of your toole upon the Horses neather jaw, wrinch the tooth outward with the inside or hollow side of the toole, and thrust it cleane out of his head: Which done, serve the other Woolfes tooth on the other side in like manner, and then fill up the empty holes with Salt finely brayed.

62 Other ancient Farriers use (and I have in mine experience found it the better practice) onely when the Horse is eyther tyed up or cast, and his mouth opened, to take a very sharpe file, and to file the wolves teeth so smooth as is possible, and then wash his mouth with a little Allome water. Now if the upper jaw teeth over-hand the neather jaw teeth, and so cut the inside of the mouth as is aforesaid, then you shall take your former tool or gouge, and with your Mallet strike and pare all those teeth shorter by little and little degrees, running alongst them even from the first unto the last, turning the hollow side of your toole towards the teeth, by which meanes you shall not cut the insides of the horses Cheeks: then with your file, file them all smooth without any raggednesse, and then wash the Horses mouth with Vinegar and Salt. Lastly, if the paine doe proceed from the loosenesse of his teeth, then the cure is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, first to cast the Horse, and pricke all his Gummes over with a Lancer, making them bleed well, then rub them all over with Sage and Salt, and it will fasten them againe.

Others

Others use to let the horse Blood in the veine under the Tayle, next the Rump, and then to rubbe all his gums with Sage, and to give him in his provender, the tender croppes of blacke briers: or else wash all his mouth with honey, sage, and salt beaten together, and by no meanes let the horse eat any moist meate, for cold, moist, and marriish feeding in the Winter, onely breedeth this disease of loosenesse in the teeth, and it is of all other, most proper to the *Sarrell* horses.

CHAP. XXX IX.

*Of diseases in the necke and Withers, and first
of the cricke in the necke.*

THe *Cricke* in the necke of a Horse, is when hee cannot turne his necke any way, but holds it still right forth, in so much that he cannot bow downe his head to take up his meate from the ground, but with exceeding great paine, and surely it is a kinde of convulsion of sinewes which proceedeth from cold causes, of which we have spoken very sufficiently before: It also proceedeth sometimes from over-heavy burchens that be laid vpon a horses shoulders, or by over-much drying up of the sinewes of the necke. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, first to thrust a sharpe hore iron through the flesh of the necke in five severall places, every one distant from the other three inches, (but in any case beware of touching any sinew) then rowell all the afore-said places either with horse haire, flax, or hempe, for the space of fifteene daies,
and

and anoynt the rowels with hoggs greafe, and the necke will soone be restored. Others use if the cricke causeth the horse to hold his necke straight forward, which sheweth that both sides are equally perplexed, to take a hot drawing Iron, and draw the horse from the roore of the eare, on both sides the necke, from the midst of the same, even downe the breast, a straw deepe, so as both ends may meet on the breast: then make a hole through the skin of the fore-head, hard under the fore-toppe, and thrust in a corner upward betwixt the skinne and the flesh, a handfull deepe: then either put in a goose feather doubled in the midst, and anoynted with hoggs greafe: Or else a rowell of either horne or Leather, with a hole in the midst: any of which will keepe the hole open, to the intent the matter may issue forth: And this you shall keepe open the space of ten dayes, but every day during the time, the hole must bee cleansed once, and the feather or rowell also cleansed, and fresh anoynted, and put in againe: and once a day let him stand upon the bit an houre or two, or else be ridden abroad two or three miles, by such an one as will beate the horses head, and make him bring it in: but if the *cricke* be such that it maketh the horse to hold his head awry upon the one side, which sheweth that but one side of the necke is troubled, then you shall not draw the horse with an hot Iron on both sides of the necke, but onely on the contrary side, as thus: If hee bend his head towards the right side, then to draw him, as is aforesaid, onely on the left side, and to use the rest of the cure as is abovesaid, and if necessity doe

doe require, you may splent the horses neck also straight strong with splents of wood.

I have cured this *Cricke* in the necke onely by bathing the horses necke in the oyle of Peeter, or the oyle of *Spike* very hot, and then roling it all up in wet hay, or rotten Litter, and keeping the horse exceeding warm, without using any burning, wounding, or other violence.

CHAP. XLII

Of the *Wennes* in the necke.

A *Wenne* is a certaine Bunch or Kinnell upon the skinne, like a tumour or swelling: the inside whereof is sometimes hard like a *Gisttle*, and spongy like a skinne full of soft *Warts*; and sometimes yellow like unto rusted *Bacon*, with some white graines among. Now of *Wennes*, some are great, and some be small, also some are very painefull, and some not painefull at all. They proceed, as some imagine of naughty, grosse, and stigmaticke humors, binding together in some sicke part of the body. And others say they proceede from taking of cold, or from drinking of waters that bee most extreame cold; but I say, that albeit they may proceede from these causes, yet most generally they proceede from some pinching, bruising, biting, ripping, or galling, either of girthes, halter, collar, or any other thing whatsoever.

The most certainst cure thereof is this, rake of *Malowes*, *Sage*, and red *Nettles*, of each one handfull: boyle them in running water, and put thereunto a little

clit her hand honey, and when the hearb be soft
take them out, and a little white tye, and put the
mixture of oyle of Bay, and oinment, and of Hogs grease
two ounces, and warm them together over the fire,
mixing them with together; that done, plaister it
upon a peece of baizer, fo big withen Wen, and lay
it so fo hot, as the horse can endure it, renewing it
every day in such sort the space of eight daies, and if
you perceiue it will come to no head, then launce it
from the midst of the Wen, downward, so deepe
that the matter in the bottome may be discovered
and let out: which done, heale it up with this salve:
Take of Turpentine a quartaine, and wash it six
times in faire water, then put it into the yolk
of an egge, and a little Englifh Saffron beaten in
powder, and make a raide of roe of flaxe, and dig
it in that oynment, and lay it to the sore, renewing
the same every day once or twice, untill the Wen
be cured.

¶ Oshets use in this case, li with a hot Iron to burn
and seare away all the superfluous flesh, and then
heale up the sore, eyther with the Oynment last
heard, or else with the powder of Honey and Lin
mixt together: and this manner of cure is by much
the speedier.

CHAP. XLI.

Of swelling in the neck after blood-letting.

THe swelling of a horse's neck after blood-letting may come through divers occasions, as namely by striking through the veine, so as some of the blood being gotten betwixt the flesh and the veine, it there corrodeeth and turneth to an impostume, or else by striking the veine with a rusty fleame, whereby the veine rankleth, or by some cold wind striking suddenly into the hole, or lastly, by suffering the horse too soone to thrust downe his head, and graze or feede, whereby humours resorting to that place, breeds a great impostumation. The cure is, according to the opinion of some *Farriers*, to take Hemlocke and stampe it, and then to mingle it with Sheepsdung, and wine vineger, and so making a plaister thereof to lay it to the swelling, renewing it once a day untill it be whole. Other *Farriers* are first to annoint the place with the oyle of Camomill warmed, & then to lay upon it a little hay wet in cold water, and bind it about with a cloth, renewing it every day for the space of a weeke, to see whether it will grow to a head, or else vanish away: if it grow to a head, you may then launce it, and thrust out the matter: then heale it up by tainting it with flaxe dipt in Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together, dressing it once a day untill it be whole.

CHAP. XLII.

How to stanch blood.

IF your horse either by wound or other accident, or by the ignorance of any unskilfull Farrier that letteth him blood when the signe is in that place, bleed so exceedingly that hee will not bee stanch'd, you shall then according to the opinion of the old Farriers, lay unto the wound a little new horse-dung tempered with Chalke and strong Vineger, and not to remove it from thence the space of three dayes : or else to lay unto it burnt silke, burnt felt, or burnt cloath, any of which will stanch blood. Others use to powre into the wound the juyce of Coriander ; or else to let the horse chew in his mouth the leaves of Periwinkle. Others use to take of bruised Nettles, and lay them to the wound : or else wild Tansey bruised, or hor hoggs-dung. Others use to take bruised Sage and lay to the wound : or else the coame about the Smiths Forge : or else a clode of earth, or bruised Hyssope : or the soft crops of Hawthorne bruised : or else to take two ounces of the horses blood, and boile it till it come to a powder and then put that powder into the wound.

But when all these faile, as in some extremities I have found them do, then for your onely refuge, you shall take the soft down either of a Haires skin, or of a Conies skin, and stop the wound well therewith, holding it too with your hand till the blood stanch : if it be a grievous sore wound, then as soone as the blood is staked, spread a plaister of Bolearmonicke and

and Wine vineger mixt over the wound.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the falling of the Crest.

THe falling of the horses Crest, is when the upper part of a horses necke which is called the Crest, leaneth either to the one or the other side, and will not stand upright as it ought to doe. It proceedeth most commonly from poverty and very hard keeping, and especially when a fat horse falleth away suddainely upon any inward sicknesse. The cure (according to the oldest Farriers) is first to draw his Crest well a full strawes breadth deepe on the contrary side with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron would bee halfe an inch broad, and make both your beginning and ending somewhat beyond the fall, so as the first draught may gee all the way hard upon the edge of the maine, close by the rootes of the same, bearing your hand right downward into the necke-ward: Then answer that with another draught beneath, and so farre distant from the first, as the fall is broad compassing as it were all the fall: But still on the contrary side, and betwixt those two draughts, right in the middest, draw a third draught, then with an Iron button of almost an inch about, burne at each end a hole, & also in the spaces betwixt the draughts, make divers holes distant three fingers one from another, as this figure doth plainly shew you. That done, to kill the fire, annoynt it every day



once with fresh butter for a weeke or more : Then take of Mallowes and of Sage, of each one handfull, boyle them well in running water, and wash the burning away till it be raw flesh, and then dry it up with the powder of hony and Lige.

Other Farriers use for this infirmity, first to cast the horse upon some soft dung-hill, or other easie place, and with a knife to cut away the flesh on the hanging or under-side of the Crest, even from the fore-end thereof to the hinder end, six inches broad and two inches thicke, or somewhat more in the middle thereof where it is thickest : then groping the Crest with your hands, to pare the thickest part thereof, till it come all to one thinnesse, then holding the horse still fast bound, to cover all the place with great handfulls of Swines dung prepared for the purpose, and hold it to the sore place an houre together, untill the blood be stanch'd : Then let the Horse arise, and leade him into the Stable, tying him in such sort, that hee may neither rubbe his necke nor lye downe : then the next morning take good store of burnt Allome beate to powder, and strow it all over the sore place, and so let him stand for two daies : after without any stirring, least the wound should be ked againe : then at the end of these two daies you shall bathe the sore gently with a fine Linnen cloath, dipt in warme Urine, and then drying the sore, againe throw more burnt Allome upon it, and after appoint all about the out-side of the edges of the sore with *Unguentum Album Camphyratum*, more then an inch broad : thus you shall dresse him every day once on that side of the Crest which did fall : then for the contrary

trary side you shall draw his maine thereon, and plat it in many places: which done, you shal to those places with thongs of leather, fasten a cudgel of a foote and a halfe long: then to the middest of that cudgell you shall hang a peece of Lead with a hole in it, of such weight as will poize the Crest up even, and hold it in his right place: then shall you draw his Crest on that side the weight hangs with a hot drawing Iron, even from the top of the Crest, downe to the point of the shoulder, making divers stroakes one an inch and an halfe from another: Then shall you lay upon the burnt places a plaister of pitch, Tarre, and Rozen, molten together, and so let the waight hang till all the sore places bee healed, and there is no question but the Crest will stand both upright and strongly.

CHAP. XLIII:

*A certaine and approved way, how
to raise up the Crest that
is false.*

THe most infallible and certaine way to raise up, and to keepe when it is so risen a Crest that is false: Is first to raise up the false Crest with your hand, and to place it in such wise as you would have it, and it ought to stand: then having one standing on the same side the Crest falleth from, let him with one hand hold up the Crest, and with the other thrust out the bottome or foundation of the Crest, so as it may stand upright: then on that side

to which it falleth, with an hot Iron (somewhat broad on the edge) draw his necke first at the bottome of the Crest, then in the middest of the Crest, and lastly at the setting on of the haire, and be sure to draw it through the skinne, but bee sure no deeper, for this will enlarge and open the skinne.

Then on the other side (from whence the Crest falleth) gather up the skinne with your hand, and with two plaisters of Shoo-makers Waxe laid one against another at the edge of the wound, and with smooth splints so stay the skinne, that it may shrinke neither upward nor downward, then with a paire of sharpe Syzers clippe away all the spare skinne which you had gathereth up with your hand, then with a needle and some red silke, stitch the skinne together in divers places, and to keepe the skinne from breaking, stitch the edges of the plaster together also, then annoynt the sore with Turpentine, Honey and Waxe molten together, and the places which you drew with the hot Iron, with peece-grease made warme. And thus dee twice a day till all bee whole, and have great care that your splints shrinke nor.

CHAR

CHAP. XLV.

*Of the Mainginess in a horses
Maine.*

THE Mainginess which is in the Maine of a Horse, and maketh him shed his haire, proceedeth either from the ranknesse of blood, poverry, or lousinesse, or else of rubbing where a mangy horse hath rubbed, or else of fretting dust lying in the Maine for want of good dressing. The signes are, the apparent rubbing and itching of the horse about the Maine and Necke, and the scabbes fretting both the flesh and skin, besides the shedding and falling away of the haire. The cure (according to the opinion of some of our old Farriers) is, first let him blood on the necke-veine, and cut away all the haire from the scabbes, then with a hot Iron as bigge as a mans finger, seare all the sore place even from the one end to the other: Then annoynt all the place you so burnt with blacke Sope, and now and then wash it with strong Lye and blacke sope mixt together.

Other good Farriers for this manginess onely take of fresh grease one pound, of Quick-silver halfe an ounce, of Brimstone one ounce, of Rape oyle halfe a pint, mingle them together, and stirre them continually in a pot with a slice, untill the Quick-silver be so wrought with the rest, as you shall perceive no Quick-silver therein: that done take a blunt Knife, or an old horse-combe, and search all the mangy places therewith untill it bee raw and bloody, and then

anoynt it with this oyntment in the Sun-shine, if it may be, to the intent the oyntment may sinke in, or else hold before it either a hot fire-pan, or a hot bar of Iron, to make the oyntment melt into the flesh, and if you see that within three daies after thus once anoynting him hee leave not rubbing, then marke in what place he rubbeth, and dresse that place againe and questionlesse it will serve.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of the shedding of haire in the Maine.

HAire, for the most part sheddeth or falleth from the Maine of a horse by reason of certaine little Wormes which-eate and fret the roots of the haire asunder. The cure whereof is, first to anoynt the Main and creft with blacke sope, and then to make a strong lye either of running water and Ashe-ashes, or else of Vrine and Ashe-ashes, and with that to wash the Main all over, and it will helpe him.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of the paine and grieve in a horses Withers.

BOth a horses Withers and also to his backe, doe happen many infirmities and Sorranes, some proceeding from inward causes, as of the corruption of humours, and sometime of outward causes, as through the galling, pinching and wringing of some naughty Saddle, or some heavy burthen laid on the Horses backe, or such like : And of these griefes some bee small, and some bee great : The small are
only

only superficial Blisters, Swellings, Light-galls, or bruising, and are easily cured : but the great are those which pierce to the very bone, and bee most dangerous, especially if they bee nigh to the backe bone. Then to speake first of the smaller gallings whensoever you shall see any swellings to arise, either about your horses Withers, or any other part of his backe, the cure is (according to the opinion of some of the old Farriers) first of all if the place bee much swolne and festered, then to pierce it with a sharpe hot Iron in many parts on both sides of the neck, and then put into the same taints of Linnen cloath, dipt in warme sallet Oyle, and then after to dry and heale it up with the powder of honey and Lime mixt together.

Others use to rake Butter and Salt, and to boyle them together untill they be blacke, then to powre it hot on the swelling: and then to rake warme horse-dung, and lay it on the sore Back untill it be whole, dressing it once a day.

Others (especially the best of the ancient Farriers) use as soone as they see any swelling to arise, to binde unto it a little hot horse-dung, to see if that will assuage it; which if it will not, then to pricke it round about the swelling with a Fleime, Knife, or Lancer, yet not too deepe, but so as it may pierce the skin, and make the bloud issue forth : that done, take of Mallowes, or Smallage, two or three hand-fals, and boile them in running water untill they bee so soft as pappe : then straine the water softly from it, and bruise the hearbes in a traine dish, putting thereunto a little hogs grease, or else Sallet oyle, or Sheepes

Sheepes suet, or any other fresh greafe : boile them and stirre them together, not frying them hard, but as they be soft and supple : and then with a clout lay it warme upon the sore , renewing it every day once untill the swelling bee gone, for it will either drive it away or bring it to a head, which lightly chanceth not in these small swellings, except some Gristle or bone bee perished. Others of the ancient Farriers use, when they see any swelling to arise about a horses backe, first to shave the place with a Razor, and then to lay thereunto this plaister: take a little Wheate flowre, and the white of an egge beaten together, and spread it on a linnen clout, which being laid unto the swelling two or three daies, and not remooved will bring it to a head, and when you come to take it off, pull it away so softly as you can possible : and whereas you see the corruption gathered in a head together, then in the lowest place thereof, pierce it upward with a sharpe Iron somewhat hot, that the matter or corruption may come out, and forget not to annoynt the sore place every day once with fresh Butter or Hogges greafe untill it bee whole.

- 81 Others of our latter Farriers use when they see any swelling, onely to lay wet hay unto it, for that will either drive it away, or bring it unto a head, and then when it is broken, you shall lay upon it a plaister of wine lees, renewing it as often as it grows dry, & if your Lees be too thin, you may thicken them with Wheat flower : or if you like not this medicine, then you may make a plaister of thicke Barme, as great as the sore, and renew it once a day until the swelling be asswaged :

asswaged : but if you see that any corruption be knit together, then you shall Launce it in the nethermost part, and let out the matter : then wash the sore either with Vrine, Ale, or Beere, made scalding hot ; then dry up all the moysture from the sore, either with a linnen cloath, or with a sponge : then cover all the sore over with burnt Allome beaten to powder : And thus dresse the horse once a day untill the flesh be grown up so high as you would have it, then shall you dresse the sore but once in two or three dayes. But if you see it skinneth but slowly, then may you annoyat the edge of the sore all about after it hath beene washed as aforesaid, with *Vnguentum Album*, for that will make the skinne to come fast : but if you doe perceive that by dressing it too seldom there doth begin to grow any proud flesh, then shall you take a dram of Mercury, and mingle it with an ounce of *Vnguentum Album*, and annoyat all the sore places therewith once in two dayes : this will correct the proud flesh, and cause it to skin and heale suddenly.

Others use for the abating of these swellings, to boyle Mallowes in the grounds of Ale, and to clap it hot to the swelling : and if the swelling doe break wash it with pisse, and powre hot molten butter upon it. Others use to shave away the haire, and then to lay very hot upon it a handfull of Leekes stamped and mixt with Boares grease, or else to take a turfe of earth burnt red, & laid to as hot as the horse can suffer it. Others use to take netrles bearen to peeces, and mixt with hot urine, and so lay it on hot, and then set on the saddle : and then if after two or three dayes dressing

dressling the swelling breake, then looke if there be any dead flesh within the sore, and either eate or cut it out: then take a pound of fresh grease, and a pound of Sallet oyle, three ounces of white Waxe, one ounce of Turpentine, & three drams of Verdigrease, melt all these together, and raint the sore therewith till it be whole: for this will both eate away the ill flesh, and incarnate good. Others take greene Coleworts and stampe them with swines grease, and then lay it plaister-wise on the sore, and it will assuage it, especially if you ride the horse a little to make the medicine enter in. Now if there be no great swelling, but onely the skin chaffed off, then you shall wash the raw place with water and salt, or else with warme wine, and sprinkle upon it the powder of honey and lime: or else the powder of Myrre, or the powder of burnt silke, or felt, or cloath, or of any old poast.

Other Farriers use when onely the skin is gald off to take a spoonefull of thicke Creame, and to put as much Chimney soote unto it as will make it thicke like a oyntment, and then to lay it upon the sore, and questionlesse it will heale it presently if the wound be not very deep.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of any gald backe or Withers, how great soever the swelling or inflammation be.

IF the swelling, pinch, wringing, or gall, either upon the Withers, or any part of the backe of a horse be extraordinary great, and much inflamed, so that there

there is now no apparant hope that it can be got away without much Apostumation; then the cure, according to the opinion of the ancientest Farriers is, to take Barne, and mixe it with so much soote of a Chimney, and make it so thicke therewith, that it shall seeme like Tarre, and with that make a plaister, and lay it to the sore place, renewing it twice a day, and it will very suddenly both draw and heale it perfectly.

Others use to take a handfull of Bay salt, & a handfull of great and small Oate-meale, and put a quantiry of old Ale uring thereto, and stire them altogether, and temper it like pap or paste, and then make round balls thereof, then through them in a fire, and make them red hot, then take them forth and beate them to fine powder, and then strow of that powder all over the sore, so oft as you shal see any part thereof bare, & it will heale it. Other Farriers use if they see the swelling to be any thing great, first to draw round about the swelling with a hot Iron, and then crosse him with the same iron, in manner of



this figure: then take a round hot Iron, having a sharpe point, and thrust it up into the swelling on each side upwards towards the poynnt of the withers, or topp of the backe, to the intent that the matter may issue downewards at both the holes: then dont, taint both the holes first with a taint dipt in Hogges greafe to kill the fire, and also annoynt all the burnt places therewith, continuing so to doe untill the swelling be awaged, renewing the taint every day once untill the fiery matter bee fallen away:

way then taint him againe with washed Turpentine, mingled with the yolkes of three or foure eggs and saffron, renewing the taint every day once untill it be whole.

But if for all this the swelling doe not goe away, then it is a signe of some inward impostumation, and then it shall be good that you lance it, and let out the corruption: then take of Honey halfe a pint, of Verdigrease two ounces beaten to powder, and mixe it together with Honey, then boyle them in a pot untill they looke red, then being luke-warme, make either a taint or a plaister, according as the wound shall require, renewing the same every day once untill it bee whole. But the sore may bee so vehement, that for want of looking to in time, if it bee on the Withers, it will pierce downwards betwixt both the shoulders, even into the body, which is most dangerous and very mortall: therefore whensoever you shall feare any such hollownesse, you shall taint the hole with Salve last mentioned, and thrust after it a good peece of dry sponge, as well to keepe the hole open, as also to sucke out the corruption, and this you shall renew once a day untill the sore be whole.

Others of our late Farriers use to take Butter, Vineger, and bay salt, and melting them together, lay it to the sore warme untill it breake, then strow upon it either Soot or the powder of clay Wall; but if it be much festred, then take a pottle of Verjuyce, two peny-worth of Greene Copperus, and boyle it unto a pint and a halfe: then wash and search the hollownesse therewith, then fill the hole with red Lead, and

so let it remaine three daies untouched, then wash it with the same water againe, and fill the hole againe with red Lead, and so every other day wash it with that Water, and lay red lead thereon, and it will heale the sore backe whatsoever. Now all these medicines already rehearsed are sufficient enough for the healing of any gald backe whatsoever, yet forasmuch as divers Farriers hold divers opinions, and thinke what they know to be onely best approved, and in as much as you shall not be ignorant of any mans skill or Knowledge, which beareth any ground of reason in it, I will repeare you a Catalogue of other medicines which assuredly are all good in their kinds, and you may use them as occasion shall be administered.

First then know that the powder of Bryer leaves will dry and heale up any gald backe. Also Rye flower, the white of an Egge, Honey, Barley straw burnt and Soote, will dry up and heale a sore backe: The powder of Hony & unsleckt Lime will skin any gall: the powder of wilde Cowcumbes dried in an Oven will heale any gall, provided the sore be first washed with vinegar. Onions boyld in Water, and layd hot to a swolne horses backe, will asswade the swelling, and the yolke of an Egge, Salt, and Vineger beaten together, will heale it when it is broken, provided that you wash the sore first with Ale, wherein Rosemary hath beene sod. The Soote or grime of a brasie pot, the powder of the bone of a Cribfish, or the powder of Oyster-shells, any of these will dry and skin a gald backe.

Lastly (and besides it, a man needeth no more
medi-

medicines) for this purpose, take hiey and boyle it in strong Urine, and lay it to the swelled place, and it will either aswage it, or bring it to a head, then launce it, and let out the matter, then stop the hole with Rozen, Waxe, and fresh grease molten together, but if you find any dead flesh to grow within the sore, then cure it out either with Verdigrease beaten to powder, and strowed thereon, or else with *Mercury calcinan*, called of some *Precipitate*, being likewise strowed on the proud flesh; and when the proud flesh is gone, you may dry up the sore onely with the powder of Rozen, and nothing else. See further for this disease in the new Additions, for the Fistula marked thus: 13

CHAP. XLIX:

Of a Canker in the Withers of a horse.

IF a horse after hee hath been violently wrung upon the Withers, be suffered to go unlooked to, and that the sore breaketh upwards through its own violence, yet the great substance of the matter or corruption descending and rotting still downeward, it cannot chuse but breed to a Cankorous and vile Vicer, as dangerous as is any Fistula, which you shall know by these signes: First the matter that issueth from the sore, will be a sharpe, hot, and watrish, lye fretting the haire away where it runneth downe, and about the hole of the sore will bee a kinde of spongi-ous proud, dead flesh, which stoppeth the passage of the grosse matter. Now the cure of this cankerous sore is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers,

ers, to take a Razor, and cut open the hole of the ulcer, so that you may see into the hollownesse; then cut out all the dead flesh till you come to the quicke, then take a quart of old stale Vine, and put thereto a handfull of Salt: then boyle it wel on the fire, then having cleansed the sore eyther with a Cloath, or a Wispe of hay, wash it well with the Liquor: then take the yolkes of foure Egges, and a peny-worth of Verdigrease, and a spoenefull of flower, and make a playster thereof, and lay it to the sore, dressing him in this sort once a day until he be whole.

Others of our ancient and latter Farriers use to take of the strongest Beere a pint, put into it a quarter of a pound of Allome, and halfe a handfull of Sage, seeth it to the one halfe, then take out the Sage Leaves, and with the rest dresse the horse once a day, and it wil heale any raukerous sore in that part whatsoeuer.

CHAP. L.

*Of the Strickfast, or Sitfast hornes, or hard bones
growing under the Saddle.*

THESE Strickfasts, Sitfasts, or hornes that grow in a horses skin under the Saddle, is a certaine dead skin like a hard peece of Leather, growing fast into flesh: it cometh of some old bruise, which nor impostumating, the skin fallerth dead, and sticketh hard and fast to the flesh.

The cure is, take eyther a sharpe crooked instrument made for the purpose, or else a long nayle with the poynt turned inwards, and catching hold on the
Y edge

edge of the dead skin, or horne, which will clappe or rise from the sound skin, and with a sharpe knife cut away all the dead, hard skinne from the sound flesh: and if when it is cut out, the hollownesse be somewhat deepe, then you shall heale it up by powring hote molten Butter into it euening and morning; then when the flesh is made even, drye and skinne it either with the powder of Hony and Lime, or with Soote and Breamie mixt together, Others use first to annoynt the Stick fast or hard skinne with fresh Butter or Hogges grease, vntill it be mollified and made soft, so as you may either cut them, or pull them away; and then wash the wound eyther with mens urine, or with white Wine, and then drye it up with the powder of Oyster-shels, or of Bolearmonike.

CHAP. LI.

Of Wennes or Knobs growing about the Saddle skirts.

THe Wennes or knobs which grow about the saddle skirts, do most commonly grow betwixt too Ribs, and do ever proceede of old bruises. And the cure is; first to mollifie them by annoynting them twice or thrice a day with Hogges grease, for more then a weeke together, and sometimes to bathe them with hot Wine Lees: but if in that space it will come to no head, then Launce it from the middle downward, and taint it with washed Turpentine, yolkes of egges and Safron mingled as well together as is before shewed renewing the taint every day once, untill the

the sore be sufficiently and perfectly healed. Looke unto the cure for the Splint, and what cureth that, helpeth this.


CHAP. LII.
Of the Navel-gall.

THe Navel-gal is when a horse at any time is bruised on the top of the Chine of the backe, behind the Saddle, right against the Navell, whence it taketh the name: it commeth either by splitting of the Saddle behind, or for lacke of stuffing, or by meanes of the Crupper buckle sitting downe in that place, or through some hard Weight or knobs lying directly behind the Saddle: of all bruifings on the backe, it is the most vile and dangerous, and you shall perceive it by the puffed up and spongy flesh looking like old rotten Lights about the mouth of the sore. The cure thereof is, according to some of the ancient Farriers, first to cut away all the dead or proud flesh even to the bone, then burne a hole foure inches lower then the Navil-gall, and put a Rowel of horse haire through it: then take the powder of Oyster-shells, or of any old shooe-sole burnt, and strow it on the sore, and ever as it waxeth moyst, put on more powder.

Other Farriers for the Navel-gall take the white of an egge, wheate flower, hony mustard, and sope, of each like quantity, and mixing them together, make a playster thereof, and after the dead flesh is taken out, and the sore washt with Ale, Butter, and Urine, then lay on the playster: and if the proud flesh be-

gin to grow againe, then the powder of an old burnt shoe, or Nerve oyle, or Verdigrease, will kil it, and the powder of Oyster-shells will skin it. Other of the auncient Farriers use, after they have cut out al the Rotten and dead flesh, to take the white of an egge, and salt beaten together, and lay that plaister-wise to the sore upon a little Tow, renewing it once a day the space of two dayes, then take of hony a quartern of a pint, and of Verdigrease one ounce beaten into powder, and boyle them together in a pot, stirring it still until it looke Red, and being luke-warm, make a plaister with row, and clap it to the Wound, washing and cleansing well the Wound first with a little warm vinegar or white Wine, continuing so to do once a day untill it begin to heale and to skinne: then drye it up by sprinkling thereon this powder following: Take of honey a quartern, and as much of unsleckt Lime as will thicken the honey, and make it like a paste, and in a fire-pan over the fire, stirre it still untill it be hard baked, so as it may be beaten into powder: but ever before you throw on the powder wash the Wound first with warme Vineger, continuing so to do untill it be perfectly skinned. Others use to heale this Gal by laying on the sore, a plaister of Chimney soot and Barne mixt together, or else mixe Nettle seeds and Sallet oyle together, and annoynt the sore therewith.

There be others which use onely to wash the sore with warme Vrine and salt, and then annoynt the place with fresh grease and salt mixt together, or else to take of betony, powder of brimston, Elibor, pitch, and old grease, of each like quantity, and stamp them together,

together, and when you have washed the sore with old Urine, then annoynt it with this oynment until it be whole. See also for this disease in the new Additions for the Fistula, thus marked 

CHAP. LIII.

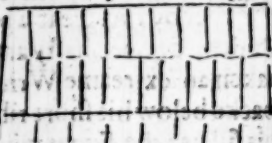
Of the Smaying in the backe.

A Horse is said to be swaid in the backe, when either by too great a burthen; or by some slippe, straine, or over-hasty and straight turning, he hath taken an extreame Wrinch in the lower part of his backe below his short ribbes, and directly betweene his fillets: the signes whereof are a continual reeling and rouling of the horses hinder parts in his going, and also he will folter many times, and sway sometimes backwards, and sometimes sidelong, and bee ready to fall even to the ground, besides, the horse being laid, will with a gear deal of difficulty rise up againe.

The cure, according to the opinion of the old Italian Farriers, is, to take of the fat of the fruite of the Pine-tree two ounces, of Olibanum three ounces, of Rozen foure ounces, of Pitch foure ounces, of Bole-armonicke one ounce, and of *Sanguis Draconis* half an ounce: incorporate all these well together, and lay it playsterwise all over the Reines of the horses backe, not taking it by any means away until it fall off.

Others of our owne Farriers use first to cover the horses back with a sheeps skinne comming hot from the Sheepes backe, laying the fleshy side next to his backe

backe, and then lay a warm housling cloath upon the same, to keepe his backe as hot as may be, and so let it continue untill it begin to smell: then take the old skin away, and apply a new unto it, continuing so to doe the space of three weekes, and if he amend not with this, then draw his backe with a hot Iron right out on both sides of the ridge of his backe, from the pitch of the buttrecke, unto a handfull within the saddle: and then againe over-thwart, according to this figure, and let every Line be an inch one from another, neither let the stroke be deep, and burned



no more then that every one may looke yellow: then lay upon the burning this charge or plaister: take of Pitch one pound, of Rozen halfe a pound, of Bole-armonick halfe a pound made into powder, and half a pint of Tarre, and boyle all these together in a pot, and stirre it till everything be molten and thoroughly mingled together, then being luke-warme, daube all the burning therewith very thick, and thereupon elap as many flockes of the horses colour as you can make to abide on, and remove it not before it fall away of it selfe: and if it be in Summer you may turne the horse to grasse.

CHAP. LIV.

Of speciall weaknesse in the backe.

According to the opinion of our oldest Farriers, (though my selfe have taken little notice of the infirmity) there is another kinde of weaknesse belonging

ging to a horses backe, which they call the fretting or biting of the Reines, which doth proceede from abundance of humours resorting to that place, whereby all the hinder parts of the horse doe loose their feeling and strength, and such Horse falleth downe to the ground: yea, and the humours many times resorting to the heart, do suffocate the same, and in two or three houres doe cause the Horse to dye. The cure, according to the opinion, is first to let the horse blood abundantly in the necke-veine, and to draw his backe with a hot Iron, in such sort, as is declared in the last Chapter; and then to make him swim a pretty while in some River: then Rowel him upon the haunches heere unto the huckle bones, and then to annoint the sore place with Hogs grease, and three leaved Grasse stamped together untill he be whole.

CHAP. LV.

Of the swelling of the Cods or Stomach.

THIS kinde of swelling or inflammation of the Cods commeth either by some wound received, or by the stinging, or else biting of some venomous beast, or else by some great strain either in running or leaping, or by the biting of one horse with another. The cure is, according to the opinion of the most ancient *Italian Farriers*, first to bathe the Cod with water, wherein hath been sodden the rootes of wild Cowcumber and Sale, and then to annoint it with an oynment made of oyle, Goats grease, and

the white of an Egge, or else to bathe the Cod in warme water, Nitrum, and Vineger mingled together, and also to bee annoynted with an oynment made of Chalk, or of Potrass earth, Oxedung, Comin, Water and Vineger mingled together: or else to be annoynted with the iuyce of the Hearbe called *Night-shade*, or with the iuyce of *Healocks*, which grows on dunghils: and if neede require, to let him blood on the flanke veines. But our latter Farriers, who hold that this Disease cometh ofttest after some sicknesse or furseit with cold, being a sign of amendment from that sicknesse, doth cure it in this sort: take of Beane flower, Wheat-meale, Comin, and hogges grease, of each like quantiry, and making a plaister thereof, spread it all over the Horses cods and stones. Others boyle Groundsel in Wine Vineger, and so bathe the horses cods therewith: or else take a quart of good Ale wort, and set it on the fire with crummes of browne Bread strongly leavened, and better then a handfull of Commin made into powder: then with beane flower make a plaister of them al, and apply it to the grieve as hot as can be suffered: or if this helpe not, take Cowes dung, and seeth it in milke, and lay it upon the swelling as hot as may bee, and it wil assuage it. But if this inflammation proceed from ranknesse of Seede, which you shall see by the much moyst Sliminesse of his yard, then you shall first make him cover a Mare, then keepe him without Provender, and let him blood above the great veine, which is betweene his lippes, and lay thereto hard Egges, beaten in his owne dung, and make a plaister of the same and lay it

to his Cods, and once a day wash his Cods with cold water.

Other ancient Farriers use to let the Horse blood in his flanke-veines, and then take of oyle of Roses and of Vineger, of each halfe a pint, of Bolearmonicke halfe a quarterne beaten to powder, mixe them together in a cruze, and being like warme annoynt the cods therewith, with two or three feathers brought together, and the next day ride him into the water, so as his Coddes may be within the water, giving him a turne or two therein; and so returne faire and softly home unto the stable, and when the horse is dry, annoynt him againe as before, and doe this every day untill the Horse be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which hold that this disease may come by means of evil humours and corrupt blood, which reformeth the Cod, and then the cure is to cover all the Coddes over with a charge made of Bolearmonicke and vineger wrought together, renewing it every day once untill the swelling goe away, or that it breake of it selfe, and if it breake, then to faine it with *Ungt. Resinum*, and make him a bretch of Canvas to keepe it in, renewing the faine every day once untill it be perfectly well.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVI.

Of incording, or bursting, or the rupture
in horses.

THis Rupture, as our old Farriers call it, this incording or burstinesse in horses, is when the rim or thin skin which holdeth the guts up in a horse's body is broken, so that the guts falleth downe either into the Cods of the horse, or into the horse's flanke, as I have seene divers. Now this burstinesse cometh either by some stripe or blow of another horse, or else by some straine in leaping over a Hedge or a Ditch, or by teaching a horse to bound when hee is too young, or when a Horse getteth himselfe upon some pole or stake, or by forcing a horse when hee is full to run beyond his strength, or by stopping a horse too suddainly upon naughty and hollow ground, whereby the straddling and slipping of his hinder foot, may stretch or tear the skin.

The signes to know this Sorraunce before it be apparant to the eye, are: the Horse will forsake his meate, and stand shoaring, or leaning alwayes on that side that hee is hurt, and on that side, if you search with your hand, betwixt the stone and the thigh, upward to the body, and somewhat above the stone, you shall finde the guts it selfe big and hard in the feeling: Whereas on the other side you shall finde no such thing.

Now for the cure, although for mine owne part,

I both do and shal ever hold it incurable, as long as a horse is a beast without reason, yet for your satisfaction I will not sticke to repeat what the best Farriers, and my selfe have practised, in as much as it worketh much good, though no absolute cure.

The cure then is, to bring the horse into some house or place which hath over head a strong baulke or beame going over-thwart, and strow that place thicke with straw, then put on foure strong pasternes with foure rings on his teete, and fasten one end of a long rope to one of those rings, then threede all the other rings with the loose end of the rope, and so draw all his foure seer together, and cast him on the straw, that done, cast the rope over the Baulke, and hoyst the horse so as he may lye flat on his back, with his legges upward without strugling; then bath his stones well with warme water and butter molten together, and the stones beeing somewhat warme and well mollified, raise them up from the body with both your hands, being closed by the fingers close together, and holding the stones in your hands in such manner, worke downe the gut into the body of the horse, by striking it downwards continually with your two thumbes, one labouring immediately after another, untill you perceive that side of the stone to bee so small as the other: and so having returned the gut into his right place, take a list of two fingers broad, thoroughly anoynted with fresh Butter, and rye his stones both together with the same, so high the body as may be, yet not over hard, but so as you may put your finger betwixt: that done, take the horse quietly downe, and leade him gently into

into the stable, where he must stand warme, and not be stirred for the space of three Weekes; but forget not the next day, after you have placed his gut in his true place, to unloose the Lint and to take it away, and as well at that time, as every day once or twice after, to cast a dish or two of cold water up into his cuds, and that will make him to shrink up his stones, and thereby restraine the Gut from falling downe; and at the three weekes end, to make your cure so much the surer, it were not amisse to geld the Stone on that side away, so shall he hardly be burthen againe on that side: and during the cure, let him not eate much, nor drinke much, and let his drinke be alwaies warme.

CHAP. LVII.

Of the Botch in the groin of a Horse.

IT is the opinion of the best Horse-leaches, that if a grosse horse which is full of humours, bee suddenly and violently laboured, that then the humours will resort into the weakest part, and there gather together and breede a botch, and specially in the hinder parts betwixt the Thighes, not farre from the Cuds. The signes are, the hinder legges will be all swolne, specially from the Cambrels or hooftes upward, and if you feele with your hand you shal finde a great knob or swelling, and if it be round and hard, it wil gather to a head.

The cure according to the general practice is, first to ripen it with this plaister, take of wheate flower, of Turpentine, and of honey of each like quantiry, stirring

ring it together to make a stiffe playster: and with a cloath lay it to the sore, renewing it once every day untill it breake or waxe soft: and then launce it, so as the matter may runne downeward, then taint it with Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together, renewing it every day once, untill it be perfectly whole.

CHAP. LVIII.

*A most certaine and approved Cure for
the Botch in the Groine, or any
Impostumation.*

AS soone as you perceive the swelling to appeare, lay upon it a playster of Shoee-makers Waxe spread upon Allome Leather, and let it lye untill the sore grow soft: then oper it with a Lancer, or let it breake of it selfe: when the filth is come out, wash the sore very well with strong Allome Water, then taint it with the oyntment called *Egyptiacum* till it be whole.

CHAP. LIX.

*Of the Itch, Scab, or Manginess in the Tayle, or
generall falling of the haire.*

HORSES, through the corruption of blood, or the fulnesse of ranke feeding, or through overheating and labouring, or by the infection of other horses, do many times get the generall scab, itch, or manginess in the taile, and sometimes in the Spring times horses are often troubled with the Truncheon Wormes

wormes in their fundament, which will make them rub their tayles, and fret the haire, yet are free both from mange and scurfe. Wherefore if then you only take the horse with your hand annoynted with sope, and pull out the wormes, you shall cause the horse to leave his rubbing: but if you perceive the haire to shed and fall from the Tayle, through some small wormes that growes at the rootes of the haire, or through some little fretting scurfe, then you shall annoynt all the taile with sope even to the ground, and then wash it with very strong lye after, and that will both kill the wormes, and skoure out the scurfe: but if much of the tayle be false away, then you shall keepe the tayle continually wet with a sponge dipt in faire water, and that will make the hayre to grow very fast. Now if in the horses tayle shall grow any Canker, which will consume both the flesh and bone, and make the joynts to fall away one by one, then you shall Wash all his tayle with *Aqua fortis*, or strong Water made in this sort. Take of Greene Copperus and of Allome, of each one pound, of white Copperus a quarterne, boyle all these together in three quarts of running Water, in a very strong earthen pot, vntill the one halfe be consumed: and then with a little of this Water being made luke-warme, Wash his tayle with a little clout, or flaxe bound to the end of a sticke, continuing so to do every day once, till it be whole. But if as I said before, through the corruption of blood, food, or labour, this scab, itch, or manginess, spread universally into many parts of the tayle, you shall then likewise wash it with the same strong water vntill it be whole

but, not to read **CHAP. LX.**

*Of the generall Scab, Manginess, or Leprosie,
over the whole body.*

THe generall Manginess or Leprosie, which run-
neih all over the horses body, is a cankered filthy
scurfe which covereth the same, proceeding from
abundance of melancholy corrupt blood, ingen-
dred by infection or unwholsome food, or else by
indiscreete Labour. The signes whereof are, the
horse will be all mangy, and covered over with a
white filthy scurfe, full of scabs, and raw plots about
the necke and flankes, and evil favoured to looke
on, and rubbing, scratching, and biting: Of all
Diseases there is none more infectious, nor will
more certainly kil a horse if it be not prevented.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of skilfull
Farriers, is first to let the horse blood in the one side
of the necke veine, and within two dayes after on the
other side of the necke, and within two dayes after
that, in the flank veines, and last of all in the veine
vnder the taylor: then Wash all the sore places with
Salt brine, and rubbing them hard with a Wispe of
straw hard twisted, so as they may bleed well and be
all raw: that done, annoint the places with this oynt-
ment, take of Quicke silver one ounce, of Hogges
grease one pound, of Brimstone beaten into powder
a quarterne, of Rape oyle a pint, mingle these things
well together, vntill the Quick-silver be thoroughly
incorporated with the rest, and having annoynted
all the raw places with this oyntment, make it to
sinke into the flesh, by holding and Waving uppe
and

and downe over it, a hore broad bar of Iron, and then touch him no more againe the space of two or three dayes: durring which time, if you see that he rubbeth still in any place, then rub that place againe with an old horse-combe, or a haire-cloath, to make it Raw, and annoint it with fresh oynment. But if all this will not helpe, then with a hot Iron round & blunt at the point, so big as a mans little finger, burne al the mangy places, making round holes, passing onely through the skin and no further: for which intent it shal be needful to pul the skinne first from the flesh with your left hand, holding it still untill you have thrust the hot iron through it, and let every hole be a span one from another, and if neede be you may annoynt those holes with a little sope, and let the horse bee very thinne dyeted, during this curing time.

Now for mine owne part, I do utterly dislike this burning, for it is a fule manner of cure, and breedeth much eye-fore in the horse, and therfore other of our latter Farriers use for this disease, after the horse is let bloud in the necke veine, to take a good quantity of fresh grease, and mixe it well with the powder of Chalke, then put thereto a good quantity of the powders of Brimstone and Elicampagne Rootes, and stirre them all wel together, then take a pretty quantity of Quick-silver, and kill it with your fasting spittle, or sallet oile, and mixe it with all the rest very wel together, and so annoint all the sore places about the horse with this oynment. Others use to take of Lampe oyle, the fine powder of Brimstone, of blacke sope, of Tar, of hogs grease, and the soot of a Chimney,

ney, of each like quantity, and then mixe them all well together, by boyling them on the fire, and then annoynt all the sore places therewith, as hot as the Horse can endure or suffer it, alwayes provided that the horse be let blood before you use the oyntment.

Others use after the horse is let blood, to take of oyle de Bay a pound, and of Quick-silver one ounce, and mixing them together, never leave stirring thereof, till the Quick-silver bee kil'd and incorporated with the oyle, then annoint al the sore places therewith, after you have made them raw by rubbing them.

Other Farriers use first to let the horse blood, then to wash all the sore places within two dayes after, with water wherein young Broom, or the hearbe of Arsmarr hath beene wel sod in, and finally chopt and mixt with a little soote, and rub him well untill the sore places bleed; then take a pound of blacke Sope, a pottle of keene Mustard, foure peny worth of Brimstone made into powder, three peny worth of Quick-silver well killed with fresh greafe, two penyworth of Verdigreafe, a quarter of a pint of greafe, stir all these together in a vessell till the greafe and other things be molten with labour, and without fire, and therewithall annoint all the sore places, and with once anointing, and twice washing, this will cure him.

Other Farriers use, if the horse be young, to let him blood on both sides the necke, and then to cut the skinne downe the midst of his fore-head, two fingers in length, then with a cornet open the skin an

inch wide on both sides the sicke, and put therein thin slices of the greene roote of *Bleuimpine*, or *Angelica*, which is beeter: so let them remaine under the skinne till the matter sod; then crush it forth after two or three dayes, and in twelve dayes the rootes wil fall out as it healeth, and this wil cure the Mange, provided; that you annoynt all the sore places with the powder of brimstone, verdigrease, and oyle olive, mixt upon a fire very well together. Others use after blood-letting, to rowell the horse under the necke, that the evill humours may issue forth, then to rubbe all his body quite over with an hard haire cloath, or an old curry combe, until the horse bloudeth: after that take of Sulphure, Salt, and Tartar, of each a like quantity, beate them and temper them with very strong vinegar, and as much common oyle, and therewith annoynt all the sore places: or else take very strong Wine vinegar, the urine of a boy under twelve yeares of age, and the joyce of Hemlocke, mixe them together, and wash the Horse therewithall.

Other Farriers use after blood-letting, to annoynt the horse with one of these Oynments, the sore having bin before rubbed till it bleed, either with brimstone, Oyle, Vineger, Salt, Soote, Swines dung, and unsteackd Lime, of each like quantity, well mixt and boyled together, or else with brine Water sod with nettles, or else with Vineger, Allome, and Salt niter, boyled together, or else wash the sore with Beefe-broath, then boyle Pepper beaten to powder, Verdigrease, and Chervel in fresh grease, and annoynt the horse all over therewith, holding a Chaffin-dish and

and coales, or a hot bar of Iron to his body, to make the oynement sinke in.

Lastly, And as good as any of the rest, after the horse hath bin let blood, take an old curry combe, or a wool card, and rub every fore place about the horse till it bleed, then take of the oldest pisse you can get, a pottle, and of Greene Copperus three quarters of a pound; mixe and stir them well together; then set them on the fire, and boyle them a while, then as hot as the horse can suffer it wash him with the same: after his washing is a little dried, take of oyl one ounce and a halfe, of Quicke-silver two ounces, of white *Elchorus* one ounce, with a good quantity of Swines greafe, mingle all these well together, till no part of the Quick-silver can be seene, and then annoynt the horse all therewith: and if the first time doe not cure him, the second will most assuredly, provided that during the time of cure you keepe the Horse with a very thin dyer.

CHAP. LXI.

Two most excellent and approved medicines (especially the latter) for the foulest Gang, or Deprosie, that can possibly happen to any horse.

TAKE Hogges greafe, Bay-salt, Wormwood, and Rew of each a pretty quantity, stampe them together wel in a mortar, and when it is brought to one enyre salve, Roppe it hard into the horses Eares, then either bind them up, or sutch them together, that the medicine may not fall out: and do thus three or foure dayes together, and it will not onely

cure the Mangy, but any soyle Farcy what so ever.

The second medicine, and most assured for the Mangy is, to take fresh greate, and yellow or white *Arsnike*, and mixe them very well together till it come to a pale yellow salve, then your horse having bin let blood, and all the scurfe taken away, either with an old curry combe, or such like hard thing, so as the sore places may lye raw, then annoint them all over with this oynment, and let the horse stand so tyed, that hee may by no meanes touch any part of his body with his mouth, and when he hath stood thus two or three howes, then take old Urine warmed, and wash away al the oynment, and then give the horse his meate: thus dresse the horse twice or thrice at the most, and it is sufficient for any Mange what so ever.

CHAP. LXII.

How to know when a horse halteth before, and in what part his griefe is.

There is nothing more necessary for any mans understanding, that shall have occasion at any time to use a horse, especially for the skilfull Farrier then to know the reason why a horse halteth, and where the griefe remained, as well because those griefes lye most concealed, as also because our Kingdome is so very full of subtil unconscionable horse-courers, that they are carefull most to conceale that which may soonest cozen their Neighbours: you shall know then that no horse halteth before, but his griefe must bee either in his shoulders, in his legs,

or

which is seen; it is to be in the shoulder, if man either be on the toppe of his shoulder blades, which we call the Withers, or at the bottome of the shoulder blade joining to the marrow-bone, which is the fore pitch of the breast, with the Elbow of the horse, which joyned the nether end of the marrow-bone and the leg together.

Now for the generall knowledge whether the griefe be in the shoulder or no, to see if the horse doe lift up his legges, but traileth it upon the ground, then it is in the shoulder and is a new hurt; if hee cast his legges more but in his going then the other, and that almost with an unbended knee, then it is also in the shoulder, and it is an old hurt: if you take him by the headstall of the bridle, and turne him as short as you can possible of both hands, if then you see him when hee is turned on the same side, to favour his legges very much (as hee cannot chuse but doe) then also his griefe is in his shoulder: or if when a horse standeth in the stable, hee stretcheth out his fore leg, and stretcheth it more forward then the other, it is partly a signe the griefe is in the shoulder, but not absolutely.

Now when you know generally that the griefe or paine is in the shoulder, then you shal learne to know in what part of the shoulder, as this: if the horse halteth more when the rider is upon his back, then when he is off, then the griefe is in the top of the Withers: if when with your hand you gripe and handle him upon the top of the shoulder blades, you finde that he shrinketh much, and offereth to bite at you (not having any gald backe before, for that

may deceive you, then assuringly the griefe is on the Withers. If the horse geth bowing upon the ground and tread his steps very thicke, then it is a signe the griefe is in his breast, betweene the mother part of the spine, bone, and the upper part of the quincow-bone, and therefore if with your thumb you press him hard in that part, you shal see him shrink, and be ready to fall downe.

Now if when you take his Elbow in your hand between your finger and your thumb, and gripe it, the horse presently taketh his foote from the ground and lifts up his legges, offering therewithall to bite or snappe at you, then the griefe is onely in the Elbow.

Now if the griefe whereof a horse hath bee in his legges, it is either in his Knee, in his Shanke, or else in the Pastorne joynt: If it be either in his knee or Pastorne joynt, hee will not bow them in his going like the other, but will goe very stiffly upon them: If the paine or griefe be in the Shanke, then it is by meanes of some Splent, scrow, Windegall, or such apparant griefe, most apparant to bee beheld.

Now if the grife of his halting be in his foot, then it is cyther in the Cronet, in the Heele, in the Toe, in the quarters, or in the sole of the foote; if it bee in the Cronet, either the griefe will be apparant, the skinne being broken or swolne some manner of way, or else laying your hand upon the Cronet it will barne and glow exceedingly, and then hee hath got some straine of the joynt within the hoofe: if it bee in the Heele, as by over-reach, or otherwise, then

it is to be seene, and he will tread altogether upon the toe: if upon any of the quarters, which is to be understood from the middle-hoofe to the heele, then going on the edge of a banke or Hilly ground, he will halt more then on the plaine ground, and by the horses comming towards you, and going from you upon such edge or banke, you shal perceive whether his grieve be in the inward quarter or outward quarter: Also hee may halt upon his quarters by the pricking of a Nayle, and then you shal with a paire of pinsons nippe the head of every Nayle and his Hoofe together, and where he complaineth there draw the Nail, and if the Nayle sink, then there is his paine: If hee halt in the toe, which is seldome or never seene, then he will tread altogether upon his heele: If his grieve be in the Sole of his Foote, as by the treading upon some rayle or stub, or by surbaying or such like, then he will halt all after one sort, upon any ground whatsoever, unless it be upon the stone, and then he will halt the most.

Now to be sure in what part of the foot the grieve is, it shall be good, first to make him goe upon the plaine ground, and then upon a hard and stony way, and after upon a Bancky grasse, and by taking careful notes, and carefully handling him, you shal easily see of what member he halseth.

CHAP. XLII

*Of halting behind, and where the
griefe is.*

IF a Horse halt behinde, his griefe of necessity must
eyther bee in his hippe. (of some called the huckle
bone) or in the stiffe, in the Hough, in the Hamme,
in the Legge, in the nether joynt, in the pastorne, or
in the foote. If hee halt in the hip of any new hurt,
the Horse will go side. l. ng, and not follow so well
with thar Legge as with the other, neither will he be
able to turne upon thar side without much fayou-
ring of his Legge: But if it be any old hurt, then the
fore lippe will shrinke, and be lower then the other,
and it is best seene when he goeth up a hill, or upon
the edge of some Banke, so as the worse Legge may
goe on the higher side, for then hee will be re to
much the more, becaule it is very painful unto him
to go so unevenly wrinching his Legge: if the griefe
bee in the stiffe, then the Horse in his going wil cast
the stiffe joynt onward, and the bone on the inside
will be somewhat bigger then the other, neither can
hee any more then touch the ground with his toe:
if his griefe be in the hough, then it is by means of
some Spaven, which is apparant both to bee seene
and felt, or else of some straine or blow: and then
the swelling will most evidently appaare: And
the like is to bee said of the Hamme, wherein may
be seene the Sellander, or such like apparant Sor-
rance, causing the Horse to halt: If the griefe be
eyther

either in the Legges, Pasternes, or Foote, you shall finde
it by such signes as have bin taught you in the former
Chapter.

Now observe the signes which I have taught you
to observe. **CHAP. LXIII.** How to know if a horse have any hidden griefe
in him that maketh him to halt, when he cometh to trauaile, and
whence it proceedes.

NOW for as much as there are some horses which
through long rest and running at Grasse, will
weare out the worst of their griefes, so that when
they come to bee suddenly ridden they will cover
their halting, and through a naturall awe they beare
up the man, will, whilst he is on their backs, good
as if they were as sound as might bee, yet bee truly
of themselves very imperfect in this case, both to
keepe your selfe from courzening, and to discover the
most hidden infirmity, you shall first take the horse
out of the stable in a long string, and causing one to
runne him in his hand, at the length of the halter,
marke how he sets downe his Legs, for if any be im-
perfect, then that he wil favour: but if at first he goe
upright, and favour no Leg, then take his back and
ride him a while roundly up and downe a rode, then
light from his back, and let him stand stil an hour,
then as before, let him be runne in a mans hand, at
the halters length, without any man on his backe:
and beleeve it is a most certaine rule, if he have the
least griefe that may be, he wil then shew it, and fa-
your

your that limbe which is most pained or grieved: for by this rule onely are many bad Horse-courfers discovered.

Now to know whereof these griefes proceede, you shall understand that if the griefe proceede of a hot cause, then the horse halseth most when he travelleth or is chaste. But if it proceed from cold causes, then he halseth most when he is cold, and least when he is hot and much travailed.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the griefe and pinching in the shoulde.

THE griefe or pinching of the horses shoulde, cometh either by labouring and straining the horse too young, or by the carriage of too great burthens. It is to be knowne by the narrowesse of the breast, and by the Consumption of the flesh of the shoulde, in so much that the fore part of the shoulde-bone will sticke out and bee much higher then the flesh, and if it bee of any longer continuance, he will be very hollow upon the Brisket toward the fore-boorthes, and hee will goe wider beneath at the feete then at the knees. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to make a slit of an inch long, with a sharpe knife, upon both sides, an inch under the shoulde-bone, and blowing the skinne well from the flesh, with a Swannes quill, both of the one and the other shoulde, even up to the top of the Withers, and stroaking the Winde up equally with your hand, into both the shoulde, and then when they are full, sticke the Windy places

places with a Hazel sticke over all the shoulder; then loosening the skinne from the flesh againe, Rowell both the flits, either with rampins of horse haire, or with round peeces of the upper Leather of an olde shoe, with a hole in the midst, which is called a French Rowel, for the matter to issue forth at; and let the rampins bee at least two handfulls long in the skinne, and the round Rowell at least three inches broad, and being so put as they may lye plaine and flat within the cut, then once a day you shall turn the Rowels in the skin, and thrust out the matter: but if the hole grow so straight that the matter cannot easily come out with a sharpe knife you shall enlarge it, then put a paire of Pastornes on his fore-legges, and so let him stand fifteene dayes, at the end whereof walke him abroad, and try how hee goeth, and if he doe not goe to your liking, then continue him in the same manner other fifteene dayes, and he will go sound.

But our best Farriers use, after they have Rowelled the horse, as is afore-said, then to lay this charge or plaster all over his withers, shoulders, and breast: take of Pitch and Rozen, of each a pound, of Tar halfe a pint, boyle all these together in a pot, and when it is somewhat cooled, take a sticke with a wollen cloth bound to the end of it, and dip it into the charge, and cover or daube all the shoulder therewith: that done, clap flaxe of the colour of the horse (or as neare as you can get it) upon the charge, and every other day make your Rowels cleane, and put them in againe continuing thus to doe the space of fifteene dayes; then take out the Rowels, and heale up the wounds with

with two pintes of flaxe dip in Turpentine and hoggs grease molten together, renewing the same every day once, untill the Wounds be whole, but let the charge lye still untill it fall away of it selfe; and if you let the horse runne at graffe til he have had a Frost or two, there is no question but he wil be a great deale the fonder.

There bee other Farriers which use to Rowel the Horse, as it afore-said, yet crosse-wise, that is, one overr-rhwart the other, then draw all the shoulder over, with a hot drawing Iron in the comliest wise you can, making many scrotches downe his shoulder, then annoynt both them and the Rowels once a day with sweete Butter, and walke the Horse up and downe evening and morning, that the humours may flow to the sore places, and issue forth, and with your hands once a day, at the least, thrust out the matter: this cure is likewise to be continued the space of fifteene dayes, and then the horse wil be whole: yet for mine owne part, in so much as the cure is foule, I doe not much effect it.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the wrench in the shoulder.

THe Wrench or straine in the shoulder, commeth of some dangerous slipping or sliding, either in the Stable or abroad, or of too suddaine stopping, when a horse gallops, or by falls, either on the planks, or on slippery ground, or by too suddain turning on unsure ground, or by going too rashly out of some doore, or by the stroake of another Horse, you shall perceive

perceive it by his trailing his legge upon the ground close after him.

The cure is, to let him blood upon the plat-veine, and take away the quantity of three pintes of blood, which blood you must save in a pot, and put therunto, first of strong vineger a quart, and halfe a dozen broken egges, shels and all, and so much wheate flower as will thicken all the liquor; that done, put thereunto of *Bolcarmanicke* beaten into fine powder a pound, of *Sanguis Draconis*, two ounces, and mingle them together so as the flower may not be perceived, and if it be too stiffe, you may adde a little more vineger; then with your hand daube all the shoulder from the maine downward, and betwixt the fore-be-wels all against the haire, and let not the horse depart out of that place, untill the charge be fully fastned unto the skinne; that done, cary him into the stable, and tye him up to the racke, and suffer him not to lye downe all the day, and give him a little meate, dyeting him very moderately the space of fifteene dayes, during which time he may not stir out of his place, but onely to lye downe; and every day once refresh the shoulder point with this charge, laying still new upon the old; and at the fifteen dayes end leade him abroad to see how he goeth, and if he be somewhat amended, then let him rest without travelling the space of one month, and that will bring his shoulder to perfection: But if hee mend nothing at all, for all this that is done, then you shall rowel him, as is before shewed in the former Chapter, just upon the shoulder point, and so keepe him rowelled the space of fifteene dayes,

not

not forgetting to stir the Rowell, and cleanse the Wound each other day, and then walke him up and downe faire and softly, and turne him alwayes on the contrary side to the sore: And when hee goeth upright pull out the rowell, and heale up the wound with Turpentine and hogs grease molten together, as is before said.

But if all this will not serve, then it shal be very requisite and needfull to draw him Chequor wise with a hot Iron, over all the shoulder poynt, and also to make him to draw in a Plough every day, two or three houres at the least, to settle his joynts, for the space of three weekes or a month: & if any thing will helpe, these two last remedies will set him sound.

Now there be other Farriers which for this griefe first let the horse blood in the breast-veine, and then rowell him from the neather part of the spade-bone, downe to the poynt of the shoulder, which done, you shall set a patten shooe upon the sound foote, and so turne the horse to grasse for the space of a month, not forgetting every other day to stir and remoove the rowels, and so thrust out the matter: Then as soon as you see him goe sound, you shall take off his patten shooe, and pul out the rowels and then let him run still at grasse, til he have taken a frost or two, and no doubt but he will continue sound.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of the Wrench in the necker joynt.

THis wrench cometh by treading his foote in some hole, or in some rough or stony way. The signes whereof are chiefly these, the horse will halt, and the toppe of his backe upon the poynts of his shoulder will bee swolne, and somewhat hard to handle.

The cure is, take of blacke Sope halfe a pound, and having made it hot in a pan, take a handfull or two of Tow, and dip it into the sope, then lay it very hot over all the horse Withers, then clap a plaister of Waxe, Turpentine, and hogges greafe molten together over it, then cover it with two or three warme cloathes, and keepe the joynts as warme as may be: thus let him stand twenty foure houres ere you dresse him againe, and continue this manner of dressing for fiftene dayes, and the horse will goe soundly.

Now there be other ancient Farriers, that instead of this blacke Sope will take Wine Lees, and Wheate flower mingled together, and making a plaister thereof, lay it very hot to the grieved place, and so renew it once a day untill the horse goe sound.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of splaitting the shoulder, or of shoulder torne.

THe splaiting of the shoulder, is when by some dangerous slippe or slide, either upon the side of some banke, or upon the plaunchers, the horse hath his shoulder parted from his breast, & so leaves an open clift, not in the skin, but in the flesh and film next the skin, whereby the horse halteth and is not able to goe; it is to be seene by the trailing of his leg after him in going.

☞ The cure whereof is thus; first put a paire of strait pastornes on his fore-feete, keeping him still in the stable without disquieting of him; then take of *Diathea* one pound, of Sallet oyle one pint, of oyle de Bay halfe a pound, of fresh butter halfe a pound; melt all these things together in an earthen pot, and annoynt the grieved place therewith, and also round about the inside of the shoulder; and within two or three dayes after, both that place and all the shoulder will swell, then either pricke him with a Launcet or Fleame in al the swelling places, or else with a sharpe hot Iron, and then annoynt it still with the oyntment before said; but if you see that it will not goe away, but swel stil, and gather to a head: then launce it where the swelling doth gather most, and is softest under the finger, and then taint it with flaxe dipt in Turpentine, and Hogs grease molten together as is before shewed, renewing the taint twice a day till the sorrhance be whole.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIX.
Of the Shoulder pighte.

THe shoulder pighte is, when a horse by reason of some great fall, rush, or straine, hath the poynt of his shoulder thrust out of joynt, which is easie to bee seene in that the point of the sore shoulder will sticke out much farther then the other, and the horse will halt downe right. The cure whereof as the old Farriers hold it, is first to make him swimme in a deepe water, up and downe a dozen turnes, for that will make the joynt returne into his true place, then make two tough pins of Ashen wood as much as your little finger, being sharpe at the points, each one five inches long; that done, slit the skin an inch above the poynt, and an inch beneath the poynt of the shoulder, and thrust in one of the pinnes from above downe-ward, so as both ends may equally sticke with the skinne, and if the pinne of wood will not easily passe through, you may make it way first with an Iron pinne; that done, make other two holes crosse to the first holes, so as the other pinne may crosse the first pinne right in the midst, with a right crosse, and the first pinne would be somewhat flat in the midst, to the intent that the other being round may passe the better without stop, and close the ioynt together, then take a peece of a little line somewhat bigger then a whippe-cord, and at one end make a loope, which being put over one of the pins ends, winde the rest of the line good and straight about the pins ends, so as it may lye betwixt the pins ends

and the skinne, and fasten the last end with a packe-needle and a packe-thread unto the rest of the cord, so as it may not slippe; and to doe well, both the pinnes and the cord would be first anointed with a litle hogges grease, then bring him into the stable and let him rest the space of nine daies; and let him lye downe as litle as may bee, and put a pastorne on the fore legges, so as it may bee bound with a cord unto the foote of the manger, to keepe that legge alwaies whilst hee standeth in the stable, more forward then the other, and at the nine daies end take out the pinnes and annoint the sore place with a litle *Diathea*, or with hogges grease, and then turne him to grasse. Other of our later Farriers, use first to lay good store of straw under the horse, and then put a paire of strong pastornes on his fore-legges, and another on his hinder, then having throwne him upon his back, to hang him up by the legs from the ground, with two ropes drawne over some beame or baulke, which will put the bone into his true place againe, then having let him downe againe faire and softly, loose the fore-pastorne of the sound legge, and with a cord before you let him rise tie the same legge to the foote of the manger, so short as in his rising hee shall bee forced to hold his legge before him, for feare of putting his shoulder out of joynt, and let him stand so tyed for the space of three daies; & presently when he is up, burne all the point of his shoulder with a hot drawing Iron chequer-wise, a full foot square at the least, & let every stroke be no more then an inch distant one from another: and having burned him well, charge all these burned places,

places, and all the rest of his shoulder with pitch, rozen, and tarre molten together, and laid on something hot with a cloth tyed to a stickes end; then clap floxe of the colour of the horse upon it, then charge him againe over the floxe, and at the three dayes end loose his foote, and put a paire of pastornes upon his feet, and let him neither lye downe, nor stir out of the stable for the space of sixteene or twenty dayes: then may you leade him abroad, and see whether he goe well or no, and if he be not perfect, you may then give him as much more rest, and that will recover him.

CHAP. LXX.

*A generall and certaine cure for any desperate
and incurable straine in the shoul-
der or any other hidden
parts.*

TAKE a large earthen vessell, and fill it full of the hearbe *Arsenarte* and *Bronke-lime*, equally mixt together, then put to them as much of the ouldest and strongest urine that can be got, as will cover the hearbes all over, then cover the pot close, and keepe it in some safe coole place.

Now when you have occasion to use it, take an earthen pipkin, and put therein both of the urine and the hearbes, so much as shall be convenient for the grieve, and boyle it well, then if it be for a shoulder straine, you shal take an old boore and cut off the foote that you may draw it over the horses foore

and above his knee almost to the elbow of his shoulder, keeping the nether part of the boote as close about his legge as may bee, but the upper part wide and spacious, into this boote thrust all your mixture as hot as the horse can suffer it; and lay it fast and close about his shoulder, especially before and behind, then drawing up the upper part of the boote, so fasten it to the maine of the horse that it may not slippedowne: and thus doe once a day till the griefe depart, for this medicine is so violent, that if there bee any foule matter that must come forth, it will bring it to an head, ripen, breake and heale it, if there be no such thing, then in as short time it will draw away the offending humours, and give present ease.

CHAP. LXXE.

*Of the swelling of the fore-legges after
great labour.*

Horses not much used to travell, will after great labour swell upon their fore-legges, because heate and violent excesse will cause humours to resort downe into the legges, especially if such horses shall be inwardly fat; for the indiscreete labour will melt that inward grease, and make it descend downe into the legges.

The Cure, according to the practise of some Farriers is, to take a pound of Nerve-oyle, a pound of blacke Sope, and halfe a pound of Boares grease molten, and boyle them all well together, and then

then straine it and let it coole, then anoynt your horses leggs therewith being made luke-warme againe, and then keep his leggs cleane from dust. Other Farriers use to bathe his leggs in butter and beere, or in vineger and butter; some with sheepes-feete oyle, some with neates-toote oyle, some with traine oyle, and some with pisse and salt-peter boyld together, of all which pisse and salt-peter is the best; and after any such bathing, you must roule up the horses legges with hay ropes wet in cold water, even from the pastorne to the knee, but in any wise not too strait for feare of doing harr, so let him stand continually when he resteth.

Now other Farriers somewhat more curious, use for the swelling of the legges this bath; take of Mallowes three handfulls, a Rose cake, of Sage one handfull, boyle them together in a sufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallowes be soft, put in halfe a pound of butter, and halfe a pint of salter oyle, and then being somewhat warme, wash the swelling therewith every day once, the space of three or foure daies; and if the swelling will not goe away with this, then take wine lees and Cummin, and boyle them together, and put thereunto a little wheate flower, and charge all the swelling therewith, and walk him often; and if all will not serve, then take up the great veine above the knee on the inside, suffering him not to bleed from above, but all from beneath: and it will take away the swelling.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of a horse that is foundred in his feete.

A Horse is said to be foundred of his feete, when he hath such a numbnesse, and pricking or tingling within his hoofes, that he hath neither sense nor feeling of his feete, but is in all respects like a man that by hard or crooked sitting hath both his feete asleepe (as we call it) during which passion we know we can neither well goe nor stand, and even so it fa-
reth with a horse in this case, for the course of the blood being stopped; those obstructions causeth this torment. It cometh most commonly when a horse is very fat, and hath his grease molten within him, and then suddainely cooled by taking his saddle off too soone, or by standing still on the cold unstirred, or else by letting him stand in some shallow water little higher then his fet-locks.

A horse also may be foundred by wearing straight and uncase shoes, especially in the Summer season, when a horse travaileth upon the hard ground.

The signes to know it is, the horse goeth crouching, and drawing all his foure feete within the compasse almost of a peck, and will stand so fearefully as though he stood upon needles.

Now you shall understand, that a horse will sometimes be onely foundred of his fore-feete, and not of his hinder, which you shall know in that the horse will treade onely upon his hinder feete, and not

not on his fore-feete, and goe as though his buttockes would touch the ground, and sometimes hee will bee foundred upon his hinder feete, and not upon his fore-feete, and that you shall perceive by his fearefulnesse to set his feete to the ground, being also so weake behind that hee will stand quivering and quaking, and cover alwaies to lye downe, and sometimes hee will bee foundred of all his fore-feete, the signes whereof were first declared.

Now for as much as the cures bee all of one and the selfe same nature, and what cureth the first, cureth also the rest, I will joyne them altogether, with this advice, that if you finde the horse to bee foundred on the fore-feete onely, then to apply your medicine to the fore-parts onely, if on the hinder feete, then to the hinder parts; but if of all foure feete, then to lay your medicine to all the severall parts of the body, as shall be presently declared.

To come then to the cures (according to the opinion of a worthy Knight well experienced in this disease) if your horse bee foundred of all his foure feete, you shall cause him to bee let bloud on his two breast-veines of his two fore-leggs, somewhat above his knees, also you shall let him bloud on his two spur-veines, and on the veines of his two hinder feete a little above the hoofe, betwene the hoofe and the pastorne: you shall let these veines bleede well to the quantity of a quart or three pints which blond you must save in some vessell, and stirre it with a sticke to keepe it from clearing: and when it

bath bled as abovesaid, put all these into one vessell, then stoppe the wounds with some horse-dung, or some earth, and make a charge with the blood in this sort : take as much wheate meale, branne and all as will make the blood somewhat thicke, and put it into the blood, take eight or ten egges, and breake them also into this blood, shels and all; take a pint of strong vinegar, and a quantity of *Bolus armonicke* brayde, and put them into the blood also, which done you shall stirre them altogether; then shall you with your hand lay the said charge all along upon the reines of the horses backe, upon his buttockes, and downe his shoulders : when you have laid on this charge thus, you shall take two long linnen raggs dipped in the same charge, with which so dipped you shall garter the horse above the knees of his fore-legges somewhat hard, and likewise with two other like ragges so dipped, you shall garter him hard above both his hinder hooves also; that done, cause him to bee walked upon the hardest ground you can finde for the space of two or three houres : if hee be loath to goe, as commonly he will be, let one follow him, and beate him with a stick or wand to force him to goe; then after this walking let him be set up and ryed to the racke, that hee lye not downe, and there let him rest two or three houres; which done, let him be walked againe two or three houres more as aforesaid; then set him up, and let him feed, and when you give him drinke, which you may doe within two or three houres after his feeding, let it be a warme mass of malt and water, then let him feede a little after it, then ride him a little, and

and if you let him stand an houre or two in a poole or standing water up to the belly, and one upon his backe it is good also, and after that ride him againe a listle : then let him be set up well dressed and covered, and so by litle and litle ride him a day or two, and then you may boldly journey him, for it is riding that bringeth the horse to the perfectnesse of his feete, and you shal find your horse as found as ever he was.

Now during this cure, you are to take these observations in your memory.

First, you shall not need to remove or stir the horses shooes; then you must after twenty foure houres rub off the charge from the horse backe.

Item, You shall take away his garters after twelve houres, and rub his knees and houghes with your hand, and with wispes, to take away the numbnesse.

Item, If you cannot get wheate meale, you may take oaten meale.

Item, If he will not bleed in the veines before named, then you may take your blood from the neck-veine.

Lastly, If you take the horse in hand to cure within twenty foure houres after he is foundred, he will be found againe within twenty foure houres after; if he goe longer, the cure will be longer in doing.

Now the ancient Farriers of this Kingdom, and amongst the *Italians*, differ not much in their practise from this already rehearsed, onely into the charge they adde of *Sanguis Draconis* halfe a quarterne, and as much beane flower as wheat flower, and of Turpentine halfe a pound; then if they did see that with-

in

in four daies the horse did not recover, then they did know that the hurtfull humours did onely lye in the horses feete, and there you shall search his feete with your butterysse, parting all the soles of his feete so thinne, that you may see the water issue through the sole: that done, let him bloud at the toes, & let him bleed well; then stop the veine with Turpentine and hogges grease molten together, and laid upon a little flaxe, and then tacked on his shoes, and cram the place where you did let him bloud hard with tow, to the intent it may be surely stoppt; then fill all the soles of his feete with hogges grease and branne boyld or fryed together so hot as is possible, and upon that stopping clap a peece of leather, and two crosse splints, to keepe in the stopping; and immediately after this take two egges, and beate them in a dish, and put thereunto as much *Bolcarmonick* and beane flowre as will thicken the same, and mixe them well together, and make thereof two plaisters such as may close each foote round about somewhat above the cornit, and bind it fast with a list or a rowler, that it may not fall away nor be removed for the space of two daies, but let the soles of his feete be cleansed and new stopped every day once, and the croners to be removed every two dayes untill the horse bee sound; during which time let him rest unwalked for feare of loosening his hooves: but if you see that he beginne to amend, you may walke him faire and softly once a day upon some soft ground to exercise his legges and feete, and let him not eat much, nor drinke cold water; but if his foundring breake out about the horse, which
you

you shall perceive by the loosenesse of the Coffin above by the Cronet, then when you pare the sole you must take all the fore-part of the sole cleane away, leaving the heeles hole, to the intent the humours may have the freer passage downward, and then stoppe him, and dresse him about the corner, as is before said. Now if the horse during this Cure chance to fall sicke, or grow so dry in his body that he cannot dung, then you shall first take him, and after give him a glister of mallowes, three handfulls boild in water from a pottle to a quart: then after it is strained, put to it halfe a pound of butter, and a quarter of a pint of sallet oyle, and so administer it, then when the horse hath emptied his belly give him this comfortable drinke. Take of malmsey a quart, and put thereunto a little Cinamon, Mace, & Pepper beaten into fine powder, & of oyle a quarter of a pint, and give the horse to drinke of that luke-warme; that done, let him be walked up and downe a good while together if he be able to goe; if not, then lay him up to the racke, and let him be hanged with canvas & ropes, so as he may stand upon the ground with his feete, for the lesse he lyeth downe the better, but these extremities doe seldom happen. Now there be other Farriers which for the foundring of a horse, only take Verdigrease, Turpentine, sallet oyle, and hogges grease, of each like quantiry, of Waxe one ounce; boyle all together, and so dippe flaxe or tow in it: then having pared his feete thinne, and let him blond on the toes, stoppe all his feete with that oymment very hot: or else they take the rootes of nettles, and hemlocke, with elder pills of each a handfull,

handfull; boyle them tender in Boares grease, or Hogges grease, so let him bloud in the midst of the foote on the toe veine; then bathe and chafe his joynt and leg therewithall about from his knee unto the retlocke, and then clap it to, and binde a cloath fast to as hot as you can. So use this once a day till it be well.

- 82 Now for mine owne part, although there is not any of these former recited practises but are found perfectly good in their kinds, yet I have not found any so absolute either for old or new founders, as this which I shall rehearse. First you shall with a very sharpe drawing-knife, draw every part of the soles of the horses feete so thinne as is possible, even till you see the very water and bloud issuing forth, and being sure to draw or pare every part alike, which can hardly bee done with a butters: then at the very sharpe end of the trush of the horses foote you shall see the veine lye, then with your knifes end lift up the hooft and let the veine bleede (which as long as you hold open the hooft will spin a great way forth) when it hath bled better then a pint, you shall close the hooft and so stoppe the veine: then tack on his foot a hollow shooe made for that purpose: that done, clap a little toe dept in Hogges grease and Turpentine upon the veine very hard: then take two or three hard egges roasted, and comming burning hot out of the fire, and burst them in the sole of the horses foote: then poure upon them Hogges grease, Turpentine, and tarre boyling hot, and as much flaxe-dipt therein as will fill up the hollow shooe, then lay on a peece

of leather to keepe all the rest in, and splent it sure :
and in this manner dresse his foure feete; if all be
foundred, otherwise no more then are foundred;
and thus you shall dresse the horse three times in one
fortnight, and without any further trouble you shall
be sure to have the horse as sound as ever he was.


Now if the horse bee foundred through the strai-
ting of a shooe, which in truth is not a founder, but
a fettrizing, which is a degree lesse then foundring,
then you shall for that sorrhance, first take of his
shooe, and let him bloud on the toes, then stopping
the place with bruised Sage, tack on his shooe again,
and stop it with Hogges grease and bran boyled to-
gether, as hot as is possible, and doe this twice in one
fortnight and it will helpe him.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of the Splent as well on the inside of the knee as of
any other part of the legge.

A Splent is to the outward feeling a very gristle,
or rather a hard bone, sometimes as big as a ha-
zienn, sometimes as big as a wall-nut, according to
the age thereof, growing upon the inside of the
foreleg, betweene the knee and the upper pasterne
joynt, and sometimes just underneath, and close un-
to the knee, which is of all other the most dangerous
splent, and doth the soonest make a horse lame : it
commeth by travelling a horse too young, or by
overpressing him with heavy burthens, whereby the
tender sinewes of his legs are offended. Now for the
knowledge thereof it is easie, because it is apparant
unto

unto the eye, and most palpable to bee felt. The cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is to take an onion, and picking out the coare, put into it halfe a spoonefull of honey, and a quarter of a spoonefull of unsleckt Lime, and foure peny-waight of Verdigrease; then closing up the onion roast it in hot embers untill it be soft: then bruise it in a mortar, and as hot as the horse can suffer it, lay it to the splent and it will take it away: but in any case cut no skin. Other of the ancient Farriers use first to wash the splent with warme water, and then to shave off the haire, and lightly to scarifie or prick the skin with the point of a razor, so as the bloud may issue forth: then take of *Cantharides* halfe a spoonefull, and of *Fusorbinum* as much, beaten into fine powder, and mingle them together with a spoonefull of oyle *de bay*, and then melt them in a little pan, stirring them well together, so as they may not boyle over, and being so boyling hot, take two or three feathers, and annoint all the sore places therewith: that done, let not the horse stirre from the place where you so dresse him for an houre after, so the intent hee shake not off the oyntment: then carry him faire and softly into the stable, and rye him so hee may not reach with his head beneath the manger: for otherwise hee will covet to bite away the smarting and pricking medicine, which if it should touch his lippes would quickly fetch off the skinde: and also let him stand without litter all that day and night: the next day annoynt the sore place with fresh butter, continuing so to doe every day once for the space of nine dayes: for this will allay the heate of the

the medicine, and cause both that and the crust of the splent to fall away of it selfe. There bee other Farriers which use with a fine hot drawing Iron to burne the sorrance downe in the midst the full length of the splent, and then over-stwart like this figure;  then foure houres after such burning, take Cowes dung new made, and sallet oyle mixe and well beaten together, and therewith annoynt all the sore places; and this must bee done when the splent is very young.

Others use to slit the sorrance with a knife the whole length of the splent, & then with a corner to open the slit, and lay the splent bare; then to make about the wound a Coffin of clay all open to the top, then take Boares grease made scalding hot, and pour it into the wound untill the clay coffin be full, then let it rest untill the grease be cold: after that let the horse rise, and this with once dressing will take the splent cleane away without any blemish or eye-sore. Others use to beate the splent with a stick, and to bruisse it well, then pricke it with an awle, and thrust out the blood, then lay on a peece of white leather, and with a hot Iron make the grease scald it, or else melt into it pitch and verdigrease, and then lay a plaister of pitch over it, not removing it untill it fall off by it selfe, or else after you have beaten and pricke the splent take out the coare of an onyon, and fill it with bay salt, then roast it soft, and lay it hot to the splent, and in stead of the onyon, you may if you will bind to a hard roasted egge, being fire hot. Other Farriers use to slit the skinne the length of the splent, then to dippe a little peece of linnen
in

in warme Wine, and sprinkle Verdigrease thereon, and so lay it to the slit, renewing it once a day untill the splent bee gone. Others use to shave off the haire, and to rubbe the splent twice a day with Tarre very hard, untill the splent be gone; but this splent must bee very young and tender: for fasting spettle is as good as Tarre. Other Farriers use to take a blacke Snaile and slit her, and put in bay salt, and lay it to the splent being opened, renewing it once a day untill the splent bee gone: then let the veine above the knee be taken up, and let it bleed from below, least it feed the splent againe. Others use if the splent be upon the knee to burne it, as is before said, then take Wormewood, Smallage, Pillitory of the wall, and Branke Vrsine stamptr with Swines grease, and lay it to the burnings, provided that first the hair be shaved off, and if the splent bee below the knee, this cure is good also and much the safer.

Now after all these former recited practises, you shall understand that the most clenliest way to take away a splent is, first after you have cast your horse, with a hazell stick of a pretty poise and bignesse gently to beate the splent at the first, and then by degrees a little harder and harder, till the splent grow soft in every part; then with the point of your Launcet let out all the blond and water; then take a bricke bar, and having laid it on the fire, when it is exceeding hot, fold it in a redde cloath, and therewith rubbe the splent, and smooth it upon the toppe till you have dried away the blond, and that no more moysture commeth out; then take of pitch, of rosen, and masticke, of each a like quantitie,

melt them well together, and being very hot, lay it over and all about the splent: then clap floxe of the colour of the horses legge upon it, and let it rest upon the splint untill it fall away of it selfe: and if when it is fallen away, you perceiue that any part of the splent remaine behind, which hardly will bee if it be orderly beaten; then you shall dresse that remainder as you did the other before, and the splent will be perfectly cured. Now for the surest and most certainest way to take off a splent it is thus: with the point of a sharpe knife, make a slit of more then a barley corne length just upon the top in the midst of the splent, and let it bee so deepe that you may bee sure that the bone of the splent is bare, then put into that slit with the point of your knife, as much *Mercury Sublimat* as the quarter of an hazel nut kirkel; and within three or foure dayes, it will so have eaten the splent, that it will fall out of it selfe; then you shall heale up the sore either with fresh butter molten, or with a plaister of Hogs grease and Turpentine mingled and melted together; only in this cure you must beware that you tye the horse so as for foure and twenty houres he may not touch the sore place with his mouth. Now in conclusion, I am to give you this small precept, to beare ever in your mind, that is both for the healing of this, and for all other humours whatsoever. You must first stay the falling downe of new humours to the place troubled, as by binding plaisters, as pitch, rozen, masticke, red lead, oyle, Bole armonicke, and such like, then to draw out the matter which is there gathered with drawing simples, as Waxe, Turpentine, and such

like: and lastly, to dry up the reliicks with drying powders, as hony and lime, Oyster-shells, soor, and such like, and also you must know, that all splents, spavens, or knobs, must either be taken away at the beginning or after the full of the moone.

CHAP. LXXIV.

An approved and certaine way to take away any Splent without breaking any haire.

TAKE the roote of *Elicampne* well washed and clenfed, and lappe it in a browne paper, wet it and roast it in the hot embers, as you would roast a Warden; Then as hot as the horse can suffer it (for I would not have you scald) after you have rub'd and chaste the excreffion, clap this unto it and bind it fast on, and in two or three dressings it will consume away the Splent.

Also if morning and evening you rub the Splent with the oyle of *Origanum* it will take it away.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of the Serew, or thorum Splent.

ALthough diverse of our Farriers doe distinguish and make a difference betwixt a Serew and a Splent, saying, that the serew is ever of the out-side of the legge, as the splent is of the inside; yet it is most certaine, that the disease and infirmity is all one; and may as well be cal'd a splent on the out-side of the legge, as a splent on the inside of the legge, and this splent on the outside is ever least dangerous.

Now

Now a horse many times will have both these splents at one time, & upon one legge; nay I have seene them so just opposite one to the other, that one would have thought they had gone through the horses legge; whence it hath come to passe, that many foolish Farriers being of that minde, have entitled them a thorow splent; and I have seene my selfe some well reputed Farriers, that having the cure brought unto them, have refused the same, saying it was a thorow splent, and therefore most incurable; but the opinion is most absurd and ridiculous: for the shin bone being hollow, & full of pitch and marrow, there can nothing grow through it, but it must confound the marrow, and then the bone cannot hold, but must presently breake in sunder, especially when such a weake spongy substance as a splent is, shall possesse the whole strength of the leg. Now for the cure, as the splent and it are all one, so they have all one cure, and what helpeth the first, with more ease helpeth the latter, in as much as it is not full so dangerous, nor so neare the maine sinewes.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of the Mallander.

A Mallander is a kind of a dry scab, growing in the forme of lines or strekes overthwart the very bought or inward bent of the knee, and hath hard haire with stubborne rootes, like swines bristles, which corrupteth and cankereth the flesh, like the roots of a childe scabbed head; and if the sore bee great and deepe, it will make the horse go stiffe at his

first setting forth, and halt much. It doth proceed either from the corruption of bloud, or from negligent keeping, when the horse wanteth cleane dressing: for you shall know that some horses naturally are given to have long haire from the toppe to the bought of the knee downe to the ferlocke, and that haire in the bought of the knee is oft apt to curle; whereby those horses if they bee not very carefully and cleane kept, are much subject to this disease. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus. Take a barreld herring out of the pickle with a soft roe, and two spoonefull of blacke sope, and so much Allome; beate all these in a mortar well together, and then lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day for three dayes, and it will kill the Mallender, provided always that before you lay any thing unto a Mallander, you ever pull off the dry scabs first, and leave no haire growing within the sore. Other Farriers use to take a paring of a Cheese, and roasting it very hot, annoint it with honey, and so hot lay it to the Mallander, and renew it once a day til the Mallander be whole: or else beat Hennes dung and Gilli-flowrs wel together, and lay it to the sore til it be whole.

Other Farriers use after they have washed the sore cleane with warme water, and shaved off the haire and the scabbes, to take a spoonefull of sope, and as much lime; mingle them together that it may be like paste, then spread as much on a cloute as will cover the sore, and binde it fast on with a list, renewing it every day once the space of two or three dayes; and at the three dayes end take away the playster, and
ancient

annoynt the fore with oyle of Roses made like warme, and that will fetch away scurfe or crusty asker, bred by meanes of the burning plaister: which scurfe being taken away, wash the fore place well every day once with his owne stale, or else with mans urine, and then immediately strow upon it the powder of burnt oyster-shells, continuing so to doe every day once untill it be whole.

Others of our latter Farriers use to take a quart of water, halfe a pint of oyle, and as much flower as will thicken it with seething; then lay that hot to the fore twice a day for foure dayes together; then take masticke, frankinsence beaten to fine powder, quick-silver, killed either in the juyce of Lemons, or in strong vinegar, of each an ounce; then of *Liturgie* halfe an ounce, of *Ceruse* ten ounces, and as much of swines grease clarified; incorporate and mingle all these together with vinegar and oyle; and lay it to the fore untill the Mallander be kil'd; then heal it up as is before shewed. Others use after they have washed it and shaved it, to rub it with pisse and sops untill it be raw: then to lay to it nerve oyle, honey, and strong mustard, untill it be whole. Others use to take Sulphure, Vitrioll, Sal-nitre, Sal-gemme mixt with oyle de bay, and to rub the Mallender well therewith. Now to conclude, you shall understand, that some horses will have two Mallanders upon one legge, one above another, and sometimes one a little above the inward bending of the knee, and another a little below the inward bending of the knee, but the cure is all alike, and as you dresse one, so you may dresse two or three.

Now for mine owne part, I have not found any thing better for a Mallender, then after the sore is cleansed, to take the ordure or dung of a man, and annoynt the sore therewith, and it will kill it and heale it.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of an upper attaint, or over-reach upon the backe sinew of the fore-legge, somewhat above the pasterne joynt.

THIS which we call an upper attaint, is nothing else but a painefell swelling of the maister sinew, or back sinew of the shanke bone, by reason that the horse doth sometimes over-reach and strike that sinew with the toe of his hinder foot, and thereby causeth the horse to halt much. Now the signes are both the swelling & the halting: and the cure, according to some of the old Farriers, is to dresse the sore place with a plaister made of wine lees and wheate flower laid hot to, or else to take of blacke sope and Boars grease, of each like quantity scalding hot, make a plaister of seare-cloth thereof, and clap it all about the sore place: or else if the swelling by no salve will dissolve, take a fine thin hot drawing Iron, and draw his legge all downward with the haire in many small stricks from the one end of the swelling to the other, and make the strikes very thick together, and somewhat deepe: then annoynt his burning for two or three dayes with blacke sope, and so turne the horse to grasse; but if he will not run at grasse, then every day give him some moderate exercise; but this burning

ning I fancy not much, for it is foule, and albeit take away the swelling, yet the seames of the burning, when they are cured well, keepe the member bigge, as if it were still sweld. Now other of the auncient Farriers, use first to wash the legge with warm water; then to shave off the haire as far as the swelling goeth; then to scarifie the sore place with the poynt of a razor, that the blond may issue forth: then take of *Cantharides* & *Enforbium* of each halfe an ounce, mingle them together with halfe a quartern of sope, and with a slice spread some of this oyntment over all the sore, suffering him to rest there where you dress him for one halfe houre after; and then you may carry him into the stable, and there let him stand without litter, and so ryed as he may not touch the sore with his mouth: and then the next day use him in the same manner againe: then the third day annoynt the place with fresh butter, continuing so to doe the space of nine dayes, and at the nine dayes end make him this bathe: Take of Mallowes three handfulls, a Rose cake, of sage, an handfull; boyle them together in a sufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallowes bee soft, put in halfe a pound of butter, and halfe a pint of salter oyle; and then being somewhat warme, wash the sore place therewith every day once till it be whole. Others use to cleave a chicken or a pidgeon, and to clap it hot to the swelling, and it will abate it: or else take *Dialthea*, *Agripa* and oyle, and mixing it together, lay it to the swelling. Others use to take of frankinsence, of rozen, of tarre, of *Enforbium*, of turpentine and fenugreeke, of each a quarter of an ounce, of suet one ounce, of oyle

B b 4

an ounce, of wake three ounces, and three quarters
of an ounce of Myrre; mixe and melt them all toge-
ther, and plaister wise lay it to the sore place till it be
whole: or else take for this purpose, three quarters
of an ounce of *Sanguis Draconis*, an ounce of *Bola-
rmony*, as much Oyle, three ounces of Masticke,
and as much suer, and as much Swines grease, the
whites of halfe a dozen of Egges, melt and mixe
them together, and lay them together, and lay it to
the swelling; and it will rake it away: then make the
shooes of his hinder feere shorter then the hornes of
his toes by a quarter of an inch, & let the horn hang
over and cut away, and make the fore shooe no longer
then his heels, but rather shorter.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

An excellent approved medicine for any fire and
of greivous straine what so ever.

Take of Vinegar a pint, the whites of three or
four egges, and as much *Bolarmonticke* and
beane flower as will bring it to a thick salve over the
fire: then when it is very hot, lay it plaister wise upon
the straine, and round about the legge: and do this
not onely till the griefe bee gone, but also till the
swelling be raken away.

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of a neather Attaint, or over-reach on the
pasterne joynt.

The neather Attaint, or over-reach on the mid-
dle and in the hollow of the pasterne joynt, is a little
blader

bladder full of jelly, like unto a wind-gall, and though it be not apparant to the eye, yet it is easie to be felt, and may come as well by some wrinch or straine, as by an over-reach, and it will make a horse halt much, the signes are, the neather joynt towards the feetelocke will be very hot, and somewhat sweld, and the little soft bleb will easily be felt.

The cure, after the opinion of the old Farriers, is, take a small cord, and rowle him somewhat strait from the knee to the neather joynt, and then in the pasterne, betweene the hoofe and the joynt with a beam strike him in the midst of the swelling, and let out the matter: then take the white of an egge, and beate it with a little salt, and then dipping flax therein, lay it unto all the swelling, and then unrowle his leg, and renew the salve twice a day untill the griefe be gone. But in any case let him not be laboured, or ridden whilst he is in curing.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of an Attaint, or over-reach on the heele.

AN Attaint or over-reach upon the heele, is when a horse striketh the toe of his hinder shoe into the heele, just upon the setting on of the hoofe, and this over-reach, if it be not looked unto, will fret and ranckle so much inward, that it will endanger the horses hoofe, and you shall commonly see by the cut the skin hang over the horses heele, and it will make a horse halt. Now the cure is, first to cut away the skin, and also the hoofe and the flesh, till you have made the sore even and plaine without any hollownesse;

nesse; then wash it very well with beere and salt, then bind unto it a little flax dipt in the white of an egge, mingled with a little *Bole-armeny*, renewing it every day once, the space of three or foure dayes, and that will heale it.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of the Mellet on the heele.

A Mellet is a drye scab that groweth upon the heel sometimes through the corruption of bloud, & sometimes for want of cleane rubbing and dressing when hee is wet set up: it appeareth like a dry chap without any moysture, and it will be sometimes as well on both heeles as on one. The cures, according to the practise of the old Farriers, to take half a pint of honey, and a quarter of a pound of black sope, and mix them together: then put thereto foure or five spoonfull of vinegar, and as much Allome unburnt as a Hens egge, and two spoonfull of Rye flowre; mixe them all well together, and then take it away, and wash all his leg and foot with salt beefe-broath; and then rope his legge all a day with wet hay-ropes, and he will be found: provided alwayes, that before you dresse him, you ever take off the dry scab or scurf, and make the sore as clean and as plaine as is possible.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of false quarters.

A False quarter is a rift or open back-seame, sometimes in the outside, but most often in the inside of the hoofe; because the inside is ever the weaker part, which sides are ever called quarters: whence this sorrance taketh his name, and is called a false quarter, as much as to say, a sicke and unsound quarter: for it is as if it were a peece set unto the hoofe, and the hoofe not all of one intire peece as it ought to bee. It commeth many times by evill shooting, and evill paring, and sometimes by pricking the horse, and such like hurts. The signes to know it, are, the horse will halt much, and the rift will bleede, and when the shooe is off, the whole sorrance is apparant to be seene. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, to take off the shooe and cut away so much of the shooe on that side where the sorrance is, as the shooe being immediately put on againe, all the whole rift may be uncovered: then open the rift with a drawer, and fill all the rift with a rowle of tow dipt in Turpentine, wax and sheepes suet molten together, renewing it every day once till it be whole: and the rift being closed in the top, draw him betwixt the haire and the hoofe with a hot Iron overthwart that place, to the intent that the hoofe may shoote all whole downward; and when the horse goeth upright, ride him either with no other shooe then this, or else with such a shooe as may beare in every part but onely

onely upon the false quarter, untill the hooft bee hardened. Others use to annoynt it once a day with sheepes suet and oyle mixt together, and that will close the rift.

Others use to cut away the old corrupt hooft, and then take seven whites of egges, the powder of Incense, of unsleckt lime, of Masticke, of Verdigrease, and of salt, of each three ounces; mixe them well together, then dippe in as much hurds as will cover the fore-hooft; lay it on, and then about it lay swines grease an inch thicke, and likewise below it also: bind this on in such sort that it may remaine unstirred a fortnight, then renew it so againe, and it wil make perfect his hooft. But if there be any corrupt matter gathered within the false quarter, and thereby causeth the horse to halt, then you shall lay your finger upon it, and if the horse shrinke thereat, then it is ripe; then open it with a drawing knife, and let out the matter, then lay on horse-dung, Oyle, Salt, and vinegar mixt together plaister-wise, and that will heale it, and make the hooft good; yet however you must have care in shoeing him till his hooves be hardened, as is before shewed you.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of a horse that is hipped, or hurt in the hippe.

A Horse is sayd to bee hipped when either by straine, blow, or other accident, the hippe-bone is removed out of his right place. It is a sorraunce as hard to bee cured as any whatsoever: for if it be not taken even at the first instant, there will grow with-

within the pot of the huckle bone, such a thick hard substance, that it will leave no place for the bone, and then it is utterly incurable. The signes to know the sorrance are, the horse will halt much, and goe sidelong, and wil traile his legge a little asfer him; the sore hippe also will bee lower then the other, and the flesh wil waste away on the side of his Buttocke. The cure is, according to the best Farriers, if you take him in good time, first to cast him on his backe, and then having a strong pastorne on his grieved legge, with a rope draw that legge upright, and with your hands on each side his thigh bone, guide it directly into the por: that done, let him down gently, and so suffer him to rise with all meeknesse; then goe with him into the stable, and there charge all his hippe and backe with pitch and rozen molren together, and laid on warme, and then some flxe of his owne colous to bee clapped upon the same, and so turne the horse to grasse until hee goe upright.

But if the horse be not hipped, but onely hurt in the hippe, and that newly, then first take of oyle de bay, of *Dialthea*, of nerve oyle, and of swines grease, of each halfe a pound; melt them all together, stirring them continually until they bee thoroughly mingled together; then annoynt the sore place therewith against the haire, every day once the space of a fortnight, and make the oymnt sink wel into the flesh, by holding a hot barre of Iron over the place annoynted, weaving your hand to and fro untill the oymnt bee entred into the skinne: and if at the fortnights end you see the horse
not

not any thing amended, then slit a hole downward in his skin an inch beneath the hip bone, making the hole so wide, as you may easily thrust in a rowell with your finger; and then with a corner and a quill, blow the skinne from the flesh above the bone, and round about the same, so broad as the rowell may lye flat and plaine betwixt the skin and the flesh: and this rowell would be made of soft calves leather, with a hole in the midst, and a threed tyed unto it, to pull it out when you would cleanse it, or the hole: and if the rowell be roled about with flaxe fast tyed on, and anointed with the oyntment under written, it will draw so much the more.

Now you must thrust in your rowell first double, and then spread it abroad with your finger: that done taint it with a good large taint of flaxe, dipt in a little Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together and made warme, and cleanse the hole and the rowell every day once; and also renew the taint for the space of a fortnight, and before you dresse him, cause him every day to be led up and downe a foote pace a quarter of an houre, to make the humours come downe; and at the fortnights end pull out the rowell, and heale up the wound with the same salve, making the taint every day lesser and lesser, untill it be whole: and so soone as it is whole, with a hot drawing Iron draw crosse lines of eight or nine inches long right over the hip-bone, so as the rowelled place may bee in the very midst thereof, and burne him no deeper but as the skinne may look yellow; and then charge all that place, and over all his buttocke with this charge. Take of pitch one pound.

pound, of frozen half a pound, and of tar halfe a pint, boyl them together, and then being good and warm, spread it on with a clout tyed in a riven sticke, and then clap on a few flaxe of the horses colour and if it be in Summer let the horse run to grasse a while, for the more he travelleth at his own will, the better it is for him.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of stifling, and hurts in the stiffe.

THat horse is said to be stifled, when the stifling bone, which is a little bone of two inches in length, lying betweene the nether end of the thigh bone, and the upper end of the great hough bone of the hinder leg, is by any straine, stroake, flippe, or such like, thrust out of his right place; but if the stifling bone bee not removed nor loosened, and yet the horse halteth by meanes of some grieve in that place, then we say the horse is hurt in the stiffe, and not stifled. The signes are these. If the horse be stifled, the stiffe bone will sticke out more of the one side then of the other, and it is apparane to the eye, and in his halting hee will no more but touch the ground with his toe.

The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is to thrust two round pins crosse the stifling bone, through the skinne, in such sort as you were taught for the shoulder pight, but the pins would not be any thing near so big, nor so long, because the stifling bone is not so broad as the shoulder: and standing in the stable let him have a pastorne and a ring upon

upon his fore legge, and thereunto fasten a cord, which cord must goe about his necke, and let it be so much strained, as it may bring his fore leg more forward then the other, to keepe the bone from starting out: but this cure is foul and troublesome, wherefore other Farriers of better experience, use onely to set a patten shooe upon his sound foote, and so turn him abroad, that he may be compell'd to tread upon his lame foot: and that straining of it will in a day or two make him as sound as ever he was, and put the stifling bone into his true place again. But if you cannot readily get a patten shooe, then you shall take either a plain sursingle, or any other broad binding web that will goe three or foure times about the horses leg, and with it you shall garter up the horses sound leg three fingers above his hamme, even upon his maine great sinew, so strait as your selfe and another man can draw it: and then turne the horse abroad where he may goe up and downe, and in eight and forty houres the horse will be as sound as ever hee was: then take off the garter, and rub the place that was gartered up with fresh butter, for it wil be much swelled.

Now if this mischance of stifling happen unto your horse in your travaile, and that your occasions will not suffer you to stay for any of these cures, then you shall take your horse either to some deepe pond or deepe river that hath easie going in and out, and there swimme him up and downe a douzen turnes: which done, you may after travaile him at your pleasure: for the more he is laboured, the sounder he will go. Now if your horse be not stifled, but onely

only hurt in the stifle, either with some stripe or some straine, then the bone will not stand out, yet perhaps the place will bee much sweld. The cure, according to the opinion of the olde Farriers, is to make a little slit in his skinne, a handfull below the fore place, and then with a quill blow all the skinne from the flesh upwards, and then with your hand presse out the wind againe, and then thrust in a rowell of horse haire from the first slit to the upper part of the stifle bone: this done, take a pottle of old pisse and boyle it to a quart, and cleanse it well; then take a handfull of Mallowes, and halfe a pint of salter oyl, and adde them to the pisse, and then boyle them well together: then bathe all the fore place therewith every day once the space of seven or eight dayes, and let him not stir out of the stable during the cure, and in twenty ene dayes he wil be sound.

Other Farriers use onely to take a pound of *Bolus*, a quart of red Wine vinegar, fixe egges beaten, sixts and all, two peny-worth of *English* honey, and as much *Pewee* Turpentine, one quart of flower, and one good handfull of Bay salt; put all these in a pot, and incorporate them well together, then keep them close one night, and the next day annoint the fore place with some of it; and thus dressing it once a day the space of five dayes, it will make the horse sound.

CHAP. LXXXV.

Of the Bone-Spaven, or dry Spaven.

The Bone-Spaven, or dry Spaven, is a great hard knob as bigge as a Walnut, growing in the in-

side of the hough, hard under the joynt, neere unto the master-veine, it groweth at the first like a tender gristell, and by proceffe of time, it commeth to be a hard bone, and causeth the horse to halt much. This sorrhance will come sometimes by nature or descent, as when either the Sire or Damme of the Horse have had the same disease; and sometimes (which is most generally) it commeth when a horse is laboured to yong; for a horse in that part of his hinder leg hath small bones knit all together upon one cluster, which being pressed before they be naturally hardned, cannot chuse but thrust forth these unnaturall excretions. Other whiles it proceedeth from extreame labour and heate, dissolving humors, which do descend through the master-veine, continually feeding that place with evill nutriment, and causeth the place to swell; which swelling in continuance of time becommeth so hard as a bone, and therefore is called the bone spaven. The signes are the apparant sight of the sorrhance; and truly for mine owne part, I am of the minde of other Farriers that it is very hard absolutely to cure it, yet that the eye-sore may be taken away, and halting much eased, is not hard, for I have done it many times. Then to proceed to the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is thus: First flie the skin just over the head of the spaven or excretion, and open it with a cornit; and in any case have care that you touch not the master-veine, but put it by: then with your lancet lay the spaven all bare, then with a fine chizell about a quarter of an inch broad, or a little more, strike off the dead of the spaven,

ven, to the quantiry of a quarter of an Almond, or according to the bignesse of the spaven: then take two peny waight of verdigrease beaten to fine powder, and two peny waight of nerue-oyle, and beat them all well together: then laying some of it upon finelint, lay it upon the spaven; then lay dry lint betwixt the medicine and the veine, that the medicine may not touch the veine: then lay a playster of pitch, Rosen, Turpentine, and hoggesgrease molten together, all over the hough, both to comfort the joynt, and to keepe in the medicine. And thus dresse him the space of three dayes, and it will cleanse away the spaven even to the bottome; at the end of three dayes you shall wash away the corrosive and the matter, either with Tanners water or with vinegar, and lay no more of that salve thereto for hurting the bone; then make a plaister of *Diaculum*, and lay it upon a linnen cloath, and lay that plaister unto the spaven, renewing it every day once for the space of seven daies, and it will heale him up.

Others of the old Farriers use first to wash the spaven with warme water, and shave of the haire so farre as the spaven extendeth, and then scarifie the place and make it bleed: then take of *Cantharides* one dozen, and of *Eusopium* halfe a spoonefull; beate them in powder, and boyle then together with a little Oyle de bay, lay this boyling hot upon the sore, and let his tayle be tyed up for wiping away the medicine; and then within halfe an houre after set him up in the stable, and tye him so as hee may not lye downe all that night, for feare of rubbing of

the medicine; and the next day annoint it with
 fresh butter, continuing thus to doe every day once
 the space of five or sixe days; and when the haire is
 growne againe, draw the sore place with an hot
 Iron in this sort, just upon the Spaven: then
 take another hot Iron like a bodkin, some-
 what bowing at the poynt, and thrust it in at
 the nether end of the middle line, and so
 upward betwixt the skinne and the flesh, an inch
 and an halfe, and then raint it with a little hogges
 grease and turpentine molten together, and made
 warme, renewing it every day once the space of
 nine dayes, provided that first immediately after
 his burning you take up the master-veine, suffering
 him to bleede a little from above, then with a redde
 silke tye the upper end of the veine, and leave
 the nether end open, to the intent that hee may
 bleede from beneath untill it cease of it selfe; and
 this will diminish the Spaven, but not take it clean
 away.

Now there be other Farriers which use after they
 have burnt it in manner aforesaid, and taken up the
 master-veine, to annoynt it with fresh butter, till the
 burning beginne to scale, and then take of Sage and
 Nettles, of each a handfull, and boyle them with
 foure handfull of mallowes in faire water; and then
 put thereto a little butter, and with that barbe him
 every day once for three or foure dayes till the bur-
 ning be whole; and let him not wet his feete during
 the cure.

O: hereunto so pricke the Spaven with a sharpe
 poynted knife, then take a peece of a candle, and lay
 a peece

a peece of browne paper upon it, and with an hot Iron melt the tallow, and after annoynt it with butter. Others use first to pricke the Spaven well, then to lay upon it for three or foure dayes together, every day, mans dung: after that lay to it *Galbanum* till the sore matter and rhume, and the humour come forth: then wash it with urine, and lastly heale it up with oyle and hony boyled together, for that will bring on the haire.

Now to conclude, that which I have ever found to be the surest and the clearest way to take the bone spaven quite away, if it bee used with discretion and care, is to take of *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, and of white Mercury, of each a like quantity, but of Mercury rather the more; mixe them well together: then after you have cast your horse, make a slit just the length of the Spaven, so that you touch not the master veine: then opening it, and laying all the Spaven bare, & with a sharpe instrument scale the spaven a little; then make a plegant of lint just so big as the excretion or bone spaven is: then spreading some of the salve thereon, lay it upon the Spaven; then with dry lint defend all other parts of the member, especially the master-veine, from the corrosive: then lay the plaister of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine and Hogges-grease before spoken round about his hough, and so let him rest four and twenty houres: then take away all that medicine, and scaling the bone a little, if you finde the corrosive have not gone deepe enough, then dresse it in the same manner the second time, and that will be altogether sufficient: then take of Turpentine, of

Deeres suet, and of Waxe, of each a like quantity, and mixe and melt them well together, then dresse the sore place therewith being warmed, and lint or tow dipt therein; and within a day or two you shall see the whole crust of the spaven come cleane away, then may you with the same salve, heale up the wound; and this hath never failed me in any practise. Also understand that whatsoever taketh away the Splint, taketh away the Spaven also.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

Of the bloud Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven.

THe bloud Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven, (for all is one disease) is a soft swelling growing on both sides the hough, and seemes as though it went through the hough, whereby it is called a through Spaven; but, for the most part, the swelling on the inside (because it is fed continually of the Master-veine) is greater then the swelling on the out-side. It proceedeth from a more fluxible and fleamy humour, and not so viscons and slimy as the other spaven doth, and therefore this never waxeth hard, nor groweth to a bone, and therefore it is a much easier cure then the other. The signes thereof are like the other, the apparant sight thereof, and for the cure, it is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, in this manner: First, wash the spaven with warme water, and then dresse it with *Cantharides* and *Eusorbinum*, in such sort as was at large shewed in the former Chapter; onely you shall not boyle them, but onely mixe them together, and dresse the

fore

fore therewith two dayes together : then annoynt it with butter, and after burne it with a hot Iron both without and within, in manner as is shewed also in the former Chapter; but you shall by no meanes taint it : then immediately you shall take up the master-veine, and let it bleede, as was shewed before ; and then for the space of nine dayes, annoynt him every day once with butter until the burning begin to scale, and then wash it with this bath : Take of Mallowes three handfuls, of Sage one handfull, and as much of red Nettles ; boyle them in water untill they bee soft, then put thereto a little fresh butter, and bathe the place every day once for the space of three or four dayes, and untill the burning be whole, let the horse come in no wet.

Other Farriers use, after they have shaved off the haire, and taken up the veine, to take of Mustard seed, of the great Mallow root, and of Oxe-dung, of each a like quantity, and as much strong vinegar as will mixe them together like a salve, then beate them all well together, and make thereof a soft plaister, or else an oynment, and lay it upon the spaven ; change it evening and morning, and bind it in such sort to the sorrance with some piece of cloth that it may not fall off or be removed ; & when the spaven is clean gone, lay upon the place a plaister of pitch very hot, and take it not off, untill it fall away of its own accord. Other Farriers use unto this former medicine to adde oyle de bay, Turpentine, and Bolearmony.

And other Farriers use but onely to take up the veine, both above and below the spaven, and suffering it to bleed well ; then to knit up the veine, and

annoint it with butter till it be whole, and it wil consume the spaven.

CHAP. LXXXVII

A most rare and well approved medicine, which will take away any blond-spaven whatsoever.

AFTER you have taken up the veine, knit it fast above, and then cut it in sunder, you shall take of Lynseen two or three handfuls, and bruise it wel in a mortar, then mixe it with new Cow-dung, and putting it in a trying pan, heat it well upon the fire, and very hot apply it to the spaven, renewing it morning and evening till it bring the spaven like a byle to impostumation, and to breake it, then after it hath run a day or two, you shall onely apply to the fore a plaister of pitch, till it be whole.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of the Sellander.

THE Sellander is a certain kind of dry scab, growing in the very bent of the ham of the hinder leg, and it extendeth our into il-favored chaps or chinks, which if it be not prevented by medicine, it wil fret in sunder the sinews of the hough: It is in all poynts like unto a Mallander, and proceedeth from the selfe like causes, and requireth the selfe same cures; therefore looke into the Chapter of the Mallander, and what soever you find there that will cure the Mallander, the same will also cure the Sellander.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

Of the Hough Bonny.

THe Hough Bonny is a round swelling like a *Paris* ball, growing upon the very tip or elbow of the hough, and cometh ever of some stripe or bruise; but especially when hee beateth his hough either against the post which standeth behind him, at the nether end of his stall, or against the bar which doth divide him from another horse, which many Ram-mish Jades will do, when they seeke to strike at the horse which standeth next them.

Now the cure thereof is thus, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, take a round Iron somewhat sharpe at the end, like a good bigge bodkin, and let it be some what bending at the point; then holding the sore with your left hand, pulling it somewhat from the sinewes, pierce it with the Iron, being first made red hot, thrusting it beneath in the bottom, and so upward into the jelly, to the intent that the same jelly may issue downeward out of the hole: and having thrust out all the jelly, taint the hole with a taint of flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together; and also annoynt the outside with Hogges grease made warme, renewing it every day once untill the hole bee ready to close up, making the taint every day lesser and lesser unill it be whole. Now for mine owne part, both for this sor-rance, or any other bruise in this part, I have found this cure ever the best. First, either with rotten litter or hay boyled in old urine, or else with a plaister

plaister of Wine-lees and wheate-flower boyled together, to ripen the swelling, and bring it to putrification, or else to drive the swelling away; but if it come to a head, then to launce it in the lowest part of the softnesse, with a thinne hot Iron, and so to let out the matter: then to taint it with Turpentine, Deeres suet, and Waxe, of each a like quantity molten together, laying a plaister of the same salve over it, to hold in the taint untill it be perfectly well.

CHAP. XC.
Of the Curbe.

A Curbe is a long swelling a little beneath the elbow of the hough of the great sinewe behinde, hard above the toppe of the horne, which causeth the horse to halt after a little labour: for the more his sinewe is strained the greater is his paine, and the more he hath rest, the lesse is his grieve; it commeth as the Spaven comes, either from descent or from great burthens when the horse is yong, or else from some straine or wrench. The signes are the apparant view thereof; and the cure according to the old Farriers, is first to shave of the haire, then pricke it with a fleame in three or foure places, and for three or foure dayes together, lay unto it twice a day mans dung; then lay *Galbanum* to it likewise twice a day untill it rot, and that the matter doth issue forth; then wash it with urine: and lastly heale it up with hony and oyle boyled together, renewing the same twice a day till the Curbe bee gone; and in any

any case let all your salves be applyed warme and new made, and if you make an issue with a hot Iron in the bottome of the Curbe, it will not doe amisse.

Others use to take a very hot Iron, and hold it as nigh the sore as may be, but not touching it: then when it is warme, vent it in fixe or seven places: then take a spoonefull of salt, halfe a spoonefull of nerve oyle, and a penny weight of verdigrease, and the white of an egge; mixe these well together, and dipping flaxe in the same lay it to the Curbe, and this in few dressings will take it away. Other Farriers use to chafe and rubbe the Curbe well with their hands: then take red wal-wort leaves, and borrag, and braying them well together, lay it to the Curbe, renewing it once a day for a seven-night together. Others use to slit the Curbe all the length, then take a piece of linnen cloath, and wet it in wine made warme: then strow verdigrease thereupon, and bind it to the sore, renewing it once a day untill the Curbe be gone. Others of the ancient Farriers take of wine lees a pint, of comin halfe an ounce, and as much wheate flowre as will thicken it, and stirre them well together; and being made warme, charge the sore place therewith; renewing it every day once the space of three or foure dayes, and when the swelling is almost gone, then draw it with a hot Iron made very thin in this sort, and cover the burning with pitch and rozen molten together, and layed on good and warme, and clap thereon some boxe of the horses colour, or so nigh as may be gotten, and remove them not untill

till they fall away of themselves; and for the space of nine dayes let the horse rest; and come in no wet. Now there be other Farriers which to this last recited salve, will adde tarre, and it is not amisse, only it will not stick so well.

Now for mine owne part, I have ever found this practise the best.

First, with a broad inckle to binde the hough strait a little about the cod: then with a smooth hazell stick to beat, rub, and chafe the Curbe: then with a fleame strike it as deepe as you can in two or three places of the Curbe: then thrust out the corrupt blood; and after upon the poynts of your knife, put into every hole as deepe as you can thrust it the quantity of two barley cornes of white mercury, and so let the horse rest foure and twenty hours after; then after, only annoint the sore place with hot molten butter till it be whole, once a day at the least. And likewise here understand that whatsoever cureth the Splint or Spaven, that cureth the Curbe also.

CHAP. XCI.

Of the Paines.

THE paines is certaine ulcerous scabbes growing in the pastornes of a horse, betwixt the fetlock and the heele, full of fretting matterish water, and commeth onely for want of good rubbing and cleanedressing, after the horse hath been journeyed in the winter wayes, by meanes whereof the sand and durt remaining in the haire, fretteth the skine and

and flesh, and so breedeth to a scabbe; and therefore your *Frisonds* and *Flanders* Horses and Mares, which now are so much in use with us for the Coach, are the soonest troubled with this disease, if the Keeper be not much the more carefull. The signes hereof are, his legges will bee swalne and hot, the scabbe will be palpable to be felt, and the water will issue out of the scabbe; which water is so hot and fretting, that it will scald off the haire, and breed scabbes where it goeth. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is: Take of Turpentine, hogges grease, hony, and blacke sope, of each a like quantity, and having molten them upon a soft fire, take it off and put in a little Bolearmony, finely beaten into powder; then worke all these things well together with a sticke in your right hand, and a dish of weate flower by you, that with your left hand you may put it in by a little at once, till you have made it thicke like an oynement or soft salve; then spread it upon a linnen cloath, as big as the sore, having first cut away the haire, and made the sore raw, apply to the salve, and dresse him thus once a day untill it be whole.

This medicine is well approved to cure all sorts of *Pain*, *Scratches*, *Mouly heeles*, or any other *skirry* scalls whatsoever, that may breed in a horses legges or heeles, whether they come by meanes of evill humours, or for lacke of good dressing or cleane keeping, whether they be mallery and filthy running sores, or else dry scabbes. Others of the old Farriers use for this sorranee to take a pinte of redde wine lees, and a handfull of wheate branne, a saucer full of

of honey, and halfe a pound of the powder of powdered Beefe burnt, and as much of barke dust, and halfe a pound of Allome, and a quarter of a pound of Swines-grease, and halfe a handfull of Verume; beate all these together in a Morter, and then fry them over the fire, and make a hot plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore as hot as the horse can suffer it, letting it abide there the space of three dayes, and in once or twice thus dressing him, it will make him sound; yet some hold, if you do with a hot drawing Iron seare the great veine overthwart, a handfull above the fetlocke, and the ake a spoonfull of tar, a spoonfull of butter, and a spoonfull of honey; and warming them well together, and annoynt the veine therewith every day till the cure be perfected, and it is much available.

Other Farriers use, first to wash all the horses pastornes with butter and beere well warmed together, and then his legge being somewhat dried, clip away all the haire that doth annoy the sore: then take of Turpentine, of Hogges grease, and of honey, of each like quantity; mingle them well together in a por, and put thereunto a little Bole-armony, the yolkes of two egges, and as much wheat flower as will thicken the things afore-said, and so by long working it, make it like a plaister; then spread it upon the finnen cloth, and lay it round about the horses pastorne, and binde it fast on with a rowler, renewing it once a day till the horse be whole; and in no wise let the horse come in any wet during the cure. Others use, first to chafe the sore place with a hay rope, or with a hayre-cloath, till it either bleede or be rawe; then

take

take a little strong Mustard, beane-flower, and fresh grease, with a little Fenugreeke; then mixe all together in a dish, and make thereof a salve, and therewith annoynt the sore, untill it leave matterings: then take hony, the white of an egge, and fresh butter; mixe them together, and annoynt the sore place therewith untill it be whole. Others use onely to bathe the sore with beefe broth, and then for foure or five dayes after, to annoynt it with sope, or else first to plunge his feete in scalding water twice or thrice, and bathe the sore in scalding water: then have ready a hard roasted egge, cleave it in the midst, and lappe it to as hot as you can, and let it lye bound all night; use this once or twice, and you may adventure to ride him.

Others use to take pepper, Garlike stamp, colic-worts, and old Hogges grease, of each like quantity; then beat them in a mortar til they become to a salve, and so lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day till it be whole.

Others use first to take up the shackle veines on both sides, then take the soft roe of a red herring, and mustard, and blacke sope; and when they are well beaten together, boyle them in vinegar till they come to a salve, and apply it to the sore; this will cure the Paines, albeit you do not take up the shackle veines. If you cannot readily get this salve, you may take butter and honey molten together, and it wil helpe them; or else take a pound of Hogges-grease, a peny-worth of Verdigrease, two ounces of mustard, halfe a pound of Oyle *de bay*, a quarter of a pound of Nerue-oyle, halfe a pound of honey, halfe a pound of *Englib* waxe,

waxe, one ounce of arsnicke, two ounces of red lead, and halfe a pint of vinegar; boyle all these together and make an oyntment of it: then having clipt and made the sore all bare, apply the medicine thereto: very hot, and renew it once a day untill it bee whole. Others use to take five ounces of orpiment five of Tarrar, one of verdigrease, halfe an ounce of Sulphur, as much of vitrioll made into powder, the juyce of foure Citrions, the whites of two egges, with three ounces of salter oyle; let all these bee very well beaten together, and applyed once a day to the sore, and it will not onely heale this disease, but any salt humour whatsoever. Mingle with soft grease, vinegar, honey, Orpiment, and Arsnick: but let Arsenicke bee the least, and it will cure this diseale, so will also white waxe, Turpentine and *Gamphora* mixt together. Others use to take an hundred blacke snails in the moneth of May, slit them, and put them into a bagge with a pinte of bay-salt, then hang them over the fire, with a vessell set under to receive what droppes from them, and keepe it in a close glasse: then annoynt the sore every day therewith, and it will heale this forraie. Others take hony and viniger, of each a like quantity, a little oyle, and (net of a Hee goat, of each a like also boyle them with a soft fire and stirre it well: when it waxeth redde, adde of verdigrease and vitrolle, of each like quantity made into powder, stirring it till it be red and thick; then being warme, annoynt the sore place therewith once a day after it hath bene washed with warme water: and this not onely helps the paines, but also any sovrance; whatsoe-

ver,

ver of like nature about the legges.

Also greene Copporas and roach Allome, of each halfe a pound, and a handfull of Bay-salt boyled in a gallon of running water, will heale it; or else unto it adde a pint of hony, and boyle it over again, and it wilbe the better: then when you have annointed the sore therewith, rub it after with the powder of glasse, Mustard and Vinegar mixt together, and afterward thinne it with Creame, and the inner rinde of Elder beaten to a salve, which must be applyed to the sore twice a day at the least.

CHAP. XCII.

Of the Mules, or Kybe Heeles.

THese Mules, or Kybed-heeles, are certained dry scabbes or chappes breeding behinde upon the heeles of a horse, and so a little inward even to the fetlocke, in long chaps and Chinckes: it proceedeth either from corruption of blood, or from being bred in wet marriish groundes, or else from uncleane and negligent keeping, in such manner as the Paines are bred: this sorrancc will make the horses legge to swell much, especially in the Winter, and about the Spring time, and hee will goe stiffely, and halt much.

Now for the cure, you shall understand, that whatsoever healeth the Paines, the same will in like sort heale those Kybed heeles; yet for more particularity, you shall know, that the old Farriers did use for this sorrancc, if they took it at the beginning, but onely to annoynt it for two or three dayes with

fope, and then after to wash it with strong urine, or Beefe-broth till it were whole: but if it were of any long continuance, then first to cut away the haire, and lay the fore open and plaine; then take two ounces of unsleack't Lime, one ounce of Sope, and the white of an egge, or else an ounce of unsleack't Lime, and as much Salt, and three ounces of Soote, and mingling them with strong vinegar, annoynt the fore therewith, and it will heale and kill them.

Other Farriers use to calcinate *Tartar*, and dissolve it to water: then congeale it like salt, and mingle it with sope like an oynment, and then dresse the fore therewith, and this wil in eight and forty houres heal any Mules, Paines, or Scratches, wharsoever. If you take the iuyce of the leaves and roors of *Elder* it is very good to dry up any of these evill humors.



CHAP. XCIII.

Of *Winde-galles*.

THE *Wind-gall* is a little blebbe or bladder full of corrupt jelly, and like the white of an egge, growing on each side of the Master-sinew of the leg, hard above the pastorne. Now of them some will be big and some will be little, and there will be sometimes more then one or two of a Cluster, and they are to painefull, especially in the Sommer season, when the weather is hot, and the wayes hard, that the horse is not able to travell, but halteth downe right: they proceede commonly from extreame labour in the Sommer time upon hard wayes, whereby the hu-

mors

mours being dissolved, do flow and resort into the hollow places about the neather joynts, which are most beaten and feebled with travell, and there are congealed and covered with a thin skinn like a bladder: they are most apparant to be seene and felt.

The cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is to take a knife, & open it in the length of a beane, piercing no further into it then through the skin of the bladder, and then thrust out the jelly, which as I said before, will be like the white of an egge; then take the yolke of an egge, and as much oyle *De bay* as a good nut, and mixing them together, make a plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, and in two or three dayes it will heale it. Others of the olde Farriers dresse it with *Euforbium* and *Cantharides*, in such sort as is shewed for the taking away of the splent; but if that wil not serve, then with a hot drawing Iron to draw the Windgall in this sort:  then to open the middle line with a Lancet,  the length of a beane, and thrust out the jelly: then lay Pitch and R-zen molten together upon it, and then a few floxe, and that will take it cleane away. Other Farriers use to rake up the Master-veines on the inside of his legges, and suffer him onely to bleede from below: then having put up the veine, cover all his legge over with a playster of Wine lees and wheare flower mingled together, and rowle it with a long rowler: dresse him in this sort once a day till it be whole.

Others use to open the skinne and put out the jelly; then take a spoonfull of oyle *De bay*, a spoonefull of Turpentine, a penny worth of Verdigrease, the

white of an egge, and a quarter of an ounce of red lead, boyle them together till it come to a salve; then lay it to the Winde-gall and it will cure it; or else after you have let out the jelly, take Rozen, sheepes suet, and Brimstone, of each a like; and melt them together, and lay that upon the Winde-gall, so it be not too hot, and it will cure it. Others take the rootes of Comen and beate them well with a little salt, and lay that to the Winde-gall; or else annoynt them with the juyce of Onions or Leek-blades, and that will allay them: or else ground ivy and Wormewood with the rootes scdde in Wine and laid to the Wind-gall, will take them away. Others of our later experienced Farriers, take an ounce of whire waxe, an ounce of Rozen, two ounces of raw Hony, three ounces of Swines grease, two ounces of oyle of the yolkes of egges, five ounces of oyle *de bay*; mixe all these well together and straine them: then rubbe them into the Winde gall, by holding a hot barre of iron against the oyntment, and it will take the Wind-gal away. Now for the making of the oyle of the yolkes of egges, it is thus: First seeth the egges hard, then stampe them, and seeth them in an earthen pot with a soft fire, and so straine them. Now this medicine will not only heale the Winde-gal, but the Ring-bone also, it is very good for the abating of the wind-gal, and for making the medicine to worke the better, to let the horse stand in a cold running stream an houre morning and evening. The scum of the foure salts sod in mans urine, and laid to the Wind-gal, will take it away.

There bee others which take a pottle of vine-gar,

gar, a pound of Orpiment, a quarter of a pound of galles, and as much of the hearbe Molleyne stamp small, mingle these well together, and put them into a pot; then every day therewith bathe the wind-gall, and in three weekes it will dry them cleane up; it will also take away a curbe or a spaven, or a ring-bone, if you take them at the first breeding. Other Farriers take of Civill oyle and brimstone, of each like quantity, and seeth them in mansurine, and stirre them well together; after put in the quanry of a Walnut of sope, to keepe the haire from scalding off: then bathe the winde-gall with this hor, thrice together, rubbing it wel in: then annoynt it above with nerve-oyle, and oyle de bay, and make it, by holding to it a hot barre of Iron, or a hot fire-panne to sinke into the flesh, and in three dayes it will drye up any winde-gall.

Now for mine owne part, the best medicine I have found in my practise for this Sorrance, and the easiest, is with a fine lancit to open the winde-gall, making the hole no bigger then that the jelly may come forth: then having thrust it cleane forth, lap a wollen wet cloath upon it, and with a Taylors hot pressing iron, rub upon the cloath till you have made the cloath sucke in all the moysture from the winde-gall, and that the wind-gall is dry: then take of pitch, of rozen, and of masticke, of each like quantity, and being very hot, daub it al over the winde-gal; then clapp good store of floxe of the colour of the horse upon it, and so let the horse rest or run a grasse till the playster fall off by its owne accord, and be sure the wind-gall will be gone.

Now I would give you this for a rule, that by no meanes you use to a wind-gall, either Arsnick or Resalgar: for commonly then the wind-gall will come againe; neither must you burne much, nor make any great incision: For any of these wil turne the soft substance of the winde-gall to hardnesse, and then the horse will be lame without cure.

CHAP. XCIIII.

*Of a straine in the Pastorne joynt, or
Fet-locke.*

A Horse may be strained in the Fet-locke, or Pastorne joynt, either by some wrench in the stable when the plaunchers are broken under him, or by treading awry upon some stone, or upon some Cart-rout, as he travelleth by the way. The signes whereof bee these: the joynt will be swolne and sore, and the horse will halt; and the cure, according to the old Farriers, is, take a quart of stale urine, and seeth it till the foame arise; then straine it, and put thereto a handfull of Tansie, and a handfull of Mallowes, and a saucerfull of honey, and a quarter of a pound of Sheepes suet: then set it on the fire, and seeth them all together till the hearbes be sodden soft; and then being very hot, lay this *Pultus* to the joint, & cover it over with a blew cloth; and in three times dressing it will helpe the straine.

Other Farriers take of *Dialthea* halfe a pound, and as much Nerue-oyle, mingle them well together and anoint the sore place therewith, chafing it well with both your hands that the oymtent may enter in, continu-

continuing so to do every day once untill the oyntment be all spent, and let the horse rest, but if this will not prevaile, then they will use *Cantharides*: as in case of the splent: but I do not hold that cure convenient, because it will make a double grieve. Therefore I had rather you should take Pompillion, Nerve oyle, and black sope, of each alike, and heate them hot on the fire: and then annoint the sore place therewith, and it will make the horse sound.

CHAP. XCV.

*To remedy any manner of halting that cometh by
straine, stroke, or any other accident.*

NOW forasmuch as halting is such a generall for-
rance amongst horses, that not any man that is
master of a horse, but even in his smallest travell, is
at one time or other vexed with the same, I will
here before I doe proceede any further, set you
downe certaine generall receipts selected and culled
out of the privat practise and experiments of the best
Farriers in Christendome, of which I may give the
bolder testimony, because I have made practise of
their vertues.

If then your horse have taken any halt, either
by stiffenesse of sinewes, straine, wrench, stroke, or
any other accident, if the grieve bee in his legge,
you shall take Smallage, Oxe-eye, and sheepes suet,
of each a like quantity, choppe them altogether,
and boyle in it mans urine, and bathe all the legge
therewith: then with Flew-ropes wet in cold water,

rowle up his legge, and he will be able to travell the next day.

☞ If you seeth a pound of blacke sope in a quart of strong Ale till it looke like Tar, and annoynt the leg therewith, and it will supple his sinewes, and bring them to their true course. If you wash his limbes with the grounds of Beere or Ale made warme, and then rope them up with hay-ropes wet in the same, it will recover a straine. If you take of the flower of Lin-seed, of Turpentine, and life hony, of each a like, and boyle them with white wine untill they be thick like unto an oyntment: then spread it on a cloth, and lay it to the grieve, and it will take away any ache or paine in the sinews: likewise a plaister of wine lees and wheat-flower, or a plaister of blacke sope and Boars grease will do the like.

☞ If you mixe Nerve oyle, oyle *de bay*, and Aqua-viræ together, and warme it, and chafe it in, and upon and about the straine, it will take the anguish quite away. If the grieve be in the shoulder, or the hinder legge, then burne him upon the very joynt, by taking up the skinne with a paire of pinsons, and thrust the skin through with a hot iron over-thwart; and if this cure him not, then his paine is berwixt the thin skin and the bone, which must then be rowelled. If the grieve be in the shoulder, or in the hip, or elsewhere, then let him bloud, and saving the blood, mixe therewith the powder of Frankinsence, and annoynt the horse with the same. If the grieve be onely in the sinewes, then take the plaister called *Sologliatinum*, made of Gum-dragant, new waxe, pitch and Turpentine mixt together; or else take the yolkes of two eggs,

an ounce of Frankincense, and a little bray, and beat them well together, and lay it to the pain. If the griefe do proceed from a hot cause, then let the horse bleed, and with that blood mixe vinegar and oyle, and annoynt him, and chafe it well in. But if it proceed from a cold cause, then let him bleed a little, and with figges soaked a day in warm water, and as much Mustard-seed, make a plaister, and lay it to the griete. If it come either by any rush or stripe, let the horse bleed, & with that blood mingle strong vinegar, eggs, shels and all, three ounces of *Sanguis Draconis*, four of Bole-armony, and five of wheate-meale, and daube it all over the sore place. If the griefe bee in the shoulder, and the skinne broken, take Gillies of *Soria* pand, and mingle them with hony, and lay it to the sore. If his paine come from the stiffenesse of his joynts, take a pound of blacke sope, and boyle it in a quart of Ale til it be thicke, and it wil comfort the joynts. If the joynts be sweld, then Rosen, Pitch, Turpentine, and *Sanguis Draconis*, molten together, and lay it to the swelling something warme, and it will either rake away the swelling, or else ripen it and make it runne. If you take of the oyle of Camomile, oyle of Dil, butter and Agripa, of each a like quantity; or else make a plaister of an ounce of Turpentine, halfe an ounce of Verdigrease, and the marrow of a Stagge; or bathe the horse with warme water, wherein Rosemary hath beene sod, and it wil ease any paine whatsoever. If the horses payne bee in his shoulder, first with a Lancer pricke the skin through betweene the spale-bone and the marrow-bone: then putting in a quill, blow the skin from the flesh even

even all about: then thrusting out the winde with your hand, put in a rowell; then take a pottle of stale urine, seeth it with a pound of butter, and as much Swines grease, and a handfull of Mallowes, a handfull of ranse, a handfull of veruine, a handfull of red nettles, a handfull of southernwood, and a handfull of balmeleaves, then beate them all well together, and so annoynt his shoullder therewith, and let him not goe forth of the stable for seven dayes. If his grieve be in any neather joynt, then take a handfull of Laurell leaves, and of Prim-rose leaves, of ground Ivy, of Crow-foot, of Mallowes, of red fennell, and of fine hay, of each of them severally as much; seeth them well together, and then let them stand fourteen dayes; then bathe the joynt once a day, and binde on the hearbs unto it four dayes together: then after chafe into the joynt fresh grease and oyle mixt together, and it will ease all his paine. Now to conclude, if any joynt or member about a horse be by any fluxe of humours sweld and growne out of shape whereby the horse goeth stiffe, and halteth; then to dissolve those humours, take Wormewood, Sage, Rosemary, the barke of the Elmetree, and of a Pine, together with Lin-seed, and boyling these together, make a bathe or *Pultus* thereof, and lay it to the sicke member, and it will dissolve the humours, and so likewise will sigs being stampd with salt, and applyed to the sore.

CHAP. XCVI.

*Three rare and well approved medicines which wil cure
any manner of straine or swelling whatsoever,
be it hard or soft, by what accident
soever it shall come.*

If the straine bee newly taken, you shall then take vinegar of the best a pint, and of sweet butter better then a quarter of a pound, and melt them over the fire: then with fine wheat branne, make it into a *Pultus* upon the fire, and lay it as hot to the strain as the horse is able to endure it without scalding: and doe thus morning and evening till the straine be aswaged. But if the straine be of longer continuance, then take Mallowes and Chicke-weede, and boyle them either in the grounds of Ale, or of strong Vrine, and lay them very hot to the straine. Lastly, if your straine, by length of time, or evill Medicines, be growne, in mens imaginations, past cure, the sinewes and swelling being hony, hard, and knotted: then you shall take Peece-grease, which is made of Shooe-makers shreds, and melting it on the fire, annoynt and bathe the straine therewith very hot, not only chafing it exceedingly with your hand, but also holding a hot bar of iron against it to make the ointment sink in: then take a fine linnen rowler, and rowle up the legge gently: doe thus once a day, and it will take away the greatest and most desperate straine that may be.

CHAP.

CHAP. XCVII.

*Another certaine approved cure for any
straine whatsoever.*

☞ **T**AKE Boares grease, Bolearmonicke, blacke sope
and Nerve oyle, of each a like quantity, boyle
them well together, & then apply it hot to the grief,
rubbing and chafing it in exceedingly, & also heating
it in very well, either with a hot brick-bar, a hot fire-
shovel, or a hot bar of iron. And thus do once a day
til the paine depart.

CHAP. XCVIII.

Of Enterfearing.

ENTERfearing is either when a horse through a na-
tural straitnesse in his pace, or through evill and
too broad shoeing goeth so narrow behinde with
his hinder feete, that he heweth the one against the
other upon the inside of his legges, even with the
pastorne joynt; and by meanes of this hewing there
groweth hard mattery scabs, which are so sore, that
they many times make the horse to halt much. The
signes are the straitnesse of his going, and the appa-
rantnesse of the scabbes. Now the cure consisteth
as much in prevention as in salve: For the preven-
tion, which is to keepe a horse from hewing one
legge uppon another, it consisteth onely in the of-
fice of the Smith, and the making of his hinder
shoes, whereby he may goe wider, and not touch:
of which we shall speake more at large when we in-

treate

treate of paring and shoeing of each severall foot. For the salve which is to cure the hurt being once received, it is thus: You shall take of May butter (if you can get it) or else fresh grease or fresh butter, with a quantity of Rozen, and as much Nerve-oyle: then frye them all together in a pan, and then let it stand till it be cold, and put it in a pot, and put to it a little Cow-dung: and then plaister wise apply this unto the sore, renewing it once a day, and it will not only heale this sore, but also any pricke by a nayle whatsoever.

CHAP. XCIX.

Of the shackle gall, or gall in the pastorne, whether by shackle or Locke.

If a horse be galled in the pastorne, on the heele, or upon the coronet, either with shackle or Locke, as it many times happens in the Champion Countreies, where the Farmers use much to teacher their horses: then for such a sore you shall take Honey and Verdegrease, and boyle them together till the one halfe be consumed, and that it looke red: then after it is a litle cooled, you shall annoynt the sore place therewith twice a day, and then strew upon it a litle chapt floxe to keepe on the salve. This is excellent for any gall whatsoever, and chiefly for the scratches.

CHAP. C.

Of hurts in the legges which cometh by casting in the balter.

The hurts which a horse getteth by being cast in the balter, are many, and proceede from divers accidents.

accidents, as when the reins of the Coller are so long, and wil not run to and fro, that the horse gets one or both his fore-legs or hind-legs over them, and then with struggling, woundeth and galleth them much; or else when a horse having desire to scratch his eare with his hinder foote, rubbing it to and fro, in the end fastneth his foot either in the coller or the reines, and then the more he striverh to loosen it, the more he galleth and woundeth it, even sometimes to the very bone. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus: Take of oyle olive one ounce, of Turpentine two or three ounces, melt them together over the fire, and then put thereunto a little waxe, and working them all wel together lay it plaister-wise unto the sore, renewing it once a day untill it bee whole. Now there bee other Farriers which onely annoynt the sore with the whites of egges and sallet oyle mixt together, and then when the sore commeth to a scabbe, annoynt it with butter being molten untill it looke browne.

Now for mine owne part, the cure which I principally use for this sorranee, is to take of waxe, of Turpentine, and of hogges grease, of each one ounce, and having mingled and molten them well together put them into a pott: then take an ounce of Verdigrease beaten to powder, and an ounce of Hoggrease, and mixe them very well together, and put that into another pott: then when you dresse the sore, take of the first salve two parts, and of the latter the third part, and mixing them well together in the palme of your hand, annoynt all the sore place therewith, doing thus once a day till it be whole.

CHAP. CII.

Of the Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayles.

THe Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayles, being all but one forrance, are long, scabby, and dry chappes, or rifts, growing right up and downe, and overthwart on the hinder legges, just from the fetlocke upon the place of the Curbe; and as the Paines are under the fetlocke, so the Scratches are above the fetlocke: and doe proceed either from dry melancholly humors ingendred by outward filth, or else by the stinging of the horses dung, lying either neere, or under him. The signes are both the apparant sight, and the easie feeling of the same, besides the stinging, dividing, and curling of the haire, as also that the forrance will sinke much. The cure is, according to the opinion of the olde Farriers, to take any of these former Medicines whatsoever, which are already recited, either for the Paines, or Mules: yet for your more particular understanding, you shall know, these medicines are most proper for this forrance. First, you shall shave away the haire, and make the sore raw: then take of Turpentine halfe a pound, of hony halfe a pint, of Hogges-grease halfe a quarterne, and three yolkes of egges, and of *Role-armony* a quarterne beaten into powder, of Beane-flower half a pint; mixe all these well together and make a salve thereof, and then with your finger annoynt all the sore places therewith, and let the horse come in no wee during the cure. *Other Farriers use* (and sure it is the better practise),

fi. st,

first after they have shaved away the haire, and laid the sore raw, to wash it well with olde urine very warme, then take blacke sope, Mustard, and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, and mixe therewith some of an Oxe-gall; then stirre them well together, and chafe and rubbe the place therewith, and bind thereto a cloath, so use it once a day till it be whole: then after annoynt it with Neares-foote oyle to supple the sinewes againe. Others use to take the finest hay, and burn it to ashes upon a faire board, then mixe it with Neares-foote oyle, and make a salve thereof; then all to rub the sores untill they bleed, and then annoynt them with the said salve, and rope his legs and keepe them from wet. Others use after they have washed the sore with old stale, then to take a quantity of strong Mustard, Vinegar, gray sope, Barrowes grease, and some Quick-silver; mixe them together, and therewith annoynt the sore.

Other Farriers take a quantity of unlesckt lime, halfe so much blacke sope, and so much of strong Vinegar as shall suffice to make it like an ointment: then the haire being cut away, and the sore washed with urine, lay to this ointment, renewing it not the space of two dayes, and it will kill the sorrance: then wash the place once or twice with warm wine; then after heale it with Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together; & in no wise let the horse come in any wet. Others use after they have washed the sore place with urine, and clipt away the haire, and made the wound raw, to take butter and tartre, of each a like, and boiling them together, annoynt all the sore place therewith every day till it be whole.

Others

Others take of hony and verdigrease of each a like, and boyle them together until halfe bee consumed, and then annoint the sore therewith once a day until it be whole. Others of our latter Farriers use either to shave off the haire, or scald it off with orpiment and unsleckt lime boyld in strong lee; then wash it with warme vineger or white wine, then when it is dry annoynt it with this oyntment. Take of Orpiment one ounce, of verdigrease three ounces, of soote five ounces, a little unsleckt lime, and of honey one pound; mingle them all wel together upon a soft fire, and being made like an oyntment, use it as afore said once a day to the sore; or else take honey, sope, verdigrease, unsleckt lime and vineger, and boyle them with Allome, galles, and maile, till it come to a plaister, and then apply it unto the sore; or else boyle sallet oyle with a little suet and sope, then skimme it and take it from the fire; then add an ounce of quicke-silver resolved, two ounces of verdigrease, three ounces of unsleckt lime, & ene ounce of white wax: when all these are wel mixt together, and made into a salve, then apply it once a day unto the sore untill it be whole.

Other Farriers use after they have shaved the place, to boyle vineger and the skin of larde or Bacon together, and apply that to the sore three daies together: then take larde molten, litargie, masticke, verdigrease and soote mingled together, with goates milk and lay it to, renewing it once a day untill the sore bee healed. The scraping of a pannes bottom mixt with the ianner pills of Elder, are also good for the scratches; or new mans dung applyed for

five dayes, and after annoynt the sore with oyle and sope mixt together. Others take of unslekt lime, the powder of glasse, and of Verdigrease, of each one an ounce; of Orpiment an ounce; of oyle and of fresh grease, of each foure ounces; mixe all these well together, and apply it to the sore untill it bee whole: If you take blacke snails and burre rootes, and beate them together, it will also helpe this forrance. Other Farriers take an ounce of sope, two ounces of unslekt lime, and as much lye, or stronge vinegar as will temper it, and so dresse the sore untill it be whole. Others take Fenugreeke and beate it, three Oranges cut in peeces, halfe a pound of sheeps spet, new sheeps dung; boyle all these in the grounds of good Ale, and then bathe the horse therewith as hot as may be: then rope him up with hay ropes, and so let him stand three dayes, then bathe him so againe.

Others take hogs grease, sope, brimstone, soot, and honey, boyle them and lay them to coole, you may also adde Verdigrease; but before you lay on this oymment, scrape the scabs off and make them bleed, and rub them with sope, mustard, and vinegar mixt together.

CHAP. CII.

*A most certaine and approved cure for the
Scratches.*

After you have cut away the haire, rubb off the scabs, and wash the sores with old urine, Allom and Salt mixt together, and applied as hot as the horse

horse can suffer it; Then take the toppes and tender buds of Elder, and the greene bryer berries, and boylethem in a pottle of new wort, and put thereto good store of Allome, and with this hot wash the horses legge once, twice or thrice a day, and it is a certaine cure.

CHAP. CIII.
Of the Ring-bone.

THe Ring-bone is a forrance, which appeareth above upon the cronet of the hooft, being a certaine hard gristle going sometimes round about the same: It proceedeth as some Farriers hold opinion, either from some blow of another horse, or by striking the horses foote against some stub or stone, or such like accident: But surely I hold that it also proceedeth from some imperfection in nature, for as much as I have seene many foales foaled with Ring-bones on their feete. These Ring bones doe breed a viscons and slimy humour, which resorting to the bones that are of their own nature cold & dry, waxeth hard, and cleaveth to some bone, and so in proceffe of time becommeth a bone. The signes of the forrance are, the apparant sight of the forrance, being higher then any part of the cronet, the staring of the haire, and the halting of the horse.

The cure according to ancient Farriers, is first to scarifie the skin above the ring-bone with a lances, then take a great onyon and pick out the chere, then put into it Verdigrease and unsleckt lime, then cover the hole, and roast the onyon soft, then bruisse it in a

morter, and so very hot lay it to the ring-bone: doe thus foure daies together and it wil cure it. Others of the oid Farriers use first to wash the sorrhance with warme water, and shave away the haire: then scarifie it lightly with the point of a razor so as the blond may issue forth: then dresse it with *Cantharides* and *Enforbium* in such sort as hath beene taught for the splent, using him, and curing him after the same manner; but when the haire beginneth to grow againe, then draw the sore place with a hot drawing Iron in straight lines, from the pastorne downe to the coffin of the hooft in this manner: and let the
||| edge of the drawing Iron bee as thicke as the
||| backe of a meate knife, and burne him no deeper then that the skin may looke yellow: that done, cover the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and clap thereon floxe of the horses owne colour, and about three dayes after lay againe some of the last mentioned plaister, and also new floxe upon the old, and there let them remaine til they fall away of themselves. Others use to shave of the haire, and to scarifie the sore with a Lancet til it bleede: then strew upon it the powder of *Tartar*, & salt, of each alike mixt together, and bind it strait: then after annoynt it with fresh grease, or else soften the Ring-bone with the skinne of old Bacon, the fat being scraped off that you may see through the skinne, and laid to after it is shaven and made bleed, after launce it and let out the Ring-bone. Others use to launce the skinne with a Razor, then opening the skinne with a corner, pricke the Ring-bone. Lastly, strew upon it the powder of *Vitriolle*, and bind it on
so

so as it may not stir for nine daies; then thrust out the matter which is dissolved. Lastly, wash it with salt, with urine and vineger mixt together. Other Farriers doe use after they have shaved it, to lay unto it a plaister made of bran and hony, with the yong leaves of worme-wood, pellitory, and *Branke-urfine* mingled with swins grease and beaten together, and boyled, and used as hot as the horse can suffer it. This medicine will not onely cure the ring-bone, but any other swelling whatsoever. Also a plaister of the leaves of smallage being beaten to peeces is not onely good for this sorrance but for any windgall also. To wash a ring-bone continually with strong vineger will abate it: or else to shave away the haire, and take half a Lemmon and sprinkle Arsnick thereupon, and lay it to the ring-bone and it will eate it away, if twice or thrice a day you bind a hard egge burning hot unto the ring-bone it will take it away. Lastly, if you take *Enforbium*, and mingle it with oyle of Iuniper, salt and pepper, and so apply it to the ring-bone, it will in a very short space consume the ring-bone quite away; alwayes provided that you keepe the horse from any wet during his cure.

CHAP. CIIII.

*Of hurts on the cornet by crossing one foote
on another.*

IF your horse by crossing one foote upon another, chance to wound or hurt the corner of his hoofe, you shall then according to the opinion of the old Farriers, first wash it well with white wine, or with

warne urine, and then lay unto it the white of an egge mixt with chimney-soote and salt; and that if it be renewed once a day will in two or three dayes dry up the sore. Other Farriers use first to pare or cut away the hoofe that it touch not the hurt, and keepe it cleare from filth by washing it with urine: then seeth two egges hard and take off the shelles, then presse them with your hand long, and first roast one hot and tye it to hard; when that is cold use the other: after make a plaister of soote, salt and oyle boyled together, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day untill it be whole.

CHAP. CV.

A most certaine and approved cure for any hurt upon the crowne whatsoever.

TAKE of Sope and salt of each a like quantity, and mixe them together like a past, then having cut out the over-reach or hurt and lay it plaine: first wash it with urine and salt, or beare and salt, and with a cloth dry it, then binde on the mixt sope and salt, not renewing it in 24. houres, and thus do (if the wound be great) for 3. or 4. dayes together: Then having drawne out all the venome (as this salve will quickly doe) then take a spoonefull or two of Traine oyl, and as much *Ceruse*, which we call white lead, and mixe it together to a thicke salve: then spread that upon the sore morning and evening till it be whole, which will be effected suddenly: for nothing doth dry up sooner, nor is more kindly and naturall for the breeding of a new hoofe,


CHAP. CVI.
Of the Crowne Scabbe.

THe Crowne Scabbe is a stinking and filthy scabbe, breeding round about the cornets of the hooft, and is a cankerous and painefull sorrhance, it cometh oft-times by meanes that the horse hath been bred in a fenny marish ground, where the cold striking corrupt humours up to his feete, ingendred this sorrhance, which is ever more paineful in the winter then in the summer. The signes are, the haire of the corner will bee very thin and staring like bristles, and the cornets will bee alwaies mattering and run on water. Now the cure according to the opinion of many Farriers is, to take the skin of Bacon, and lay thereon soote and salt beaten together, mingled with grease or suet, waxe, and pitch molten together, and if the flesh chance to grow proud, cate it away either with Verdigrease beaten to powder, or with the serapings of a Harts horne, or an Oxe horne made into fine powder.

Other Farriers use to take of sope, & of hogs-grease of each halfe a pound, of Bolcarmony a little, of Turpentine a quarterne; mixe them wel together, and make a plaster and bind it fast on, renewing it every day once until it leave running; and then wash it with strong vinegar being luke warme, every day once until the sore bee cleane dried up, and let the horse come in no wet until the sorrhance be whole. Others use onely to bathe it continually with old stale sod with salt, &c that wil dry up the humour and heale it.

CHAP. CVII.

Of the Quitter-bone.

THe Quitter-bone is a hard round swelling upon the Cronet of the hooſe, betwixt the heele and the quitter, and groweth moſt commonly on the inſide of the foote: It breedeth moſt commonly by meanes of Gravell gathered underneath the ſhooe, which fretteth inward, and forceth an ulcer to break upward: or elſe it chammeth by the cloying or pricking of ſome naile driven by an ignorant Smith, the anguiſh whereof looſeneth the Griſtle, and ſo breedeth evill humors, whereof the Quitter-bone ſpringeth: the ſignes are, the Horſe wil hake much, and the ſwelling is apparant to the eye, which in foure or five daies commeth to a head, and will breake out with matter at a little deepe hole like a Fiſtula, and ſurely then this Quitter-bone, there is no outward Sorrance whatſoever more dangerous to a Horſe. The cure thereof according to the opinion of ſome of the ancient Farriers is, fiſt to cut the hooſe to the quicke: then ſeeth a Snake or an Adder till the fleſh part from the bone, and be molten as an unguent; then annoyat the ſore place therewith very warme even to the bottoſe, and during the cure
 61 keepe the foote cleane from any filth; for this both dryeth and killeth the Quitter-bone. Other of the old Farriers fiſt burne about the Quitter-bone with a hot Iron in manner of a halfe Circle, and then with the ſame Iron draw another right through the miſt thereof in this ſort:  then take of Arſnicke the quantity of a Beane beaten into fine powder, and put it into the Hole; thruſting

sting it downe to the bottome with a quill, and stop the mouth of the hole with a little tow, and bind it so fast with a cloth and a rowler that the horse may not come at it with his mouth, and so let it rest for that day; and the next day if you see that the fore looketh blacke within, then it is a signe that the Arsnicke did worke well; then to allay the burning of it raint the hole with flaxe dipt in Hogges-grease, and Turpentine molten together, and cover the raint with a plaister of pitch, Rosen, waxe and Turpentine molten together, but there must be as much Turpentine as of all the rest: and thus you must continue to doe untill you have gotten out the chore, which the Arsnicke did eate; then shall you see whether the loose gristle in the bottome bee uncovered or not: and if it be not uncovered, then feele with your finger or with a quill whether you be nigh it or not; and if you be, then raise the gristle with a little crooked instrument, and pul it cleane out with a paire of small nippers or mullers made for the purpose: that done, thrust it againe with a full raint, dipt in the foresaid oyntment, to assuage the anguish of the last dressing, and stop it hard to the intent that the hole may not shrinke together or close up: and the next day take out that raint, and raint it a new with honey and verdigrease boyld together till they look red, renewing it every day once untill it bee whole, keeping alwaies the mouth of the sore as open as you may to the intent that it heale not up too fast, and let not the horse come in any wet, nor travell until hee bee perfectly whole. Other Farriers use to cut the hooft open to the quicke; then take Galba-

num, *Sagapennum*, pitch of Greece, *Olibannum*, *Ma-
sticke*, oyle and white waxe of each an ounce, with
halfe a pound of sheepes suet : melt them upon a soft
fire and incorporate them wel together, and there-
with dresse the sore place until it bee whole. Other
use after the sore is opened to put in salt of *Tartar*,
and when it hath eaten away the *Quitter-bone*, to
heale it up with honey and verdigrease boyled as a-
foresaid. Others take of Goates dung two ounces,
of sheepes tallow three ounces, and as much strong
vineger as will suffice to boyle them wel in, and then
therewith to dresse the *Quitter-bone* untill it bee
cleane whole.

CHAP. CVIII.

Of gravelling a horse.

GRavelling is a certaine fretting of gravel, sand, or
dirt, under the foote betwixt the sole and the
shoe, sometimes on the inside, and sometime on the
outside of the foote, and sometimes of both sides
of the heele. It commeth as I said by meanes of lit-
tle gravell stones getting betweene the hoofe, or cal-
king or sponge of the shoe, which by continuall la-
bour and travell of the horse doth eat through the
hoofe into the quicke of the foote; and the rather if
the horses heeles be soft and weak, or that the shoe
doe lye flat to his foote, so as the gravell being got-
ten in it cannot get out againe.

The signes whereof are these, the horse will halt
much, and cover to goe most on his toe to favour his
heele, and the softer the way is the more is the hor-
ses

ses case. Now for the cure according to the old Farriers it is thus; first pare the hoofe till you may see the sore, then take an ounce of Virgin waxe, and a quarter of an ounce of Rozen, and a quarter of Deeres suet, and halfe an ounce of Bboares grease, and beate them all well together in a morter, and then melt them together on the fire; that done, dip good store of flaxe therein, and so stop up the sore close and hard, and then you may travell the horse whither you please; and doe thus once a day untill the foote bee sound. Other of the old Farriers use first to pare the hoofe, and to get out the gravell with a drawing knife leaving none behind; then stop the sore place with Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together and laid on with a little tow or flaxe, and then clap on the shooe, to keepe in the stopping, renewing it every day once untill it bee whole, and suffer the horse to come in no wet untill it be healed. Now you must understand that if a gravelling be not wel stoppt to keep downe the flesh it wil rise higher then the hoofe, and so put the Farrier to much more paine, both in bolstring it, and abating that ill growne substance.

Others use onely to pare the foote, and picke out all the gravell cleane, then wash it well with Beere and salt; then melt into it tallow, Rozen, and pitch: then covering it hard and close with flaxe set on the shooe againe, and doe thus once a day. Others use after they have cleansed the sore to lay hurds into it, being dipt in the white of Egges, then after heale it with salt beaten small and mixt with strong vineger, or else with the powder of Galles, Salt, and Tarrar,
mixt

mixt together, which also is good for any cloying or pricking.

CHAP. CIX.
Of Surbating.

Surbating is a continuall beating of the hoofe against the ground, and it commeth sometimes by meanes of evill shooing lying too flat to his foote, or by going long bare-foote; and sometimes by the hardnesse of the ground, and the high lifting of the horses feete, either in his trot or in his amble; and the horses which are most subject to this forrance, are those which have either great round feete, or such as are flat footed, the Coffins whereof are weake and tender, and also those which have weake heeles. The signes of the grieve are, the horse will halt much and goe creeping and stiffe, as if he were halfe foundred.

The Cure according to the opinion of the old Farries is, to roast a couple of eggs exceeding hard, and then in the very violence of their heate, to burst them in the horses feete, and then poure hot boyling Saller oyl also amongst them, and so stop the shoee up close with a peece of leather, and two crosse splents of wood, and doe thus thrice in one fortnight and it will helpe him.

Others of the ancient Farriers take off the horses shooes, and pare him as little as may be; and if the shooes be not easie, that is to say, long, large, and hollow enough, then make them so, and tacked them on againe with foure or five nailes: that done,
stop

stoppe his feete with Hogges-g rease and bran boyled together so hot as may be, and also cover all the coffin round about with the same, binding all in together with a cloth, and a list fastned about the joint, renewing it every day once untill it bee sound; and give the horse during the cure warme water to drink and let him stand dry, and not have much travell.

Now if your horse surbate in your travell, if every night you stop his feete well with Cowes dung, or with Cowes dung and vineger, it will make him endure cut his journey. Or Cowes dung and new layd egges beaten together.

CHAP. CX.

*Of the Fricke in the sole of the Foote, either
by treading on a nayle, or any other
sharpe thing.*

IF a horse in his travell chance to tread either on a stubbe, naile, thorne, or any other sharpe thing whatsoever, by meanes whereof he is prickt in the sole of the foote, the rider shall perceive the same by the sudden faulting of the horse, who will instantly stand still and lift up his foot as desiring helpe: And if it chance at any other time, then the hauling of the horse, and the diligent searching of a carefull Farrier must finde out the mischief.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, first to pull off the shooe, and pare the foote, and with a drawing knife uncover the hole, making the mouth so broad as a two-pence:

pence: then tacke on the shoe againe; that done stoppe it by powring into the hole Turpentine and hogges-grease molten together, and lay some flaxe or tow upon it; and then stopp all the horses foot with Cowes-dung; and so covering it with a piece of leather, splent it with two crosse stickes, so as the stopping may abide in, renewing it every day once untill it be whole, and let the horse tread in no wet.

Now you must bee very carefull in the curing of this sorrhance: For if it bee not healed from the bottome, besides that it is dangerous to the life of the horse, it is also a great hazard that the sore will breake out at the toppe of the hooft, and so loosen the hooft round about, and perhaps make it fall cleane away; but if you see that it beginne to breake out above, then make a greater issue beneath, by opening the hole wider, and taking more of the sole away, that the flesh may have the more liberty: then take of Bolearmony halfe a quarteme, and of beane flowre as much, and two egges: beat them, and mingle them well together, and make a plaister thereof upon tow, and lay it round about the cornit, binde it fast on, and so let it remaine the space of two daies, and then renew it again, not failing so to do every two daies untill you see it wax hard and firme above: for this plaister being restrictive, will force the humours to resort alwayes downward; which humours must be drawne out with Turpentine and hogges grease as before, untill it leave mattering, and then dry it up with burnt Allome beaten into powder, and strewed upon the sore, with a little flaxe laid againe upon that, continuing

tioning so to doe every day once untill it bee hardened; and let not the horse come in any wet untill it be whole.

Other Farriers use to taint the sore with Tallow, Tarre, and Turpentine being molten together, and annoynt all the coffin and cornit of the hooft with Hole-armony and vineger beaten together till the sore be whole, especially if the thing which did prick the horse was venemous or rusty.

CHAP. CX.

To draw out either Stub, Thorne, or Iron, either out of the foote, or any other part of the body.

If either the Stub, the Thorne, the Iron, or any thing whatsoeuer, wherewith your horse is wounded, be gotten so deepe into the flesh that you cannot get hold upon it to pull it out; then according to the opinion of the old Farriers, (if you find that albeit it be too deepe, yet it is not much too deepe), you shall take a good quantity of blacke sope, and lay it to the sore for a whole night, and it will make it to appeare, so as you may pull it out with a paire of nippers: but if it lye very deepe, then you may open the place with a lancet, and thrusting in your nippers or nippers pull it out by strength, and afterwards heale up the wound as was before taught in the last Chapter.

Other Farriers say, that the rootes of reedes being stamp'd & mixt with honey, it will draw out any stub or nayle: so will also black snikes being stamp'd and wrought with fresh butter. Now if the place bee
much

much swoln, then it is good to mollifie it with a plaster made of worme-wood, Parietory, Beares foote Hogges-grease, and hony well boyled and mixt together, which will assuage any new swelling that commeth by stripe or otherwise. Now when you have gotten out that which you sought for, then you shall pour into the wound scalding oyle of olive; when that is cold, poure into it as hot Turpentine; when that is cold, strew on the powder of Sulphur, and then bolster his foote or the sore with hurds, and keep it from all wet and filthinesse.

CHAP. CXI.

Of the Figge.

IF a horse having received any hurt, as is before said, either by stub, great naile, thorne, bone, splent or stone, either in the sole, or any other part of the foote, and be not well dressed, and perfectly cured, there will growe in that place a certaine superfluous peece of flesh like unto a figge, full of little white graines as you see are in a figge. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, first with a hot Iron to cut the figge cleane away, and keepe the flesh downe with Turpentine, Hogges-grease, and a little waxe molten together and layd on with a little tow, stopping the hole hard that the flesh rise not, renewing it once a day untill the sore bee whole.

81 Now other of our latter Farriers use after they have as before is said cut away the figge, then to take the croppes of young Nettles, and chopping them

them very smal, lay them upon a cloath just as bigge as a figge: then take the powder of Verdigrease, and strew it thinne upon the chopt nettles, and so binde it to the sore, renewing it once a day untill the hoofe have covered the sore, and this is a most certaine cure.

CHAP. CXII.

Of a Retraite.

A Retrait is when a horse by the ill government of the Smith, is prickt in the foot with some ill driven naile, yet in such sort that it is immediatly espied, and the naile drawne backe againe, and although it proceedeth oftest from the negligence of the Smith, yet it may also come by reason of the weakenesse of the naile, and the hollownesse of the shanke: for when the naile is a little too weake, the point many times bendeth awry into the quicke, when it should goe right forth; and when it is hallow it shivereth in the driving into two parts, whereof one part razeth the quicke in pulling out, or else perhaps breaketh asunder, and so remaineth stil behind: and this kind of pricking is the worst of all other, because it will rankle worst, in as much as the flaw cankereth and remaineth still in the foot. The signes hereof are, first the apparant shrinking and struggling of the horse so soone as the quicke is touched; and next his much hasting: lastly you shal search his foot with a hammer, by knocking upon the clench of every naile: for when you knocke upon that naile where the grieve is, the horse will shrinke up his

F f

foot,

foor, and if that will not serve, then grope the hoof with a paire of pincons round about untill you have found the place grieved. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is first to pull off the shooe, and then open the place grieved, either with a butteris, or with a drawing-knife, so that you may perceive either by feeling or seeing, whether there bee any peece of nail or not; if there be, then pull it cleane out: after take of nettles halfe a handfull, and bruise them in a mortar, and put thereto a spoonefull of redde vinegar, and a spoonefull of blacke sope, and two ounces of brockes grease, or the fat of salt Bacon, and bray all these well together, and stop well the hole of the fore with this, and then tacke on the shooe againe, and you may safely adventure to travell him. Other Farriers use, after they have opened the sore, to stop the hole with Turpentine, waxe, and sheeps fuet molten together and so poured hot into the hole, and then lay a little tow upon it, and clap on the shooe againe, renewing it thus once every day untill it bee whole; during which time, the horse must not come in any wet, and it must bee stopped in this sort though it be but a pricke, without any peece of nail remaining: and if for lacke of looking to in time, this Retrait causeth the horse to breake out, then you shall cure it either with a restrictive plaister of Bole-armony, beane flowre and egges, mentioned in the 78. Chapter, or else with chopt nettles and verdigrease spoken of in the last Chapter.

Now there bee other Farriers, which not onely

ly for this retraite, but for any pricke in the Horses foote, use after they have laid open the wound, to take of Turpentine one ounce, of Tar on ounce, of pitch one ounce, of Beefe suet one ounce, and one head of Garlicke; boyle them all together and lay them to it so hot as may be suffered: and if it chance to breake out above the Hoofe, then apply also the same medicine unto it and it wil cure it.

CHAP. CXIII.

Of Cloying.

A Horse is said to be cloyed with a nayle, or prickt with a nayle, when the whole nayle is stricken into the quicke of the foot, and so remaineth still in the same and is clinshed as other nayles bee, by meanes whereof the horse halteth extremly. Now this grieve is knowne by searching the grieved place with a hammer or pinsons as is before said. Now for the cure according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus, if the horse halt immediately, then pul off his shooe, and open the hole untill it begin to bleed, and then stop up the hole with Turpentine, Waxe, and sheepes suet molten together, and powred in very hot, renewing it once a day until it bee whole, and let the horse tread in nowet, and let his shooe be rackt on againe as soone as hee is drest. Others use onely to poure into the hole hot scalding butter, and that wil heale it, or else to burne the hole with another nayle and that wil heale it. Other Farries use after they have opened wel the sore, to take halfe a pound of Frankinsence, a pound of Rosen, a pound

of Pitch of Greece, halfe a pound of blacke pitch, a pound of new waxe, a pound of goats grease, halfe a pound of varnish, halfe a pound of Turpentine, two ounces of oyle Olive; and melt them all together, and lay this to the hoofe. Plaister-wise, and it will not onely heale any pricke whatsoever, but also any crackes, chinks, or clefts in the hoofe howsoever they breed; provided that you let the horse tread in no wet during the cure: but if the fore chance to breake out on the top of the hoofe, then you shal take two or three yolkes of egges, whites and all beaten together, and adde thereunto an ounce of Bole-armoy, and as much beane or wheate-flowre as will thicken the same: then make a plaister thereof two fingers broad, and as long as wil goe round about on the top of the horses hoofe, bind it fast on with a rowler, and renew it once a day till it bee whole.

Other Farriers use after they have searched and laid open the wound; to put into it hurds dipt in the white of an egge: then stop the hole with salt beaten very small, mingled with Veruine and strong vinegar, and cover it with flaxe dipt in strong vinegar: or else holding up the horses foot, poure into the wound hot scalding oyle Olive: and when that is cold poure in hot Turpentine, and that being cold strew upon it the powder of Sulphure: then lay on the bolster of flaxe: then shooe him and keepe him from treading in any wet.

Others use to take Tallow, the powder of Sulphure, Mallows, and very strong vinegar; boyle them together untill they bee thicke like an ointment: then lay the same to the sore as hot as the horse

horse can endure it, renewing it once in twelve hours till it be whole.

Others use to take of honey and vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little oyle, and suet of a hee Gaote boyle them with a soft fire, and stirre it: when it waxeth red, adde Verdigrease and Vitriolle, of each a like, made into powder, still stirring it till it be thick and red; then stoppe the sore every day therewith untill it be whole, after you have washed it well with salt and vinegar. Others take Pepper, Garlick and Cabbage leaves beaten with Swines grease, and lay that to the sore: or else take Tallow and horse-dung, and mixing them well together, stop the sore therewith, and in short space it will cure it.

Other Farriers use to take off the shooe, and having opened the sore, to wash it with wine: then lay upon it the inner rinde of Elder, and through that melt in grease with a hot Iron: then tacked on the shooe againe, and do thus divers dayes together, and it is a certaine cure.

CHAP. CXIII.

Generall Observations for the Feete and Hooves of a Horse.

FORasmuch as the Feete and Hooves of a Horse are the onely Instruments of labour, and that a small grieve in that part deprives a man of the benefit and use of the rest; I thinke it not amisse before I speake of the particular diseases of the Hooves, to shew you some generall notes and observations which you shall observe for the benefit of the

feere. Know then, that first it is meete that you let your shooes before be rather short then too long, with strong Spunges, but no cawkins, and your nayles to have speciall good heads.

Let your shooes behinde have no cawkin on the out-side; but if he enter-teare; let the cawkin be on the in-side to make him cast outward, and let the in-side of of that side inward have a welt an inch deep or bee twice as thicke as the outside: but if all this helpe not his enter-fearing, then bring him unto an Amble; but if hee will not amble, burne him with a hot Iron betweene the legges, that the sorenesse thereof may make him goe wide behinde, which is an ordinary practise amongst the Italians and Frenchmen.

Let your shooes bee made of Iron that will not breake, of which our English is the best, the Spanish next, and the Danske worst. Let them also be light, yet so as they may be able to beare the burthen of the horse, being broder at the toes, then at the cawkins, or spunges.

Let your cawkins be short, and blunt at the poynts, and your spunges long and thicke.

Let your shooe be full as straight as the horne of the Hoofe so farre as the Nayles goe, and from the two heele nayles backe-ward, let the shooe be broader then the hoofe, that the shooe may be without the horne.

Give unto every shooe nine nayles, on each side foure, and one in the midst; and let the shankes of the nayles be very flat and thinne, that if the hoofe be naught, they may yet keepe the shooe firme with
little

little hold. and the neerer that your nayles are driven backe-ward towards the heele (so it be without danger) the faster the shooe will sit, and the harder to be puld away.

Let your cawkins sit a strawes breadth behinde the corner of the coffin, and let your nayle heads enter into the shooe, especially on the out-side, and by all meanes hollow your shooe so little as possible you can.

Pare very little or nothing at all from the heele of a horse: yet open his heeles as sufficiently as may be, because ever the heele must be thicke, and the toe thinne.

In faire wayes paire the sole thin, but in Frost, or stony wayes, pare as little as may be.

To conlude, when the hoof is higher on the out-side then on the inside, it will make a horse enter fear, and when it is higher on the in-side, it will make a horse straddle, so that a fair smooth table is of al most convenient. After travaile ever stop the in-side of the hoose with Cows dung, and rub the out-side and the Cronet with the sward of fat Bacon: for that will keep a rough, smooth, and a sound hoose. As your nayls have strong heads, so let them have thin shanks, for that will best prevent hurting, and keep the shooe close unto the hoose.

CHAP. CXV.

*Of loosening the Hoofe, and how to make
Hoofes grow.*

A Hoofe is sayd to bee loosened when there is dissolurion or parting of the horne or Coffin of the Hoofe from the flesh, at the setting on of the Cronet. Now if this dissolurion or parting bee round about the Cronet, then it proceedeth by meanes of some foundring; but if it bee but in part, then it proceedeth from some anguish caused either by the pricking of some chanell nayle, or other nayle piercing the sole, or quarters of the foote, or by some Quitter-bone, retraite, gravelling, or cloying, or such like accident. The signes of the thiseafe be these: When it is loosened by Foundring, then it will breake first, and the dissolurion will appeare on the fore part of the cronet, right against the toe, because the humour doth cover alwaies to descend towards the toe, but if it proceed from pricking, gravelling, or such like, then the Hoofe will loosen round about, equally even at the first, but when it proceedes from some quitter-bone, or hurt upon the cronet, then the Hoofe will breake right above the place that is offended, and most commonly will goe no further.

Now the cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, of what cause soever the loosening proceed, first to bee sure to open the hoofe in the sole of the foot, so as the humour may have free passage downward; and then to binde about the rop
of

of it, the Restrictive-plaister spoken of in the seaventyeight Chapter, and in the 117. Chapter, and in such sort as it is there written, and then heale it up with Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together. Others of the ancient Farriers take three spoonesfull of Tarre, and a quarter of a pound of Rosen, and halfe a handfull of Tansie, and halfe a handfull of Rew, and halfe a handfull of red Mints, and halfe an handfull of Southerne-wooe, and bray all these together in a mortar: then adde halfe a pound of butter, and a penyworth of Virgine Waxe; then melt them all together over the fire, untill it come to a thicke plaister or salve: then spread some of it upon a cloath and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day for seavendaies and it will heale it.

Others use to take the braines of a Swine or a Pig, and to stop his Hoofe very wel therewith three daies together, renewing it twice or thrice a day and it will grow fast, and endure as well, or rather better then ever it did. Other Farriers use to cut out the sole below, letting it bleede wel; after stop it with hards diprin the whites of eggs: tye this to for twenty foure houres, then wash it with strong Vinegar warmed, after fil it with Tartar and Salt of each a like quantity, let that remaine in two daies; then annoint it with the oyntment made of *Olibanum*, Masticke, pitch of Greece, of each a like, and a little *Sanguis Draconis*, and of new Waxe and sheeps suet as much as of the first, and melt and boyle them all very wel together, and let this oyntment be applyed once a day till the sore bee whole. But if you perceive that any new hoofe come, then cut away the old, lest the hard-

hardnesse of the one hinder the tendernesse of the other ; and then annoynt the new hoofe with suet, oyle, and waxe, of each a like boyled together, to make it grow; or else with pitch of Greece, Masticke, *Olibanum*, *Sanguis Draconis* and *Galbanum*, of each a like, being molren with suet : for this will make the new hoofe to grow also.

So will also new waxe, honey, oyle, swines grease, and sheepes suet, being boyled together, and when it is cold, adde Masticke, *Sanguis Draconis*, and Frankinsence, and incorporate them all together; for nothing sooner then this will make either new or olde hoofe grow. Others use to take shell snailles, and stampe them, and lay them twice a day to the sore: and it will either fasten the old hoofe, or quickly bring forth a new. Now there be other Farriers which first fill the sore with Turpentine, and after it hath laine twenty foure houres, then wash the sore with urine and Copporas water, then fill it either with verdigrease, or with sheepes tallow, pitch and rozen boyled together; in which, having dipt hurds, lay it to the sore very hot twice a day till it be whole.

CHAP. CXVI.

Of casting the hoofe.

THe casting of the hoofe is when the whole coffin thereof falleth cleane away from the foote; which commeth of all the former causes rehearsed in the last chapter, and is so apparant to the eye, that needeth none other signes. Now for the cure, it is thus, take of Turpentine one pound, of tarre halfe a pint

pint, of unwrought waxe halfe a pound, of sheepes
suet halfe a pound, and of salter oyle halfe a pint;
boyle all these things together, and stirre them con-
tinually untill they bee thoroughly mixt together;
then make a boote of leather, with a strong sole fit
for the horses foote, to bee laced fast about the Pa-
storne; then dresse his foote with the salve aforesaid,
layd upon flaxe or tow, and bolster or stop his foot
with soft flaxe, so as the boote may grieve him no
manner of wayes, renewing it every day once untill
the new hoofe come: then as the Hoofe beginneth
to harden, if it grow either thicke, crumpled, or out
of order; with a fine Rape file keepe it smooth and
plaine untill the hoofe be perfect, and then put him
to grasse, that there it may take a kindly hardning
and toughnesse.

CHAP. CXVII.

Of the Hoofe bound.

THe Hoofe-bound is nothing else but a shrinking
in of the whole hoofe in the upper part thereof,
and at the heeles, making the skin to stare above the
hoofe, and to grow over the same. It proceedeth
from keeping the horses hooves too dry in the stable,
or from strait shooing, or from some unnatural heate
after foundring; and the signes of the disease are, that
the horse will halt much, and his hooves will be hot;
and if you knocke upon them with an hammer, they
will sound hollow like an empty bottle; and if both
his feete bee not hoofe-bound, then the sore foote
will ever bee the lesser: and you shall also under-
stand,

stand, that this discaſe of ſome Farriers is called a dry foundring. Now for the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: take a pound of the ſward of Bacon, and a quarterne of a pound of white ſope, and a handfull of balme, and a handfull of bay leaves, and foure or five branches of Rew, and ſtamp them well together, and then frye them, and lay them about the corner of the hooſe very hot, ſuffering it ſo to abide the ſpace of five or ſixe dayes, and then renue it, but in no caſe let him tread in any wet place, and this will helpe him.

Other of the ancient Farriers uſe, firſt to pull off his ſhoes, and to ſhoehim with halfe moone ſhoes, called *Lunets*, or *Lunet*, the ſhape whereof you ſhall ſee in another place; then raze both the quarters of the hooſe with a drawing knife, from the cronet unto the ſole of the foote, ſo deepe that you may ſee the dew come forth: and if you make two razors, on each ſide, it ſhall be ſo much the berter, and inlarge the hooſe the more; that done, annoynt all the hooſe above, next unto the cronet, round about, with the oyntment deſcribed before in the laſt Chapter of caſting the hooſe; continuing ſo to doe every day once untill he begin to amend; and let him be-riden upon ſome ſoft ground an houre or two every day once for the ſpace of a moneth; and if hee goe not well at the moneths end, then take off the halfe ſhoes, and pare all the ſoles, friſh and all ſo thinne, that you may ſee the dew come forth, and taeke on a whole ſhooe, and ſtop all the foot within with Hogs-greafe and bran molten together, and laid very heate to the foot.

foote, renewing it every day once the space of nine dayes, to the intent the sole may rise; but if this will doe no good, then take away the sole cleane, and claspone a whole shoce, and stop the foot with Nettles and Salt braid together; yet stop it not too hard, to the intent the sole may have liberty to rise; and let this be renewed every day once till the sore be growne againe, and let him be shod with *Lunets*, and so sent to grasse. Other Farriers use onely to raze the hoofe from the Cronet to the verge of the hoofe in foure or five places, and rub it twice or thrice a day with Salt and that will open the Hoofe. Others use onely to open the Horse exceeding much at the heeles once a Weeke, and to shooe him with very wide open shooes, and then for a moneth or two to draw him in some Cart, that being forced to set his foote hard to the ground, hee may thereby stretch forth and widen his hoofe. Now to prevent this Sor-
 tance, it is good to annoynt his hoofes with Neates foote cyle, or with Turpentine, and to stop them underneath with Cowes dung.

CHAP. CXVIII.

Of the running or rotten Frush.

THE Frush, which of some is called the Frogge of the Foote, is the tenderest part of the hoofe towards the heele, and is fashioned like a forked Arrow head, being onely that part of the foote which Farriers cut forth, when they say they cut forth the Ale of the horses foote. Now in this Frush breedeth many times a rotteanesse or corruption proceeding

Of

of humours which cometh out of the Legges, by which the Leege is kept cleane from Wind-galls, and all other tumors or swellings, by means that the humors have passed that wayes; notwithstanding the mischief of this Sorrance is greater then the benefite, because it maketh the Horses foot so weak and tender, that hee is not able to treade upon any hard ground. The signes of the Sorrance are, the Horse wil halt much when hee travelleth either upon loose stony ground, or upon stiffe durty waies, and goeth ever best upon greene swarth: but above all, he halteth most when the passage of the humour is stopped with any gravel gathered into the Frush, and not being stayed or stop it wil continually run, and stinke so extreemely that a man can hardly endure the sent of it; besides, in some places it wil look raw.

Now the cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is thus: First take of the shooe, and pare away all the corrupt places, and make them raw, so as you may see the Water issue out of the raw places: then tacket on the shooe againe, being first made wide and large enough: that done, take of foot one handfull, of salt as much; bruse them wel together in a dish, and put thereto the Whites of three Egges, and temper them all together; and with a little Tow dipt therein stop all the foote, and especially the Frush, and splent it in so as it may not fall out, renewing it once a day the space of seaven daies, and certainly it wil cure him. Now during the cure, the Horse must rest and come in no wet; and at the seaven dayes end leave stopping him, and ride him broad

broad, and alwaies when hee commeth in, let his fore foote be cleane washed: for there is no greater enemy unto the Sorrance then gravell and durr. Other of our latter Farriers onely take off the shooe, and pare him well, and keepe the sore cleane both from durr and his owne dung, by washing it three or foure times a day with urine, and that alone wil cure him as wel as any medicine.

CHAP. CXIX.

*An approved and certaine Cure for the
running and rotten Erush.*

AFTER the foote is cleansed, take a quart of old Urine and boyle it with a quarter of a pound of Allome beaten to powder, and keepe it in a close Vessell by it selfe; then take a good handfull or two of Greene Nettles strong and Keene, and spread them on some plate or other Vessell, and dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven after household bread is drawne, then crush and bruise them into a very fine powder: then looke what quantity of powder there is, and take the like quantity of Pepper beaten to as fine a powder, and mixe them both very well together: then keepe this powder in a close Gally-pot or bladder.

Now when you have occasion to use it, first Wash the sore place with the Urine and Allome made very Warne, and the soares thoroughly scoured, after dry them well by drawing through them a fine ragge of Lawne, Cambricke, or fine old linnen, and strow or pounce of the powder upon them.

them so much as may cover all the sores, and thus doe
ver after travaile, or once a day in the time of rest.

CHAP. CXX.

Of evill Hooves.

HOrses partly through a naturall inclination, partly through the stoninesse of the Soyle wherein they are bred, and partly through mischance or ill government; will have ill-favoured and naughty Hooves, as either wrinkled or crumpled, or else moulded awry or such like; all which needes no signe, because of the apparant signe thereof: Then to amend them, the best cure is with a fine Reape-file to smooth the wrinkles away, and to annoynt the coronet of the hoose with a fat sward of Bacon rubbed in soote: then let the horse stand for at least a fortnight upon his owne dung, whereon you shall cast good store of water, onely remove away the dung every night; and then presently after the change of the Moone, shoe the horse with strong shoes, keeping the sole of the foot by paring, so hollow as you can possible and it will shape his hoose to your pleasure.

CHAP. CXXI.

Of brittle Hooves.

IF a horse either through the heate of his owne nature, or in that hee hath beene either heated on his feet by labour, or fowled and evill cured, shall happen to have his hooves so brittle and shert, that they will hardly beare a Shoe: The signes whereof
are,

are, the hoofe wil be white and crumbling: then the best cure, according to the opinion of the best Farriers is, to take Oxe dung and vinegar, and mixing them very well together warme them on the fire, and so binde it both under and above round about the Horses hoofe, and then lace on his boote of strong Leather, as is aforesaid in the Chapter of casting of the hoofe. Other Farriers use to let the horse stand upon his owne dung, and annoynt all the upper part of his hoofe with the fat of Bacon sodde and mixt with Turpentine: And this you must doe every day once till you see his hooves come to some toughness.

Others use to take Turpentine, Hogges grease, and Honey, of each a like; melt them well together, and being warme annoynt all the hoove therewith: then dip tow therein, and fold it all about the horse foot both under and above, and then put on his boote: dresse him once a day, and once in two daies let him stand foure houres without his boote, that his hoofe may grow as well hard as tough.

CHAP. CXXII.

How to preserve Hooves.

If you meane to preserve your horses hooves either from any of the former Sorranes, or any other grese whatsoever, you shall according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, take three heads of *Garlicke*, a little bundle of *Rew*, sixe ounces of *Allome* beaten into powder, two pound of old grease, and the dung of an Asse; boyle them all very well together

ther, and stop your horses hoofe therewith once a day. Other Farriers take of vinegar a quartern, of tar half a pint, of hogs grease halfe a pound, of oyle a pinte, and a good handfull of wormwood, and foure or five heads of garlick; boyl all these together to a thick ointment, and therewith annoint all the horses hoofes. Others use to boyle beans till they burst, and then temper them with hony, and therewith annoynt all the hoofes: or else wash all the hoofes with warm vinegar, and then annoynt them with hare-hound, worm-wood, and grease molen together.

Other Farriers take of *Olibanum* and new wax, of each one ounce, of *Dialthea* and turpentine, of each three ounces, of butter foure ounces, of old oyle six ounces, and of sheeps suet and plantaine, of each a pound; boyle them all well together, and therewith annoynt the hoofes twice a day. Other Farriers use to annoynt his hoofes with Turpentine, hogs grease, and honey warmed and molen together, of each a like quantity; then pare the foote well, and shoe him in the new of the Moone two or three dayes after the change.

Others use to take chancke and white lead mingled together; or else barke-dust and hony mixt together, and being heated in a posnet, and laid hot on the bare flesh; is most excellent to make any hoove grow: so conclude if a horse stand upon his owne dung (being very well watered) so he do not lye in it, it is most soveraigne for the preserving of the hooves.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXXIII.

For any hurt upon the Hooves.

If your horse shall receive any hurt upon his hooves either outwardly or inwardly, as either by any false treading or crossing one foot upon another, or by any bruise either upon cogle stone, flint, or such like, then for the cure thereof you shall first stop the hoofe with hony and vinegar mixt together, for the space of three dayes at the least; and then afterward with the leaves of *Tamarisk* well bruised and bearen together, untill the hoofe be sound againe.

Other Farriers use only to stoppe the hoofe with sheeps grease and horse dung mixt together, renewing it once a day untill it be well

CHAP. CXXIV.

How to soften Hooves.

The Hooves of horses will by long and dry standing upon dry plaunchers, grow so hard that they will not be pared, nor cut by any Butteris: Besides, they will so take from the horse the sense and feeling of his feete, that the horse will goe very stiffe and unnimble: Wherefore when you shall perceive any such defect, which is best knowne by offering to pare the hoofe, then presently you shall take an ounce of Sope, two ounces of unsleckt Lime, with as much strong lye as wil make it soft like a Lenwicke salve, then with that stop the horses feete daily till they come to a convenient softnesse. Hot glowing embers put upon the the hoofe will soften it.

CHAP. CXXV.

How to harden Hooves.

AS dry standing, and dry keeping doth harden the hooves too much, so wet and moyst keeping, as continuall going in Marrish grounds, or continuall standing either upon dirt or the horses owne dung, or too hot stoppings will make a horses hooves too soft, in so much that the horse through the tenderesse thereof wil neither be able to goe, nor beare any shooe, which you shal perceive by the soft and easie curving of the hoose. The manner then to harden and cure them is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, first to burn an old shooe sole, then seeth it wel in vinegar, & therewith bathe the horses hooves at the least twice a day, and it wil harden them.

Others skilful Farriers use to take of the powder of Gals, of Branne and of Salt of, each a handfull; boyle these well in a pottle of strong Vinegar, and therewith bathe the hooves, and in a short space it wil harden them.

CHAP. CXXVI.

Of the Malt-long of the Hoofe.

THe Malt-long, or as some Farriers call it, the Malt-worme, is a cankerous sorrhance above the Hoofe, just upon the Cronet, which wil breake out into knobbes and branches, and out of the same wil run a waterish sharpe lye or humour, which wil venom the whole foote; as for the signes they are the

appa-

apparrant sight of the Sorrhance, and the continuall running out of the thin water. Now the cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, if it be in the Summer time to take blacke Snailles, and Bur-rootes, and beating them wel together lay them unto the fore, and renew them once in 24. houres. But if it be in the winter, then take the scraping of a pans bottome or of a Cauldron, and put thereto an handful of the inner greene barke or pils of the Elder tree; and having beaten them wel together in a marrar lay it unto the fore, and renew it once a day and it wil heale it. Others use to take Garlick, pepper and hony, of each a like quantity, stampe them very wel together, then annoynt his tongue with a little thereof, and then lay some to his pastornes and that wil cure the Sorrhance.

CHAP. CXXVII.

How to skinne any sore foote.

There is nothing better to skin any sore foote of what accident or sorrhance soever it proceed, then to take Turpentine simply of it selfe, and therewith every day to annoynt the sore foot, and it wil not onely gather skin but hoove also, if it be in a place where any such need requireth. Also white lead and Traine-oyle beaten together will doe the like.

CHAP. CXXVIII.

Of goured or swolne legges.

The gorge or goured legs is an ill sorrhance, being a grievous swelling in the nether part of the

legges, proceeding either from the melting of the greafe by immoderate labour, and then wanting wherewith to avoyd that greafe out in excrements, it falleth downe into the limbes, and there breedeth this swelling; or else when a horse is exceedingly heated, and then without care set up, and taketh cold, in so much that the bloud falleth downe into his legges, and there congealeth, and maketh his legs to swell. To conclude, they doe sometimes procede from hard beating in hard waies in the summer time, which first raiseth up windgals, and then those windgals offending the sinewes maketh them to swell, and this is the worst gourding; because ever for the most part lameness doth follow it.

The signes are, the horses legges will ever be most swolne when hee standeth stil in the house, and least when he is in travell, especially if he travell in much water; and the swelling most commonly is accompanied with some small scabs, and in the end it will breake out into the scratches. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, to draw him with a hot Iron a handfull above the knee, and then rope his legges with a soft rope of hay wet in cold Water, and let it so remaine a day and a night, and it will take away all the swelling. Other Farriers take two pound of nerve-oyle, two pound of blacke sope, a pound of boares greafe, and melt and boyle all these wel together: then straine it and so let it coole: then when you have any neede, annoynt and chafe your horses legs therewith, and to make it sinke in the better, annoynt him first with nerve oyle, and hold a hot Iron against his legs to make it melt, then use

use the other oyntment in the same manner, which done, keepe his legges cleane from dust by lapping a linnen rowler about them.

Others of our latter Farriers use to take up the veines beneath the knee, and let him bleed well: then knir the veine both above and below, and then annoynt his legs with this oyntment: Take of Frankinsence, Rozen and fresh grease of each a like quantity, and having boyled them wel together, then strain it and use it once a day as you shal have occasion, and it wil heale any Gorge whatsoever; onely for the taking up of the veines you may if you will forbear it, such if it be not done with great cunning it will make the horse stiffe ever after. See further in the new Additions for any straine in generall noted thus.

CHAP. CXXIX.

*A most certaine and approved cure for any
Sarded or sweld legges, by what
accident soever.*

First with a Fleame pricke the sweld parts; then take a pint of Wine Lees, an ounce of Comin-seedes, and a handfull or more of Wheate flower, and boyle them till they bee thicke, then apply this pulvis very hot to the sweld part, and renew it but once in 24. houres, and if this in two or three dayes draw it to an head, then launce it and heale it either with a plaister of Shoo-makers Waxe, or else with the yolke of an egge, wheat-flower and honey beaten together to a salve.

But if it doe not draw to any head, and yet the

swelling continue, then take of Pitch a quatter of a pound, and as much Virgin Waxe, of Rosen halfe a pound, of the juyce of Hyssop halfe an ounce, of *Galbanum* halfe an ounce, of *Myrre* secundary halfe a pound, of *Bdelium Arabicum* halfe an ounce, of Deeres suet halfe a pound, of *Populeon* halfe an ounce, of the droppes of Storax halfe an ounce, boyle all these together in an Earthen pot; and after it is cooled take of *Bitumen* halfe a pound, of *Armoniacke*, an ounce and a halfe, and of *Costus* as much, beate these into fine powder, and then incorporate them with the other, and boyle them all over againe: which done, poure the whole mixture into cold Water, and then role it into severall roles, playsterwise; after spread this playster upon sheepes Leather, and fold it about the sweld member, and this will both assuage it, and give much strength to the sinews. You shall by no meanes remove this playster so long as it will stick on.

This playster is wonderful soveraigne and of singular use, for the horse that is continually kept therewith, I meane, that hath it applyed to limbes ever when he commeth from travaile, hee shall never be troubled with sweld legges, nor yet ever put out Windgall.

☞ Now if you will neither goe to this cost, nor endure this trouble, yet would have your Horse cured of this infirmity, then know there is not any thing better, or more approved then continually both before and after Travaile, and in the Houe many times in the day, to lave and wash your horses legges, or other sweld parts, with the coldest and clearest

clearest fountaine Water that you can get, and sometimes let the Horse stand in some cold running streame the space of a quarter of an houre or more, up to the knees and Cambrels, but in any case no farther.

This medicine how poore soever it looke, is of much vertue, and though I write of cold Water, yet is the operation hot and fiery : Onely this you must take to your remembrance, that this application appertaines not to impostumations, but unto straines and swellings and bruises, which are without much anguish.

CHAP. CXXX.

Of the Farcy or Fashions.

THE Farcy (of our ignorant Smiths called the Fashions) is of all outward Sorrances the vilest, the most poysonous, infectious, and the most dangerous (being any whir neglected) otherwise the most easiest, and with the least cost or trouble to bee helped. It is a kind of creeping ulcer, growing in knots, ever following alongst some one Veine or other, and sometimes alongst divers or sundry Veines, according to the strength of the infection. It proceedeth sometimes from corrupt blood ingendred in the body, sometimes from outward wounds or hurts received by cankerous or poysonous instruments, as rusty spurs, rusty forkes, biting of dogges or Horses, biting of Ticks, hogs lice, or suchlike; sometimes by the rubbing of Swine against the legges of the horse

horse, or by lying in the litter where swine have laine, or be enterfearing, or hewing one leg upon another: but generally it proceedeth from an evill habite of the body, being surfeited by disorderly and unruly Travell, whereby the bloud being heated, the greafe melted, and sudden cold taken, there groweth such obstructions in the bloud, and such putrification in the body, that it can no way evacuate or avoyde, but by these small knots, pustules, or ulcers, which are so infectious, that as many horses as doe gnaw or gnappe upon the horse infected will within one moneth have the same disease: or if the Horse infected doe bite any other hee will infect him also; and this infection without present cure is mortall, and will kill any horse: therefore whensoever you have any horse troubled with this sorrhance, see that you separate him from other horses to prevent the danger.

Now for the signes they are the apparence and palpable feeling of the knots, which knots are never but accompanied with great swellings and ranklings, running alongst as the veines runne, and dividing themselves as the branches of the veines divide, the number of the knots multiplying and encreasing untill the body bee universally covered over, or else that the member (if it bee in a member) bee utterly deformed and mishapen.

Now the cure (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) is, first let him bloud on the necke veine, and on both his sparre veines, then give the horse this drinke: Take a gallon of water, and put into it a good handfull of Rewe, and a pound of
Hemps-

Hempe-seede, both being first bruited in a mortar; then boyle them in water till the one halfe bee consumed, and give the horse this to drinke in the morning fasting being cold, for divers mornings together, and it wil cure him.

Others of the ancient Farriers use first to let the horse blond in that veine where the scerrance first riseth, as nigh the fore place as may bee, and let him bleed wel: then fire or cauterize every knot one by one, taking the knot in your left hand, and pulling it so hard as you can from his body, to the intent you may the better pierce the knot with a round blunt hot Iron, of the bignesse of a mans fore-finger, without doing the body any hurt, and let the matter out, leaving none unburned being little or much: that done, annoynt every knot so burned with hogs-grease warmed every day once untill the cores bee ready to fall; and in the meane time prepare a good quantity of old urine, and when you see the cores ready to fall, then boyle the urine, and put therein a little Copporas and salt, and a few strong nettles, and with that water being warme wash out all the cores and all the corruption: that done, fill every hole immediately with the powder of unsleckt lime, continuing thus to doe every day once untill the holes bee closed up; and if any bee more ranker then others, fill those with Verdigrease; and during this cure let the horse be thinly dyeted, that is to say, with straw and water onely, unlesse it be now and then to give him a loafe of bread, or a little other provender: for the lower hee is kept in flesh, the sooner hee will heale; and in any wise let his necke either bee yoaked

in

in an old bottomlesse paille, or else splented with staves in such sort that hee may not come to lick any of his sores, and the lesse rest hee hath, the better wil bee his amendment. Now there bee other latter Farriers which for this sorrhance take a good quantity of Mistelthoe, honey and blacke sope, and boyle them very well in old Vrine, and being very warme wash your horse all over therewith, every day once for the space of five or sixe daies, and it will helpe it. Others use to cut the horse two inches long downe the fore-head, and open it in the midst thereof on both sides two inches, and put thereto a rampin made of the inner rinde of Elder bark which is greene, and looke that it lye crosse the cut; for so it wil destroy all the venemous humour in his body, and it wil heale him very perfectly, having beene very oft approved. Others use to rake a very sharpe bodkin, and to thrust it crosse-wise through the nether part of the horses nose, even through the small gristle, so that hee may bleed well, or else to let him bloud in the necke veine, then feele the knows, and as many as are soft launce them and let them run, then take strong lye, lime and allome, and mixing them wel together bathe all the sore therewith and it will cure him.

Others take a sharpe lance knife, and in the top of the horses fore-head somewhat above his eyes make a long slit even unto his skul; then with a blunt instrument for that purpose, loose the flesh from the scalpe a good compasse, then take carret rootes cut into litle thin round peeces, and put them betweene the skin and the skul, or for want of carret rootes you may
take

take red dock roots, and see that they be a little beaten or bruised before you put them in, and once a day see that you thrust out the matter, but by no meanes thrust out the roots: but if the roots wil not stay in, then with a needle and silk stitch the wound together that it may hold in the medicine; then once a day annoynt the wound with fresh butter: this is held a very certaine cure for the Farcy, for looke how this wound made thus shal rot, wast and grow sound, so shal the sorrhance break, dry up and be healed; onely the fault of this cure is, that it wil be somewhat long in healing, and is a foule eye-fore untill it be whole.

Now there bee other Farriers which after the putting in of rootes as is aforesaid, use to burne all the fore place round about with a hot Iron; and then with another blunt hot Iron as big as a mans finger, to burne the sores in the midst till the white matter come forth, then with a paire of pinsons plucke out the knots: this done, annoynt all the fore places with sope, and then dresse him no more the space of foure or five daies, in which time you must prepare a good quantity of strong pisse, with the which you must wash him every day, the pisse being first made scalding hot, and rub the sores wel until they begiame to bleede; then having dryed all the fore places throw on the powder of unsleckt lime, or of burnt Allome, which wil heale better then lime. Now if you see that in any of the sores through negligent dressing there riseth proud flesh so high, that you cannot correct it sufficiently with the aforesaid powder, then you may burne any such place so sore or sorer as you did at the first, and dresse it

as before. Now there bee other Farriers, which when they see the Farcy to have beene old and long gone, and that it is so farre entred into one member or other, that the member is disfigured, they will then first purge the horse with some strong purgation, of which you may find choyse in a Chapter before Written, and then under his belly, put in one rowle either of haire or leather; or on the pitch of his shoulder of his grieved Legge (if it be before) or else on the stifling place, if his grieve be behind, put in another Rowel, and so keep those two places together with the issue in his fore-head open, until the cure be finished; then with another hote Iron burne all his leg downe with long strikes, even from the body to the hooft, not above an inch one strike from another, the edge of the Iron being not above a strawes breadth, and draw your stroake ever downward with the haire, and burne him no deeper then that the skin may looke brown. Now when by this practise you have cured the disease, if then the member bee unfashionable, or by swellings out of all forme, then you shall lay unto the member a playster made of Wine lees, and Wheate flower, and rowl it with a Wollen rowler, renewing it once in twenty foure houres, till the member be asswaged, and this practise will heale any great sweld Legge, if it be applied and continued with patience; but if by former dressings, burnings, manglings, or cuttings of some ignorant Farriers, there be any extraordinary, hard, or horny substance grown about the member which the playster afore-said will not resolve; then you shall take of Virgine Waxe halfe a pound, of Myrre one pound,

pound, of raisins a pound, of *Galbanum* half a pound, of *Costus* sixe ounces, of *Armoniacke* six ounces, of Swines grease two pound; put your swines grease first into an earthen pot, and having placed it in a broad cauldron full of water, then make a soft fire under it, to the end that your water may boyle; and when you doe perceive your swines grease is almost melted, then shall you put in all the other simples, except the *Costus*, and when they are all molten, which will take five or sixe houres boyling at the least, then your *Costus* which is a white root, being beaten into fine powder, you shall adde to the afore-sayd things after it is taken from the fire, and incorporate them all very well together, then make a playster thereof upon a piece of sheepes leather, somewhat bigger then the sore, and this playster without renewing will serve for at least thirty dayes with a very little refreshing, onely you must once a day take it of, and rub his legges very well, for feare it itch, which may cause the horse to bear and stamp with his foote, and so rather increase then decrease the swelling; and you must regard, that you do not rowle him to strait, for that is most hurtfull. It shall not be amisse now and then to ride him into the water, and walke him an houre after, then bringing him into the Stable rub his legges well; then warme his plaister over a Chafing-dish and coales, and so lay it to againe: and this practise in two or three moneths will take away any deformity of swelling, be the member never so uncomely.

Now there be other Farriers which for this Farcy it be but young, and especially if it bee about the head

head or face of a horse, wil take onely of Aqua-vita two spoonefuls, of the juyce of *Garlicke* two spooneful, and of the juyce of *Rew*, or herbe of *Grace*, two spooneful; mixethem well together, then take plegants or round bals of flaxe, and steepe them therein, and then stop them hard into the Horses eares; then take a needle and thred and stitch the tips of his two eares together, by meanes whereof he cannot shake out the medicine, and use the horse thus three severn mornings together, and it will kill the Farcy as hath been oft proved.

Other Farriers use to take *Drag-worts* or ground-sell, and beate it wel in a mortar with white Salt, and then stop it hard into the horses eares, and so either stitch them together, or with a broad inckle bind them up, renewing it once in foureteene houres for three or foure dressings and it wil heale any reasonable Farcy.

Others use to annoynt all the sores either with *Tansy* and *Verdjuice* boyld together, or else with boars grease very hot, and that wil kil it. Others use first to wash the sores with old urine, then take the powder of *Glasse*, *Brimstone* and *Hogs grease* well stamped and beaten together, then opening or slitting the knots annoynt them all therewith, and it wil cure them immediately. Other Farriers use to let the horse blood if it be at the beginning of the disease, or else not; and then to burne all the knots as is aforesaid, and then to heale the burnings with *Tar*, *Oyle* and *Hony* mixt together, and give him with a pint of *Malmsey*, two or three spooneful of the powder *Diapente*; or else give him four ounces of the powder

der of Wal-woort, or Dan-woort, with a pint and a halfe of Malmsey three dayes together : after that take an ounce of *Aloes*, one ounce of *Centuary*, one ounce of *Opoponax*, beate them all into fine powder, and give them him to drinke in a pint and an halfe of Malmsey warmed, wherein the roots of the aforesaid hearbe called Wal-wor, or Dan-wort have bin sodden : use to ride him oft until he sweat, and when the disease is killed turne him to grasse: for running in the open ayre is very wholesome.

There be other which take blacke sope, *Arsnicke*, unbleckt Lime, Verdigrease, and Red Lead, work all these well together, and opening the knots, dresse them therewith till you see them begin to dry up and dye. Others open the knots with a hot iron, and then take blacke sope, and great bay salt beaten together, and halfe so much as of them, of Verdigrease, and boyle the Verdigrease with fresh grease, and then take a saucerful of Mustard, and put them all together, and dresse the sores therewith.

There be others that take three ounces of Quick-silver, and put it into a bladder, with two spooneful of the juyce of Oranges or Lemons, and shake them together to coole the quick-silver : then take halfe a pound of fresh Hogges grease, and of Verdigrease an ounce; put all these in a trend dish, and worke them wel together : Then annoynt the knots with this Oyntment till they rot : Then let them out with a sharpe knife, and annoynt them still, and put into his eares the juyce of Rag-weed, and the sores will dry up. This medicine is very wel approved. Others take blacke sope, mustard made of Wine vineger, and red

lead; mixe all these together, and annoynt the veine all along, holding hot Iron close to the sore, to make the oyntment stricke in, and doe thus once a day until the sores dry up. Other Farriers take of the juyce of hemlock a good quantity, and dipping tow therein, stop his eares therewith, then open all the knots and thrust in salt. Lastly, give him to drinke sweet woort mixt with Fennell and Treade. Other Farriers take the butter bur, and being dryed and beaten to powder, strew it upon the knots after they have been opened; and then give him two or three spoonefull of the same powder with a pint of Malmesey to drinke, and it will cure the Farcy; and it is also exceeding good for all manner of ulcers, the roore is strong in smell, and bitter in taste.

Others take sulphure, orpiment, unsleekt lime and mixing them together put it into the knots, and it will kill the Farcy: which done, annoynt him with bolearmony made into powder, and incorporated with strong vineger, the juyce of houslicke, and of white leekes, and *solatro*. Other Farriers after they have let the horse bloud will boyle in vineger, beate flowre and swines grease, then adde a pretty quantity of oyle, and then straine it, then adde one part of Aloes, and two of Brimstone, and boyle it a little: then being warme annoynt all the sore places therewith, or else annoynt them twice a day with the juyce of smallage, and the yolkes of egges beaten together.

There bee other Farriers which take two ounces of Oyle de bay, one of *Enforbium*, and two ounces of Arsnicke, and mixing them together, annoynt the

the sores therewith, and it wil kil the *Farcy*. Now after all these many Receipts, of which not any but hath beene approved to be very good, yet these two which I will now Rehearse, I have ever found to be the most excellent for any manner of *Farcy* whatsoever, whether it bee, as our simple Smiths tearme it, a dry *Farcy*, a wet or warry *Farcy*, or a running *Farcy*, all being indeed but one *Farcy*, and proceeding from one cause; onely some horses not having such fluxe of humors in them as others have, the knots will be unwilling to breake, and then they say it is a dry *Farcy*: others of the contrary part will breake as fast as the knots arise, and runne filthy matter, and then they cal it a watry *Farcy*: Others wil spread in many parts of the body yet not breake, but as it were move betwixt the skinne and the flesh, but that they call a running *Farcy*.

Now all these are but one *Farcy*, and have but one certaine Cure, which is this. First, with diligent heede marke upon what principall veine of the horses body the knots doe arise, and note how they spread & run, then if the *Farcy* be divided into sundry branches, according as the veine doth divide, you shal rake the last knot of every branch, which for the most part wil bee hard, and not come to rotnesse; and then slit them, and fill them with your knives poynt full of white Mercury: then those which you find to bee rotten, let the matter forth, and annoynt them with blacke sope and Mercury mixt together: then within a day or two you shal see those which you drest with Mercury simply, to have their choares fall out, and the rest which you drest with blacke sope,

will dry up : then annoynt the n all with fresh butter molten til they be whole. Now if you perceive any new knots to arise , then you shal dresse them likewise with *Mercury* simply, as was said before, and not leave any uncured. Now if the *Farcy* be not very contagious, but as it were newly begun, then if you onely take blacke sope and *Mercury*, as before said, and annoynting your finger and your thumbe therewith, doe but nip and bruise every knot, and within two or three daies after they wil dry up and heale. But if the *Farcy* be foule and desperate, that is to say, either universally spread over the body, or so gotten into any limbe or member, that the limb is deformed and hath lost his proportion, so that a man can neither judge which way the veines run, nor in what part the knots are most venomous, because that healing one, two new ones wil arise.

¶ In this same case you shall first give your Horse a strong scouring or purgation, according to the strength of his body, of all which a pint of Muscadine, or a quart of strong Ale, with halfe a pint of the oyle of Oates is the most soveraigne : then shal you take a peny-worth of Tar, and two good handfuls of Pidgions dung, and twelve penyworth of white *Mercury*; mixe all these very wel together, and make them into a salve : then with a slice daube it all over the sore place, leaving no part of the member uncovered : then heating a bar of iron red hot, hold it so neare that it may dry the salve upon the sore : then lay more fresh salve on, and dry it in like manner, and so let it rest until it fal off, and it wil kil any *Farcy* whatsoever at the first or second dressing. There be others

others which will stop the knots with the powder of Verdigrease and of *Arſnicke* mixt together, or else wash the sores with *Aquaſortis*, but they are neither ſo good as the other before Rehearſed.

CHAP. CXXXI.

Of the Canker in any part of the body.

A Canker is a poyſonous creeping ulcer, fretting and gnawing the fleſh in great breadth, whoſe beginning is knotty, nor much unlike to the *Facy*, and ſpreading it ſelfe into divers places; and being exulcerated, gathereth together at the length into one Wound or filthy ſore; from whence there runneth a thin ſharpe lye, which galleth off the ſkin whereſoever it goes, and ſo both increaſeth the ulcer, and maketh it more incurable. It proceedeth from Melancholy and filthy bloud, ingendred either by rankneſſe of keeping, or elſe by too extreame poverty; and if this naughty bloud bee mixt with ſharpe and ſalt humors, then it cauſeth more painful and grievous exulceration. It alſo may proceed from ſome loathſome Wound which is neither cleane kept nor well dreſt, but in ſuch ſort that the corrupt matter thereof poyſoneth the other cleane parts of the body; for ſignes of the Sorrhance there needeth no more but the deſcription already mentioned. And for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, firſt to let the horſe bloud in thoſe veines which are next the ſore, and make him bleed with, then take of all ſort halfe a pound, of greene *Copporas* ſo much, of white *Copporas* one quarterie, and a good handfull of ſalt;

Boyle all these things together in faire running water from a pottle to a quart: and this water being warme wash the sore therewith with a clout, and then sprinkle thereon the powder of unslecked lime, continuing so to doe every day once the space of fiftene daies; and if you see that the Lime doe not mortifie the ranke flesh, and keepe it from spreading any further, then take of Sope halfe a pound, of Quick-silver halfe an ounce, and beat them together in a pot untill the Quick-silver be so wel mingled with the sope as you can perceive no Quick-silver in it, & with an iron slice or splatter, after that you have washed the sore with the strong Water aforesaid, cover the Wound with this oynment, continuing thus to doe every day once untill the Canker leave spreading abroad. And if it leave spreading, and that you see the ranke flesh is wel mortified, and that the edges begin to gather a skin, then after the washing dresse it with Lime as before, continuing so to doe until it be whole, and in the dressing suffer no filth that comes out of the sore to remaine upon any whole place about, but wipe it cleane away, or else wash it away with warme water; and let the horse during this cure be as thinly dyeted as may be, and throughly exercised. Now if this cancerous ulcer happen to be in the tayle of a horse, as it is often seene, and which you shal perceive as wel by the falling away of the haire, as also by the wound, then you shal make a bolster of soft cloth or sponges, and wet it with vinegar both within and without, and so bind it fast to the sore; and alwaies when it waxes dry, you must wet it againe, do thus twice or thrice a day, if it be done oftner it is better: so shal you continue

nue for three or foure daies, & then Deale it up as you
 heale an ordinary wound, that is, with hoggs greafe
 and Turpentine molten together, or such like. There
 be other Farriers which for the Canker on the body
 do take an ounce of the juyce of the root of *Affetly*,
 three ounces of unsleckt Lime, two ounces of *Orpi-*
ment or *Arsnicke*, put this in an earthen vessel close
 stoppt, & either boyle or bake it in an Oven til it come
 to a powder; then first wash the sore with strong vi-
 negar, and after strew this powder thereon. Others
 use to take *Garlicke*, and beate it in a mortar with
 Swines greafe til it come to a salve, and then having
 washt the sore eyther with Vineger, Allome-water,
 Coppas-water, or old urine, anoint it once or twice
 a day with it til it be whole. Other Farriers take the
 hearbe *Mullen* and bruise it, and mixe it with salt and
 verdigrease, and dresse the sore therewith morning
 and evening for the space of three or foure daies, then
 use the same salve againe as long without verdigrease
 then lastly use the hearbe alone, but if at any time you
 see it doe begin to wax raw, then begin againe as is a-
 foresaid, and ever before you annoynt it, wash it first
 with vineger and grease mixt together. Others take
 Sawin, Bay salt and Rew stampt with Barrowes grease
 and annoynt the sore therewith, and when the ill hu-
 mors are kild (which you shal know by the whitenes)
 then heale it with Tar, oyle, and hony mixt together.
 Lastly (and which I hold the best) take vineger,
 Ginger and Allome, and mixe them together til they
 will both kill the poyson and heale the ulcer.

CHAP. CXXXII. *Of the Fistula.*

A Fistula is a deepe, hollow, crooked, marring ulcer, and for the most part commonly a great deale straiter at the mouth then at the bottome, being ingendred in some wound, bruise, sore or Canker not thoroughly healed. The signes to know it are, the hollownesse of the sore descending downward from the Orifice, and the thinnesse of the matter which issueth from the same; besides the crookednesse which you shal find in the ulcer when you search it.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: First search the bottome thereof with a Goose or Swans quill, or with a small rod well covered with a fine linnen cloath; and having found the bottome thereof, cut it so large with a Razor, that the matter may have free passage downwards; but take heed in lancing it, that you cut not any master sinew, or maine tendant. Then having stanchd the blood either with Swines dung, or such like, take of good hony a pint, of Verdigrease one ounce; and boyle them wel together upon a soft fire three quarters of an houre; then having cleansed the sore by tying a raint of flaxe or fine linnen cloth to the point of your quill, with a thrid draw it softly into the Wound: then cut off your quill or feather so long that you may take good hold in the neather end of the raint, which then shal come out at the bottome of your sore: then dip another raint in the aforesaid salve, and then with a needle and a thrid, make fast your thint to your fist above at the upper end thereof;

of then draw out your first raine downward, so that
you draw your raine with the medicine easly into the
Wound, and your first raine will have cleansed the
fore very cleane, and if the matter doe abound much,
then it shal be good to dresse him twice a day: but
you must not dresse him with this medicine no more
but one day, and afterward you shal dresse him with
this medicine following: Take of Turpentine, of
Swines greise, of hony and sheeps suet, of each a like
quainty, and melt them together, and make a salve
thereof, wherewith you shal dresse your sore foure
daies for one day that you dressed him with the for-
mer medicine made of Hony and Verdigreale; and
take heede that you make your raine of very soft lin-
nen cloath, and fine flaxe: and let not your raine be too
big after the first and second time dressing, but pre-
sently after the first dressing you must cover the sore
place, and round about the same with this Pulvis
the following.
First, take two Gallons of faire Water, and
having boild and scum'd it so long til you have per-
fectly cleansed it of all corruption: then take two or
three handfulls of Mallowes, and as much of Violet
leaves, and two or three of Oat-meale, & having boy-
led all these three things well in your former prepa-
red Water, you shall adde thereto of hogs-moxe, and
felli butter, of each a pound: then shall you let it
boyle so long til it become thicke, like paste on pap,
and then apply it hot to the sore, and take heed that
in opening this sore you let not any ayre strike into
it: And on the other side, that you keep it as close
for And if this Fistula be in the horses Withers, you
must

must take heede that you tye his head to the racke, so as hee may neither lye downe, nor put his head lower then his manger : for if you suffer him to feed on the ground when hee hath any grievous sore in his withers, it shall hardly bee possible ever to cure him ; but if you perceive the wound to heale a pace, and that it matter but a little, then shal it be enough to dresse him once a day : and also it shal bee good to take great heede that you make not your tent too bigge, and see that you use your Pultus til it be perfectle cured. Now there bee other of the ancient Farriers which use for this cure, first to search the depth of the Fistula either with a quill, or with some other instrument of Lead, which may be bow'd every way : for unlesse you finde the bottome of it, it wil bee very hard to cure : and having found the bottome, if it be in such a place as you may boldly cut and make the way open with a Lancet or Razor, then make a slit right against the bottome, so wide that you may thrust in your finger to feele whether there bee any bone or else gristle perished, or spungy, or loose flesh, which must bee gotten out; and then taint it with a taint of flaxe dipped in this oymment: Take of *Myrre*, of *Aloes*, and of *Sarcocolla*, of each one ounce, of good Honey sixe ounces, and of verdigrease two ounces, and melt all these on a gentle fire, and make them into a salve, then being like warme dresse the taint therewith, & bolster the taint with a bolster of flaxe, and if it bee in such a place as the taint cannot conveniently be kept in with a band, then fasten on each side the hole two ends of a sheepe-skinne thrid right over the bolster, to keep

in the taint, which ends may hang there as two laces to tye and untie at your pleasure, renewing the taint every day once until the sore leave mattering, and then make the taint every day lesser and lesser until it be whole : for you shal understand that this salve doth purge this Fistula of putrifaction, incarnateth and breedeth flesh, conglutinateth and eateth away all naughty flesh. Now when you have done as aforesaid, then you shall close it up by sprinckling thereon a little unsleckt Lime; but if the Fistula be in such a place as you can neither cut against the bottome, nor tye the same : then there is no remedy but every time you dresse it, to powre into it either through some quill, or by some smal squirt or syring, some strong white copporas water, or some allome water, so that it may goe downe to the bottome, and dry up the filthy matter : and this you must doe twice a day at least untill it be whole. Now there be of our latter Farriers which use this cure, after they have searcht the Fistula to the bottome, to take a pottle of white wine Vineger, of Camphaire halfe an ounce, of *Mercury precipitate* halfe an ounce, of greene Treacle three ounces, of red sage an handfull, of yarrow and ribbe-wort of each an handfull, of honey halfe a pint, of Boares grease halfe a pint, boyle all these together til a quart be consumed, and with this you shall wash and cleanse the Wound : then to heale up the same, you shall take oyle of Roses, virgin waxe and rozen, of each a like quantity, of Turpentine five ounces, of the gumme of Ivie and Beeres suet as much, boyle these together with a salve, and then dresse the sore therewith untill it be whole

whole, observing ever, both in this cure, and all the rest, that as soone as you have put in your Tent to clap a plaister over it of pitch, Rosen, Mastick, Turpentine and hogs grease molten together, which will both comfort the Wound by taking away evill humors, and also keep in the tent from falling out. Now if the Fistula bee in or about the head of the Horse, then you shall rake the juyce of Housslicke, and dip therein a locke of wooll; and put it into the horses eares, and it will stay the inflammation; but if it be ulcerated and broken, then you shall cut away all the rotten and false flesh, and then bathe it wel with the grounds of ale made warme, and then wipe the blood cleane away: then take butter, rosen, and frankinsence a little, and hoyle them al together, and boyling hot powre it into the wound, and then clap on the plaister doethis once a day til the horse bee whole. Now if there be any inflammation behind the horses eares, or that it grow to any impostumation in that place, then you shall boyle the roots of Mallowes in water till they waxe tender, then bruise them and straine out the water cleane, and being warme, apply it to the sore, and it will heale it.

There be other ancient & skilful Farriers which for this general Fistula use as a prevention thereof, to take hony and sheepes suet, and making it scalding hot to scald the sore extreemely therewith, upon the first swelling, and it will keepe the Fistula that it shall not breed; but if it breed, then you shall lance it in the nethermost part, and put into it as much *Mercurij sublimatum* as a pease, being first abated with salte oyle and laid on with a feather; after that rake of ver- digreale

digrease foure penyworth, of Vitriol a halfe penyworth, of red lead three penyworth, beate these together, and every day wash the wound with Copporas water, made with Copporas and Elder leaves in summer, and with the inner greene barke in winter; after the washing take the powder, and put it on the sore, and after it drop on a little oyle.

Other Farriers take the outermost greene shels of Wal-nuts, and put them in a Tub, strowing three or foure handfull of Bay Salt upon them, some in the bottom, some in the midst, and some on the top, and so keepe them all the yeare; and when you will use them, take a pint of them and a little bay salt, and halfe a quarter of a pound of blacke sope, with halfe a spoonefull of *May* butter, (and for want thereof other butter) and mixe and incorporate them together; and then spread it on the sore, or raint the sore therewith; but two houres before you lay it on, annoynt the place with Venice Turpentine, and doe thus till the Fistula be whole.

Other Farriers take *Unguentum Agyptiacum* which is made of hony a pint, vineger halfe a pint, allome a quarterne of a pound, and Verdigrease one ounce and an halfe; and seeth them all together til they bee thicke, and of a rawny colour; this is called *Egyptiacum*, and to make it the strongest way, is to put in of *Mercury sublimatum* one ounce made into powder, and of Arsnick two scruples, and boyle it together: with either of these, especially the strongest, dresse any Fistula, Canker, or foule old Vlcer whatsoever and it wil kil it; and the weaker of these, which wanteth the Mercury and the Arsnicke, may bee applyed

to the Fistula in the mouth of a horse. Other Farriers take of *Sublimatum* made into powder one ounce, the midst of wel leavened bread slacke baked three ounces, of *Nenin* ten drams; mingle them together with a little Rose Water, and make taints thereof, & dry them upon a Tile; and at your pleasure taint your fistula therewith, and it wil assuredly kil it. Others take strong lye, hony, Roach-Allome, and *Mercury*, and seeth them together, and squirt it into a fistula, and it wil kil it at the bottome, and when you meane to dry up a fistula, take red Wine, Goates dung, and Beane flowre, and seeth them together, and apply it to the fistula and it wil dry it up.

Now if you intend to sink downe the swelling of a fistula, first of all seare it with a drawing Iron in this proportion $\frac{1}{2}$, and then take Rosen, sheeps suet and Brimstone, and boyle them together, and lay it upon a fistula very hot with a cloath, and it wil sinke downe the swelling. It is also most excellent to take away a Wind-gal, if it be laid on after the Wind-gal is prick't, but not too hot, but very reasonable, and it wil keep it also very cleane.

There be other Farriers which for a fistula take Verdigrease, Butter and Salt melted together, and poure it scalding hot into the sore, and use this til all the flesh looke red; then taint it with Verdigrease, burnt Allome, Whear flowre, and the yolkes of eggs wel beaten and mingled together: Last of all, skin it with Barme and Soot mixt together.

CHAP. CXXXIII.

*A rare and true approved medicine to cure any Fistula,
or hollow impostumation whatsoever.*

TAKE a pint of the strongest vinegar, and being hot upon the fire, mixe therewith the lome of a clay Wal, which hath not any lime in it, but by no meanes doe not pick out the chopt strawes or hay that is in the lome, but boyle them all together till it come to a salve: then being reasonable hot, spread it over all the sweld place, and over every part which you shall feele hard: and you shall thus doe twice a day, and it wil not onely ripen and breake the hollow ulcer, but also search it to the bottome and heale it. This medicine cureth any sore backe whatsoever, how grievously soever, either gald or bruised.

CHAP. CXXXIV.

Of the Anbury.

AN Anbury is a great spongy Wart ful of blood, which may grow upon any part of the horses body, chiefly about the eye-brows, nostrils, or privie parts, and it hath a root like unto a Cocks stone. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is first to tie it about with a thrid or hair so hard as you can pul it, and the third wil eate in by little and little, in such sort as wihin seven or eight daies it wil fal away of it selfe; and if it be so flat that you can bind nothing about it, then rake it away with a sharpe hot Iron cutting it round about, and so deepe

as you leave none of the roote behind, and then dry it up. with the powder of Verdigrease, but if it grow in such a sinewy place as it cannot be conveniently cut away with a hot iron, then it is good to eate out the core with the powder of *Resalger* or *Mercury*, and then to stop the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge for a day or two: And lastly to dry it up with the powder of unfleckt Lime and Hony, as is before taught. Other Farriers instead of tying the Wart with a thrid, doe tye it with some horses haire: and that is a great deale the better, and wil rot it off sooner and safer.

CHAP. CXXXV.

Of the Cords.

THe Cords is a certaine string, which cometh from the shackle veine to the Gristle in the nose, and betweene the lip the length of an Almond; or they be two strings like thrids, which lye above the knee, betwixt the knee and the body, and goeth like a small cord through the body to the nostrils, making a horse to stumble much, and sometimes to fall also; and it is a disease very much incident to many young horses. The signes are, an apparant stiffe going, and much stumbling, without any outward or visible sorrhance; and the cure is, according to the opinion of our ancient Farriers, to take the end of a crooked Harts horne that is sharpe; put it under the cordes, and twind it ten or twelve times about, til the horse be constrained to lift up his foot; then cut the corde a sunder, and put a little salt into the issue, or cut it first at the knee, then at the end of his nose, and so draw

draw it upwards a spanne length, and cut that off. Other Farriers let the horse bloud in the veine that descendeth in the in-side of the Leg, by the breast, and take away at least a pottle of bloud, and after seaven dayes wash him with Beefe-broath, and it wil heale him.

Other Farriers take Mustard, Aqua-vitæ, and salter oyle, and boyle them on the coales, and make a playster and bind it to the place that is grieved, and it wil helpe.

Others take the grounds of Ale, and being made warme, bath his legs therewith, and then rope them up with wet hay-ropes, and it wil make the horse perfectly sound.

CHAP. GXXXVI.

Of the String-halt.

THe string-halt, of some cald the Mary-hinchcho, is a suddaine twitching up of the Horses hinder legges, as if he did tread upon needles, and were not able to endure his foete upon the ground; the signes whereof bee an apparant ill-favoured manner of halting, most visible to the eye. And the cure is, to take up the middle veine above the thigh, and underneath the same, then under the said veine there lyes a string which string must be cut away: and then annoynt him with butter and salt, and he will both doe well, and goe well.

CHAP. CXXXVII.

Of a Horse that is Spurre-gald.

IF a horse by the indiscretion of an evill Rider, be spur-gald, which is a disease most plaine both to be felt or seene: then the cure is, either to bathe it with urine and salt mixt together, or with water and salt, or with warme vineger, or else bind unto the place the crops of leaves of Nettles stamped: and any of these will cure him.

CHAP. CXXXVIII.

Of wounds in generall.

WOunds, according to the opinion of all Farriers is a solution, division or parting of the whole: for if there be no such solution, or division, then it is rather called a bruise then a Wound; and therefore Wounds are most commonly made with sharpe or piercing Weapons, and bruises with blunt weapons: notwithstanding if by such blunt weapons any part of the whole be evidently broken: then it is to be called a Wound as well as the other; and these Wounds doe proceed from some stroak, prick, or violent accident. Now of Wounds some be hollow, and some be deepe and hollow: Againe, some Wounds chance in fleshy parts, and some in bony & sinewy places: and these which chance in the fleshy parts, though they be very deepe, yet they be not so dangerous as the others, and therefore I wil speake first of the most dangerous. If then a horse have a Wound

Wound newly made, either in his head, or in any other place that is full of sinewes, bones or gristles, then according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the wound wel with white Wine warmed, and keepe it ever whilst you are in dressing it, covered with cloathes wet in warme white Wine : that done, you shal search the bottome of the wound with a probe, or small instrument of Steele made for the purpose, suffering the wound to take as little winde or aire as you can possible : then having found the depth, stoppe the hole close with a cloute until your salve bee ready : then take of Turpentine, *Mel-rostatum*, oyle of Roses, of each a quarterne, and a little unwrought waxe, and melt them together, stirring them continually that they may bee wel mingled together, and if the wound be a cut, make a handsome rowle or round plegant of soft tow, so long and so bigge as may fill the bottome of the wound, which for the most part is not so wide as the mouth of the wound : then make another rowle or plegant somewhat bigger to fill up the rest of the wound, even to the hard mouth, and let both these rowles be annoynted with the oynement aforesaid made lukewarme; onely this you must ever observe, that if the wound be long and large, that then it is best, if you can conveniently, to stitch the wound together with a fine needle and a Crimson silke : for that wil make it heale the sooner, and make the skarre lesse. But if the hurt be like a hole made with some picke, then make a stiffe tent either of tow or lint, such a one as may reach the bottome, annoynted

I i 2

with

with the aforesaid oyntment, and bolster the same with a little tow: and over both this and the other, or any wound whatsoever, as soone as your rowles, plegants or tents are put in, you shal clap a sticking plaister made of pitch, Rosen, Masticke, and Turpentine melted together, as hath been before taught, both to keepe in your salve, and to comfort the sore. Now if the mouth of the wound bee not wide enough, so as the matter may easily runne forth, if it be in such a place as you may doe it without hurting any sinew, then give it a pretty slit from the mouth downward, that the matter may have the freer passage, and in any wise have an especiall regard that the tent may bee continually kept in by one meanes or other, and also that it may not bee drowned within the wound, but by tying some thrid about the upper end thereof, so kept that it may be taken out at pleasure. Now if the hole bee deepe, and in such a place as you may not cut it, then make your tent full as bigge as the hole, of a dry sponge that was never wet, so long that it may reach the bottome; and the tent being made somewhat full, with continuall turning and wrying of it, you shall easily get it downe, and then dresse the wound with this twice a day, cleansing the wound every time with a little white wine luke warme: for the sponge annoynted with the oyntment aforesaid, will both draw and sucke up all the filthy matter, and make it so faire within as is possible; and as it beginneth to heale, so make your tent every day lesser and lesser untill it be ready to close up, and never leave rainting it so long as it will receive a taint, bee it never
fo

so short : for hasty healing of Wounds breedeth Fistulaes, which properly be old sores, and therefore must be healed like fistulaes. Now if the wound proceed from any ancient impostumation, then you shal take two or three great Onions, and taking out the cores put therein a little Bay-salt, and a little whole Saffron, and so roast them in the hot embers : then playster-wise lay them al hot on the wound, renewing it once a day til the wound bee healed. Now if the upper skin of the wound be putrified, and you would have it away, then make a plaister of Cowes dung sed in milke and clap it to for foure and twenty houres & it will leave nothing vile about the wound. Others use generally for any cure whatsoever, to take a quarter of a pound of butter, of Tar and black sope of each halfe as much, and a little Turpentine : boyle all but the sope together, then when you take it off the fire put in the sope, and with this ornament dresse any cut and it wil heale it.

Other Farriers use onely to take hogs-grease and Venice Turpentine, and to melt them together, and it wil heale any wound. Other Farriers take eight drammes of Turpentine, foure drammes of new Virgine-waxe; melt them in a pewter vessell, and stirre them wel together, and when they are wel melted and mixed take them from the fire, and by and by whilst they be hot, poure into them halfe apint of white Wine, then after they bee cold throw away the Wine, and annoynt your hands with oyle of Roses, and worke the waxe and Turpentine well together, after that put them into the pewter vessell againe, then put to them halfe an ounce of the gum

of Fir-tree, and three drammes of the juyce of Betrony, then seeth them wel together until the juyce of Betrony be wasted, then put to it three drammes of womans milke, or the milke of a red Cow, and seeth them once againe untill the milke bee wasted; and then put it in a close pot or glasse, and with this dresse any wound whatsoever, and it will heale it. Others use to take rosemary, & dry it in the shadow and beate it to powder, then wash the wound with vineger or the urine of a childe, and strew thereon the aforesaid powder, and it wil heale an indifferent wound.

Other Farriers take Worme-wood, *Morieraw*, *Pimpernel*, *Calamint*, *Olibanum*; beate them all into fine powder, then take Waxe and Barrowes grease, and boyle them on a soft fire until they be as thicke as an oymntment or salve, with this dresse any wound and it wil heale it. Others use to take the toppes of Nettles, Butter, and Salt, and beating them wel in a mortar til they come to a salve, and it wil draw and heale a wound. Now the powder of hony, and Lime, or Turpentine simply by it selfe wil dry up and skinne any wound. Take Turpentine, Hony, Hoggs grease, Waxe and sheepes suet of each alike, melt them wel together to a salve, and they wil heale any wound. Now if a horse be goared upon a stake, then you shal cast him, and poure into the wound butter scalding hot, and so let him lye til it be gone downe into the bottome, and doe thus once a day til the wound bee whole. If you desire to keepe a wound open, put into it the powder of greene coporas and it wil doe it, but if you intend to heale it speedily

speedily, then Wheate flower and hony well beaten together to a salve wil doe it, dressing the wound once a day therewith.

CHAP. CXXXIX.

Of a hurt with an Arrow.

If a Horse be shot or hurt with an Arrow, taint the hole onely with Hogs grease and Turpentine molten together and renew it once a day untill the wound be whole.

CHAP. CXL.

Of the healing of any old sore or ulcer.

Old ulcers or sores are of three kinds, the first deepe, hollow and crooked, and they bee called *Fistulaes*: The second broad and shallow, but much spreading and increasing, and they be called *Cankers*; and the last broad, deepe, black about the sides and bottome, yet not much increasing, although not all healing, and they be called old sores or *Ulcers*: They proceede either from some great bruise, wound, or impostume, which is either venomd or abused in healing by contrary salves; or through the fluxe and abundance of humours flowing downe to those parts through the negligence of a most unskilfull Farrier. The signes are the long continuance of the sore, the thinnesse of the matter which issueth away, and the blacknesse of the sore which is ever full of inflammation.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of

the most ancient Farriers it is thus : First cleanse the fore wel with white Wine : then take Copporas and the leaves of Lillies, beate them wel in a mortar with Swines grease til it come to a perfect salve, and lay it upon the sore with flaxe, and then cover it with a plaister as in case of Wounds, and renew it once a day and it wil heale it.

Other Farriers take Lime, and tough horse dung, and mixe it very wel together with Pepper and the white of an egge, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day til the ulcer be cured.

Other Farriers strow upon the sore the powder of Gals, and that wil dry it up.

Others scald it once a day with hot oyle Olive, and that wil heale it.

CHAP. CXLI.

A most certaine and approved Cure for the healing of any old Vicer whatsoever.

TAKE Mastick, Frankinsence, Cloves, greene Copporas, and Brimstone, of each a like quantity, of Myrre double so much as of any one of the other : beate all to powder, then burne it on a Chafing-dish and coales, but let it not flame : then as the smoake ariseth take a good handfai of Lint or fine hurds, and hold it over the smoake so that it may receive all the perfume thereof into it, then when it is thoroughly wel perfumed, put the lint or hurds into a very close box and so keep it.

Now when you have occasion to use it : first wash the sore with Urine or Vineger made warme, then dry it ; and lastly lay on some of this lint or hurds, and

and thus doe twice a day, and it is a speedy and most infallible cure.

CHAP. CXLII.

Of bruifings or swellings.

ALL bruifings and swellings come unto a horse either by accident, or by some blow, rush, pinch, or outward venomings; or else naturally, as through the fluxe of bloud; or through the abundance of Winde. The signes are, the lightly appearance in what place or member soever they be: And the first, which are those which come by accident, are properly called bruifings or swellings; and the other if they doe rot or corrode, and so turne to matter, are called impostumes.

Now for the generall cure of any bruise or swelling, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers it is thus; take of dry pitch, of gumme, of each an ounce: of *Galbanum*, of Lime, of each foure ounces, of *Bitumen* two ounces, of waxe three ounces, melt and boyle them very wel together, then annoynt the sore place there-with once a day, and it wil heale it. But if the swelling proceede onely from some bruise or rush, then you shal take two pints of verjuyce, one pint of Barne, and putting a little fine Hay thereto, boyle them very wel together, then binde the Hay to the swelling very hot, and after poure on the liquor; doe thus three or foure daies together, and it wil take away the swelling.

Other Farriers take the toppes of Worme-wood, Pellitory of the Wal, *Brancke nrsine*, beate them wel together

together with Swines greafe, then seeth them; then adde a pretty quantity of hony, Linseede oyle, and wheate meale; then stir it over the fire til all againe be sodden together, then lay it to the swelling, and renew it once a day til the swelling be gone.

- ☞ Other Farriers use first to prick the swelling with a fleame, then take of Wine Lees a pint, as much wheate flower as wil thicken it, and an ounce of Comen; boyle them together, and lay this somewhat warme unto it, renewing it every day once until the swelling either depart or else come to a head, which if it doe not, then launce it and heale it according to a wound.

Other Farriers take of Roten, of Turpentine, and of Honey, of each halfe a pound, dissolve them at the fire, then straine them, and adde of Myrre, Sarcocoll, and the flower of Fenugreeke, and of Linseede, of each an ounce; incorporate them altogether, and then make it thicke like a salve with the meale of Lupins, and lay it to the swelling and it wil assuage it.

Other Farriers take of *Galbanum* and of *Ceruse*, of each an ounce, of oyle two ounces, and of Waxe three ounces, mixe them together over a soft fire, and when they are brought to a salve, then lay it unto the swelling and it wil assuage.

- ☞ If you take onely rotten litter, or Hay boyld in strong Urine, and apply it daily unto any swelling, it wil take it away. Now if the swelling bee upon the legges, and come by any straine: Then you shal take of Nerve-oyle one pound, of blacke sype one pound, of Boares greafe halfe a pound; melt and boyle them all

all wel together, then straine it and let it coole; then when occasion serveth, annoynt and chafe your horses legs therewith, holding a hot iron neere thereunto, to make the oyntment enter in the better; then rope up his legges and keepe them cleane from dust or dirt : But if the swelling be upon any part of the back or body, then take of hony and tallow of each a like, and boyle them together, then spread it on a cloath and lay it on the swolne place, and let it there stick til it fal away of it selfe. Now if the swelling proceed from any windy cause, and so appeare onely in the horses belly, then you shal take a sharp-pointed knife or bodkin, and arme it so with some stay that it gee not too deep for piercing his guts : then strike him therewith through the skin into his body before the hollow place of his Haunch bone, halfe a foot beneath the backe bone, and the Wind wil come out therear; then if you put a hollow quill therein, or some feather to keepe it open a while, the Wind wil avoid the better, then heale it up againe.

It is also very good to Rake the Horse, and to Ride him up and downe a little : but if the swelling be under the horses jawes, or about any part of his head, then you shal take his owne dung hot as soone as he makes it, and with a cloath bind it fast thereto, renewing it twice a day til the swelling be gone. See further in the new Additions for the Fistula, marked thus &c.

CHAP. CXLIII.

of Impostumes, and first how to ripen them.

Impostumes are a gathering or knitting together of many and most corrupt humours in any part or member of the body, making that part to swell excreantly, and growing into such violent inflammation that in the end they rot and breake out into foule, mattery, and running sores; they commonly proceed either from corruption of foode, or corruption of blood; they are at the first appearance, very hard and very sore; which hardnesse is the principal signe that they wil not rot. And of these impostumes some bee hot impostumes, and some bee cold; yet for as much as every impostume must first be ripened, and brought to matter before it can bee healed, we wil first speake of the ripening of them. If therefore you wil ripen any Impostume (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers:) You shal take of *Sanguis draconis*, of gum Arabick, of new Waxe, of Masticke, of Pitch of Greece, of incense, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity, and melting them together, and straining them, make a plaister thereof, and lay it the impostume without removing: and it wil both ripen, breake, and heale any impostume.

Other Farriers take Swines grease, red Waxe, and the floure of *Euforbium*, and mixing them on the fire wel together, lay it to the impostume, and it wil doe the like.

Other Farriers take of hony and of Wheat-meale,
of

of each alike quantity, and either boile it in the Decoction of *Mallowes*, or else mixe it with the yolke of an egge, and it wil ripen, breake, and heale; yet it must be renewed once a day.

Other Farriers take Barley meale, and boile it with wine and pidgions dung, and so lay it to the impostume plaister-wise, and it wil ripen exceedingly.

Other Farriers take a handful, or two of Sorrell, and lapping it in a Dock-lease, roast it in the hot Embers as you would a Warden, and then lay it to the impostume as hot as may be wel endured, renewing it once a day, and it wil ripen it, breake and heale. A plaister of Shoo-makers wax wil do the like also.

Other ancient Farriers take *Mallow* rootes, & *Lily* rootes, and then bruiſe them, and put thereto hogges grease, and Linseed meale, and plaister-wise lay it to the impostume, and it wil ripen it, breake it, and heale it perfectly. See further in the new Additions for the *Fistula*, noted thus.

CHAP. CXLIII.

Of cold impostumes.

If the impostume doe proceed from any cold Causes, as those which rise after cold taking, or when a Horse is at grasse in the Winter season, then you shal take the herbe cald Balme, and stamps it and hogges grease wel together, and so plaister-wise apply it to the sore, and it wil heale it: or else when the impostume is ripe, open it in the lowest part with a hot Iron, then wash it with warme urine; after that annoynt.

annoynt it with Tar and Oyle wel mixt together, and if you make your incision in the manner of a halfe Moone it is the better.

Other Farriers take white Mints, and seeth them in Wine, Oyle, Ale and butter, and so lay it to hot, and it will heale it.

Other Farriers take Cuckoo spir, and stamp it with old greafe, and so apply it, and it will heale it.

Other Farriers take a handfull of Rew, and stamp it wel with the yolke of eggs and hony, and then apply it playster-wise, and it will heale any cold impostume.

CHAP. CXLV.

Of hot impostumes.

IF the impostume proceed from any hot causes, as from the extremity of travaile, the parching of the Sun, or the inflammation of the blood, then according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall take Liver-wort, and stampe it, and mixe it with the grounds of Ale, Hogges-grease, and bruised Mallowes, and then apply it to the sore, and it will ripen, breake, and heale it: But if you would not have the swelling to breake, then take the grounds of Ale, or Beere, and having boyled Mallowes therein, bathe the sore place therewith, and it will drive the swelling away. Other Farriers take either Lettis feede, or Poppy feede, and mixe it with oyle of red Roses, and lay it to the sore plaister-wise, especially at the beginning of the swelling, and it will take a cleane away.

CHAP. CXLVI.

Of the Tetter.

A Tetter is a filthy kind of Ulcer like unto a canker, onely it is somewhat more knorrey, and doth not spread, but remaineth most in one place, and many times it wil remaine betweene the skinne and the flesh, like a knotted Pary, and wil not breake.

The cure thereof according to the opinion of the ancient and understanding Farriers is, to make a strong lye with old urine, Ashe ashes, and greene Copporas, and bathe the knots therewith, and it wil kill and heale them. Some other Farriers take a Snake, and cut off the head and the tayle, and cast them away, the rest into small peeces and roast them on a fire, then take the grease that droppeth from them, and being hor, annoynt the Sorrhance therewith, and it wil heale it in a short time: but looke that you touch no part of the horse therewith save onely the Sorrhance, for it wil payson and venome.

CHAP. CXLVII.

Of sinewes that are cut, prickt or bruised.

If a Horse by the mischance of some Wound, shal have any of his sinewes either cut, prickt, or sore bruised, then if there bee no Convulsion of the sinewes, you shal according to the opinion of the most ancientest Farriers, take Tarre, and Beane flowre,

flowre, and a little Oyle of Roses, and mixing them together lay it hot unto the places, and if it doe not present good, take wormes and faller oyle fryed together, or else the oyntment of wormes, which you may buy of every Apothecary, and applying either of them they knit the sinewes againe, if they bee not cleane on a sudden. But if there be a convulsion, then with a paire of sheares you must cut the sinew in peeces, and then take Rosen and Turpentine, pitch, and *Sanguis draconis*, then melting them together, clap it somewhat hot unto the sore; then take flaxe and put upon it, for that wil cleanse and defend it, and then this medicine there is none better for any swolne joynt whatsoever.

Now if the joynt be not much sweld, but onely that the sinewes are exceeding stiffe, through the great bruising; then you shal take of blacke lope a pound, and seeth it in a quart of strong Ale till it waxe thicke like Tar; then reserve it, and when you shal see cause use to annoynt the sinewes and joynts therewith, and it wil supply them, and stretch them forth although they bee never so much shrunked, as hath beene approved.

CHAP. CXLVIII.

Of setting the belly with the fore-girthes.

IF when you saddle and girde your horse, the girths be either knotty or crumpled, and therewithall drawne too straight, they wil not onely gall and wound the Horse under the belly very much, but they wil also stoppe the bleud which

in the principall veines, called the plat-veines, in such sort that they will occasion most extreame and hard swellings.

The cure whereof is, according to the generall opinion, to take of Oyle de Bay, and oyle of Balme two ounces, of Pitch two ounces, of Tar two ounces, and one ounce of Rozen: mingle them wel together, and then annoynt the Horses fore-bowels therewith; then take either flockes, or chopt flaxe, and clap upon it, and so let it abide untill it fal away of it selfe, and it will surely cure him.

Other Farriers use to take Vinegar and Sope, and beate them wel together, and stirre it with a stick or cloath, and then all to rubbe and wash the galled place therewith, and do thus at least twice a day, and it will dry it up in two or three days at the most; but if the galling be about any part of the Horses necke, then you shall take the leaves of *Briary* (called the Hedge-vine) and stampe them, and mixe them with Wine, and then playster-wise lay it to the sore, and it wil heale it.

CHAP. CXLIX.

Of Blisters.

BLISTERS are certaine waterish hollow blebs, which do arise betwixt the skinne and the flesh, proceeding either from some slight burnings, scaldings, or chafings, and they be very ful of thinne matter. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the most generall Farriers is, first in the sore to stop them till they bleed: then take of the Rootes of Ivy,

and stamping them in a mortar, mixe them with as much Tar, Brimstone, and Allome, till they come to a salve; and then dresse the blister therewith, and it will heale it.

CHAP. CL.

To take away all manner of Bones, Knobs, or any superfluous flesh.

WHen a horse hath any bone growing upon any part of his body, more then naturall, or when he hath any lumps or bunches of superfluous flesh, otherwise then of right doth belong to his true proportion: then such bones, knots, or bunches, are called Excrefions, proceeding from tough and stagnatiue substances, stirred up either by most sore bruises, imperfect healed Wounds, or other naughty putrefaction of the bloud, being most apparant to the eye, and most palpable to the hand.

Now for the cure (according to the generall opinion of the most Farriers) you shall first use Corrosive medicines, after drawing medicines, and lastly drying medicines: or more particularly thus you shall cure them: first with an incision knife scarifie the excreffion, then apply *Sulphure* and *Bitumen*, or *Coloquintida* burnt and sifted, and when it hath eaten the Excreffion away, then heale it up with drying salves, as the powder of Hony and Lime, or *Bolus*, or such like. Other Farriers use after they have made the Excreffion to bleed wel, then to take two ounces of the ashes of *Vitis*, and as much un-

flesh

sleckt Lime, mixt with sixe ounces of strong lye first strayned, then sod till halfe be consumed, and so brought to a firme substance; then keep it in a glasse in a dry place, and apply it to the Excreffion till it have eaten it away, and then heale it up as is before said. Other Farriers use to take a pound of strong lye and sope, and a quarter of a pound of Vitrioll *Romane*, one ounce of *Sal armoniacke*, and as much Roch allome, and boyle them together untill they be very thick, and then with that oyntment eat away the excreffion. Others use to rake of *Egyptiacum* the strongest kinde, and lay it on the excreffion with a Cotten, three or four times, and it will take it clean away: this medicine is most excellent for any splenr, and of no smal importance, if it be used against a Fistula, for it will sinke it, although it were in the Crowne.

CHAP. CLI.

How to cate away any superfluous or dead flesh.

IF when your horse hath any Wound, Ulcer, or other sore, you shall perceive that there groweth therein dead flesh, which dead flesh you shall know partly by the insensibility thereof, and partly in that it is a spongy, hollow, naughty flesh, not substantiall as the true flesh is; and eyther of a blackish, or an high red colour; then it shall bee meet that you seeke all meanes possible how to consume and cate away that superfluous and naughty flesh, because the sore that is pestered therewith, neither can nor will ever heale, till it bee cleansed of the same;

therefore according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers. The best meanes to eate away, is, to boyle fresh grease and Verdigrease, of each a like quantity together, and either to taint or playster the sore therewith, untill the dead flesh be consumed. Other Farriers take either the scrapings of Harre horn, or Oxe Horn, and mixing them with olde sope, dresse the sore therewith, and it wil eate away dead flesh.

Other Farriers take *Spongia Marina*, or sea Spung, and therewith dresse the sore, and it will do the like. Other Farriers use the powder of *Risagallo*, or *Risagre*, but is is a great deale too strong a frotter. Others use *Litergy* or Lime, in lye, but they are like very violent and strong eaters.

Others use to take either White or blacke Eleborus, Inke, quick Sulphure, Orpiment, .Litergy, Vitriol, unsleckt Lime, Roch Allome, Gals, Soore, or the ashes of *Avellan*, of each halfe an ounce, and they will consume dead flesh : likewise Quicke-silver extinct, and Verdigrease, of each an ounce made into powder, wil do the like: the juyce of *Borage*, of *Scabions*, of *Fumitory*, and of a *Docke*, of each halfe an ounce; a little old oyle and vinegar boyld with a soft fire, put to it Tar, and it wil likewise eate away any dead flesh.

There be other Farriers which take *C antharides*, Oxe dung and Vinegar, and mixe them altogether, and lay it to the sore and it will fetch away the dead flesh. Others use first to pounce the sore with a Razor, then annoyne it with grease, and strew upon it a pretty quantity of Orpiment. Other Farriers use in
stead

stead of *Risagallo*, to take the powder of Verdigrease and Orpiment, of each an ounce, of unsleckt Lime, and *Tartar*, of each two ounces; mixe them together, and therewith dresse the sore, after you have washt it wel with strong Vinegar, and if you please, you may adde thereunto Vitriol and Allome, for they are both consumers of dead flesh. Other *Farriers* take the powder of *Tartar* and mans dung burnt with salt, and then beaten into powder and strewed on the sore: or else rake salt, unsleckt Lime and Oyster-shells and beate them in a mortar with strong lye, or olde urine, til it be like a paste: then bake it in an Oven, & after beate it to powder, and strew it on the sore, and it will eate away the dead flesh.

Other *Farriers* use first to wash the sore with Ale, wherein Nettle seeds have bin sodden, and then strew upon it the powder of Verdigrease.

Now to conclude, you must ever observe, that before you use any of these medicines, you do shave away the haire, that it be no impediment to the salve; also when you have drest it once, and see that there is an asker raised, then you shal dresse it with some mol-
lifying or healing salve till the asker come away, and then dresse it with your eating salve againe: and thus do until you behold that all the dead flesh be consumed, and that there is nothing but perfect and sound flesh, and then heale it up as in case of Wounds. Also *Precipitate* simple of it selfe wil eate away any dead flesh.

CHAP. CLII

For Knots in Ioynts, Hardnesse, Cramps,
or any Inflammations.

Here do grow in ioynts three sorts of swellings: namely, a hot swelling, a hard swelling, and a soft swelling: All which you may easily distinguish by your feeling, and they doe proceede eyther from abundance of grosse humours, ingendred by foule keeping: or else by accident, as from some wound, Rush, or straine. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, is to beate the powder called *Diapente*, together with oyle, til it be like an oymntment, and then apply it once a day to the grief, & it wil rake it away, especially if it be a cramp, or an Inflammation.

Other Farriers use to incorporate with oyle halfe an ounce of liquid *Storax*, two ounces of turpentine, five of waxe, and ten of bird-lime, and apply that to the griefe, and it will ease it. Other Farriers take wine, old oyle, and tarre, mingled and boyled together, and therewith dresse the sore place, and it wil helpe it.

Others of our old and latter Farriers take halfe a pound of grease, three scruples of mustard, and the like of bay salt, mixe these with vinegar, and apply it to the griefe. Others use to take a playster of figs, and the roots of *scarne* and *rocket*, or mingle them with grease and vinegar and apply it to the griefe. Other Farriers use to take the *Unguentum Basilicon*, which is made of hony, *Storax*, *Galbanum*, *Bdelium*, blacke pepper

pepper, bay berries, the marrow of a Stag, of each a like quantity; twice as much of Armoniacke, and of the powder of Frankinsence as much as of any of the other, and incorporate them with sheeps suet, and apply it to the grieve, and it will helpe it.

Other Farriers take dry pitch, pitch of Greece, of each one part, of *Galbanum*, and of lime, of each four parts, of *Bitumen*, two parts, of waxe three parts; melt them all together, and annoynt the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the grieve, and peradventure also the eye-sore.

CHAP. CLIII.

How to cure any wound made with the shot of Gun-powder.

According to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first with a probe, or long instrument, search whether the bullet remaine within the flesh or no; and if you finde that it doth, then with another instrument for the purpose, you shall take it forth if it be possible; if otherwise, let it remaine: for in the end nature it selfe will weare it out of its own accord, without any grieve or impediment; because lead will not corrode or canker: Then to kill the fire, you shall take a little varnish, and thrust it into the wound with a feather, annoynting it within even unto the bottome: Then stoppe the mouth of the wound with little soft flaxe dipped in varnish also: Then charge all the swolne place with this charge: Take of *Bole-armenic* a quarterne, of linseed beaten into powder, halfe a pound,

pound, of Beane flower as much, and three or foure Egges, shels and all, and of Turpentine a quarterne, and a quart of Vinegar, and mingle them wel together over the fire, and being somewhat warme, charge all the sore place with part thereof, and immediately clappe a cloath or piece of Leather upon it, to keep the Wound from the cold ayre, continuing both to annoynt the hole within with Varnish, and also to charge the swelling without, the space of foure or five dayes: Then at the five dayes end, leave annoynting of it, and taint it with a rain reaching to the bottome of the Wound, and dipped in Turpentine and Hogges greafe molten together, renewing it every day once or twice untill the fire be thoroughly killed, which you shall perceive by the mattering of the wound, and by falling of the swelling: For as long as the fire hath the upper hand, no thicke matter will issue forth, but onely a thinne yellowish water, neither will the swelling assuage, and then take of Turpentine washed in nine severall waters, halfe a pound, and put thereunto three yolks of egges, and a little Saffron, and taint it with this Oyntment, renewing it every day once untill the Wound be whole. But if the shot have gone quite through the wound, then you shal take a few Weavers linnen thrummies, made very knotty, and dipping them first in Varnish, draw them clean through the wound, turning them up and downe in the Wound at least twice or thrice a day, and charging the wound on eyther side upon the swolne places, with the charge aforesaid, untill you perceive that the fire is killed; then clap only a comfortable playster

ster upon one of the holes, and taint the other with a taint in the salve, made of washt Turpentine, Egges and Saffron, as is before said. Other Farriers use only to kil the fire with the oyle of Creame, and after to heale the Wound up with Turpentine, Waxe, and hogs-grease molten together.

Other Farriers kil the fire with Snow Water, and charge the sweld place with Creame and Barne beaten together, and then heale up the Wound, by dipping the taint in the yolke of an Egge, hony, Saffron wel beaten and mixt together.

CHAP. CLIIII.

Of burning with Lime, or any other fiery thing.

According to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the sore round about, and in every part very cleane with warme Urine; then kill the fire, by annoynting the place with Oyle and Water beaten together, dressing him so every day until the sore be all raw, and then annoynt it with hogges grease, and strew thereupon the powder of unslecked lime, dressing him thus every day once until he be whole.

Other Farriers use first to wash and cleanse the sore with *Sallet* oyle onely warmed, then to kill the fire with Creame and oyle beaten together, and when it is raw, then to spread upon it Cream and Soot mixt together: and lastly, to strew upon it the powder of hony and Lime, untill it be perfectly skinned.

CHAP. CLV.

Of the biting with a mad Dogge.

IF your horse at any time be bitten with a mad dog, the venome of whose teeth wil not only drive him into an extream torment, but it will also infect and inflame in his bloud, in such sort that the horse will be endangered to dye mad. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of Goats dung, of flesh that hath lain long in salt, and of the hearbe *Ebulus*, generally called *Danwoort*, of each halfe a pound, and forty Wal-nuts; stampe all these together, and lay part thereof to the sore, and it will sucke out the Venome, and heale up the wound; but upon the first dressing, you shal give the horse Wine and Treacle mixt together to drink.

There be other Farriers, which first gve the horse Sacke and Sallet oyle to drink, then with a hot Iron cauterize and burne the sore: and lastly, heale up the wound with the salve first recited.

Other Farriers first give the horse two or three spoonefuls of the powder of *Diapente* to drinke in a pint of Muscadine; then take a live Pidgion, and cleaving her in the midst, lay it hot to the Wound, and it will draw out the Venome; then heale the sore with Turpentine and Hogges grease wel molten together. The leaves of *Aristoloch* bruised will take away the poyson.

CHAP. CLVI.

Of hurts by the tuskes of a Boare.

IF a horse be stricken with the tuskes of a Boare, you shall then take Copporas or Vitriol, and the powder of a dogs head being burned, after the tongue hath beene pulled out, and cast away, and mixing them together, apply it once a day to the sore, and it will cure it: Yet before you dresse it, first wash the sore very well, either with Vinegar or with White Wine, or Urine.

CHAP. CLVII.

To heale the biting or stinging of Serpents, or any venomous beast whatsoever.

IF your horse be either bitten or stung, eyther with a Serpent, or any other venomous beast, which you shall easily know by the suddain swelling either of the body or member; then you shall first chase him up and downe until he sweare, and then let him bloud in the roofof the mouth; and lastly, take a young Cock or a Pidgeon, and cleaving it in the midst clap it hot to the wound, and then give the horse White Wine and salt to drink. Other Farriers take a good quantity of the Hearbe called *Sanicula*, stampe it, and temper it together with the milke of a Cowe, till it be all of one colour, and give it the horse to drinke, and it will heale him. Other Farriers clap to the sore hogges dung, or Oxe-dung, or Henbane bruised, or else the ashes of Reedes; then give him

to drinke Mug-wort, or great Tanſie, and Wine and Camomill ſtampt together : Or elſe give him VVine and *Oleum Roſatum* mixt together.

✂ Other Farriers make a playſter of Onions, Hony, and Salte, ſtampt and mingled together, and lay that to the ſore place, and give the Horſe Wine and Treacle to drinke, or elſe white Pepper, Rue, and Time, mixt with wine. Other Farriers take *Aphodillus*, *Paſtula regia*, ſtampt with old Wine and laid to the ſore: for it is moſt ſoveraigne good.

CHAP. CLVIII.

Of Lice or Vermine, and how to kill them.

THE Lice or Vermine which breed upon a horſe, be like unto Geefe Lice, but ſomewhat bigger, and doe breede moſt commonly about the Eares, Necke, Maine, Taile, and generally over the whole body: they doe proceed from poverty, or feeding in Woods, where trees are continually dropping upon them: the ſignes are, the Horſe will be alwayes rubbing and ſcratching, and albeit he eate much meate, yet hee will not prosper: And with his continually rubbing he wil fret and weare away all his Main and tayle, and you ſhal alſo perceive the Lice when the Sunne doth ſhine, running on the tops of the hairs. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of Sope one pound, and of Quickſilver halfe an ounce, mixe and beat them together wel, until the Quickſilver be kild, and then annoint the Horſe all over therewith, and it wil conſume the Lice preſently.

Other

Other Farriers take stavefaker and sope, and mixing them together, annoynt the horse all over therewith. Others take unripe *Mulberries*, and their roots or stalkes, and seeth them in strong urine, and then wash the horse therewith, after that annoynt all his body over with *Sanguis draconis*, the juyce of Leeks, salt, pitch, oyle, and swines grease, very well mixt together.

Others use to chafe all his body over with Quick-silver, and soft grease mixt together, til the Quick-silver be kild, and in two or three dressings the Lice wilbe consumed.

CHAP. CLIX.

*How to save horses from the stinging of Flyes
in Summer.*

IF you wil save your horse in the summer time from the stinging or biting of Flyes, which is very troublesome unto them, then you shall annoynt all the horses body over either with oyle and *Bay-berries* mingled together, or else bind unto the head-stall of his collar, a sponge dipped in strong Vinegar: Some use to sprinkle the stable with Water wherein hearb of Grace hath been layd to steep: or else to perfume the stable with the smoak of Ivy or Calamint, or with Girthe burned in a pan of coales.

But the surest way of all, both in the stable and abroad, is to make two good wispes of Rue, and therewithal to rub the horses body al over, and no flye wil light upon him, or touch him, as hath bin often approved.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLX.


Of bones being broken, or out of joynt.

✶ **O**Vr common English Farriers are very farre to seeke in this cure, because they do neither perfectly acquaint themselves with the members of a horse, nor have so much invention in this extreamity, to make a horse, being an unreasonable creature, to suffer like a reasonable person; and also in that the old traditions in Horse-leach-craft affirme, that all fractures above the knee are incurable; and so despairing they cease to make practise: but they are much deceived, for neither the fracture above the knee, nor the fracture below the knee, is more incurable in a horse then in a man: if the *Farrier* can tel how to keepe the horse from struggling or tormenting the member grieved.

If therefore your Horse have any bone broken, which is most easie to be discerned by the deprivation of the use of that member, and as easie to be felt by the separation of the bones, the one part being higher then the other, besides the roughnesse and inequality of the place grieved: you shall then for the cure thereof. First take a strong double canvas, which shall be as broad as from the horses fore-shoulder to the flank, and shall have another double canvas, which shall come from betweene the Horses foreboots up to the top of the withers, where meeting with the rest of the canvas, and having exceeding strong loopes, to which strong ropes must be fastned, you shall by maine force sling up the Horse from

from the ground, so as his feete may no more but touch the ground : And if it be a fore-legge that is broken, then you shall rayse him a little higher before then behind : If a hinder Legge, then a little higher behinde then before, so that the Horse may rest most upon the members most sound. When your horse is thus slung, then you shall put the bones into the right place: which done, wrappe it close about with unwashed Wooll newly pulled from the sheepes backe, binding it fast to the Legge with a smooth linnen roler soaked before in oyle and Vinegar mingled together, and looke that your Roler lye as smooth and playne as may bee; and upon that againe lay more Wooll dipt in oyle and Vinegar, and then splent it with three broad, smooth, and strong splents, binding them fast at both ends with a thong; and in any case let the horses legge bee kept out very straight, the space of forty dayes, and lernot the bondes bee loosened above thrice in twenty dayes, onlesse it shrinke, and so require to bee new drest and bound againe; but faile not every day once to powre on the fore place, through the splents, Oyle and Vinegar mingled together: And at the forty dayes end, if you perceive that the broken place be sowed together againe with some hard knob or Gristle, then loose the bonds, and ease the canvase, so as the horse may tread more firmly upon his sore foot, which when he doth, you shall loosen him altogether, and let him go up and downe faire and gently, using from henceforth to annoynt the fore place eyther with soft grease, or else with one of these playsters or Oyntments: Take of *Spuma ar-*
gentis,

genti, of Vinegar, of each one pound, of *Sallet* Oyle halfe a pound, of Armoniacke, and of Turpentine, of each three ounces, of Wax and of Rosen, of each two ounces, of *Bitumen*, of Pitch, and of Verdigrease, of each halfe a pound, boyle the Vinegar, oyle, and *Spuma argenti* together, untill it waxe thicke: then put thereunto the pitch, which being molten, take the pot from the fire, and put in the *Bitumen*, without stirring at all, and that being also molten, put in then all the rest, set the pot again to the fire, and let them boyle altogether, untill they be all united in one: that done, straine it and make it in plaister forme, and use it as occasion shall serve.

 Other ancient and wel experienced *Farriers* take of liquid Pitch one pound, of Waxe two ounces, of the purest and finest part of Frankinsence one ounce, of *Amoniacum* foure ounces, of dry Rosen and of *Galbanum* of each one ounce, of Vinegar two pints; boyle first the Vinegar and pitch together, then put in the *Amoniacum* dissolved first in Vinegar, and after that the afore-said Drugges: and after they have boyled altogether, and be united in one, straine it, and make it into a playster, and use it according to occasion.

Other *Farriers* take of old *Sallet* oyle a quart, and put thereunto of Hogges grease, of *Spuma Nitri*, of each one pound, and let them boyle together untill it begin to blub above: then take it from the fire, & when you use any of the oyntment let it be very hot, and well chafed in: and then one of the two former playsters folded above it, and it is most soveraigne and comfortable for any bone that is broken.

CHAP. CLXI.

Of bones out of joynt.

If a horse have any of his bones out of the joynt, as either his knee, his shoulder, his pastorne, or such like, which you shal perceive both by the uncomlineesse of the joynt, and also feele by the hollownesse of the member that is displaced. Then your readiest cure is to cast the horse on his backe, and putting foure strong pastornes on his feete, draw him up so as his backe may no more but touch the ground; then draw the grieved legge higher then the rest, til the poise and weight of his body have made the joynt to shoot into its right place againe; which you shal know when it doth, by a suddaine and great cracke which the joynt wil give when it fallerh into the true place; then with all gentlenesse loose the horse, and let him rise: And then annoynt all the grieved place over, either with the last oyntment rehearsed in the last chapter, or else with the oyle of Mandrake or the oyle of *Swallowes*, both which are of most soveraigne vertue.

CHAP. CLXII.

To dry up humours, or to bind, being astrictive, or binding charges.

TAKE of *Vnguentum Tripharmacum* made of *Lysengy*, Vineger and old oyle, boyled til they be thicke, onely take as much oyle as of both others, and it wil stop and stay the fluxe of any humours.

L 1

If

▪ If you take strong lye, it is a great dryer and a binder of humours.

Dissolve in Vineger *Rosen*, *Affalto*, and *Myrrhe*, of each an ounce, of red Wax halfe an ounce, and of *Armoniacke* halfe an ounce, mingle them wel together in the boyling: for this salve dryeth wonderfully bindeth all loose members, and comforteth all parts that are weakned.

Take of Lard two pounds, and when it is sodden straine it with three ounces of *Cerise*; and as much *Allome* molted, and it both dryeth and bindeth exceedingly.

Dry figges beaten with *Allome*, *Mustard*, and vinegar, doth dry abundantly.

Oyle or soft grease beaten to a salve with Vitrioll. *Galls* and *Allome*, and the powder of *Pomegranats*, Salt and Vineger both dry and bind sufficiently.

Sope and unsleckt Lime mixt together drieth perfectly after any incision.

Verdigrease, *Orpiment*, *Sal-armoniacke*, and the powder of *Coloquintida*, of each a like made into a plaister with milke or waxe, drieth and bindeth.

The grease of Snakes roasted, the head and taylor being cut away, is a great dryer.

To conclude, the barke of a Willow tree burnt to ashes is a great dryer, and binder, as any simple whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXIII.

*A plaister to dry up superfluous moisture, and to
binde parts loosened.*

TAKE of *Bitumen* one pound, of the purest part of
Frankinsence three ounces, of *Bdelium Arabicum*
one ounce, of Deeres suet one pound, of *Populeum*
one ounce, of *Galbanum* one ounce, of the drops of
Storax one ounce, of common *Waxe* one pound, of
Resin Cabial halfe a pound, of *Viscus Italicus* one
ounce and a halfe, of *Apoxima* one ounce, of the
juyce of *Hyslop* one ounce, of the drops of *Armo-
niacke* one ounce, of pitch halfe a pound: let all these
be wel and perfectly molten, dissolved, and incorpo-
rated together according to Art, and then make a
plaister thereof.

CHAP. CLXIII.

*Another plaister to dry up any swelling, wind-gall,
splent, or bladders, in or about the joynts.*

TAKE of *Virgin Waxe* halfe a pound, of *Rosen* one
pound and a quarter, of *Galbanum* one ounce
and an halfe, of *Bitumen* halfe a pound, of *Myrrhe*
secundary one pound, of *Armoniacke* three ounces,
of *Costus* three ounces: boyle all these things toge-
ther in an earthen pot, saving the *Armoniacke* and
Costus, which being first ground like fine Flowre,
must be added unto the other things, after that they
have beene boyled and cooled, and then boyled alto-
gether againe, and wel stirred, so as they may be in-
corporated

corporated together, and made all one substance, and then applyed as occasion shal be administred.

CHAP. CLXV.

Receites to dissolve humours.

TAKE of Worme-wood, Sage, Rosemary, and the barke of an Elme, or of a Pine, of each a good quantity, and boyle them in oyle with a good quantity of Linseed; and making a bath thereof, bathe the grieved part, and it wil dissolve any humours that are gathered or bound together.

A pound of figges stampd with salt til they come to a perfect salve, dissolveth all manner of humours by opening the pores, and giving a large passage.

CHAP. CLXVI.

How to mollifie any hardnesse.

TAKE of Linseed pund, and of Fenugreeke, of each foure ounces, of Pitch and Rosen, of each three ounces, of the flowers of Roses two ounces, pitch of Greece three ounces : boyle them together, then adde three ounces of Turpentine, sixe ounces of hony and a little oyle: and then applying this salve, it wil mollifie and soften any hard substance.

Malvavisco wel sod, and stampd with *Oleum Rosatum*, being laid hot to any hardnesse wil make it soft.

Boile *Branch ursin* and *Mallows* together, and beat them with oyle and Lard, and they wil soften much.

Malvavisco, *Coleworts*, *Branch ursin*, hearbe of the Wal, and old greafe punded, doth mollifie very much.

The

The Oyle of *Cypresse*, both mollifieth and healeth.

Wheate meale, hony, Pellitory, *brankurfw*, and the leaves of Worme-wood being beaten with Swines grease, and laid hot unto any hard tumour, doth suddainely mollifie it, and is passing good for any stripe also.

Grease, Mustard-seed, and Comen boyled together doth mollifie very much.

Take of Sope halfe an ounce, of unsleckt Lime an ounce, and mixe them well with strong lye, and it will mollifie even the hardest hooves.

The iuyce of the leaves and rootes of *Elder*, or a plaister made thereof, doth dry up and mollifie humours marvailously.

So doth the iuyce of the toppes of *Cypresse*, and dry figges macerated in Vineger and strained, of each three ounces: And if you adde to it of *Salniter* one ounce, of *Armoniacke* halfe an ounce, of Aloes and Opoponaxe a little, and make it into an oyntment, it will wollifie any hardnesse very sufficiently.

Mallows, *Nettles*, *Mercorella*, and the rootes of *Cowcumbers*, and old *Turpentine*, being beaten together with old grease, will mollifie any hardnesse speedily.

CHAP. CLXVII.

To harden any softnesse.

THe sole of an old shooe burnt, and sodden in Vineger will harden hooves, and so will also the powder

powder of Gals boyled with brayn and late in strong Vineger.

The powder of honey and Lime, or the powder of Oyſter ſhells, or the powder of a burnt ſelt, or thicke creamſe and ſoote mixt together, will harden any ſore whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXVIII.

To Conglutinate.

Ir*is Illirica* beaten and ſired, mingled with pepper, Hony, Currants, and given the horſe to drink with Wine and oyle, helpeth and conglutinateth any inward rupture or burſtneſſe whatſoever.

Dragant, Saffron, the fruited of the Pine, with the yolkes of egges, given likewise to drink with Wine and oyle, doth alſo conglutinate any inward member or veine broken.

Incenſe, Maſticke, and cure, doth the ſike alſo. *Po-lygano* ſod in Wine, and given to drink is good alſo.

The rootes and ſeedes of *Asparagus* ſod in Water, and given to the Horſe; then after for three dayes give him Butter and Opoponaxe with Honey and Myrre, and it wil conglutinate any inward Ulcer or Rupture whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXIX.

To mundifie and cleanſe any ſore.

TAke oyle of Olives, Swines greaſe clarified, the greaſe of a yong Fox, Turpentine, Allome, and white Waxe, ſeeth them altogether til they bee moſt thoroughly

thoroughly incorporated together, & with this oynment dresse any foule sore whatſoever, and it wil mundifie and cleanſe it moſt ſufficiently.

CHAP. CLXX.

*Of Repercuffive medicines, or ſuch as drive
backe humours.*

Repercuſſive medicines, or ſuch as drive evil humours backe, are commonly called amongſt *Farrriers*, Plaſters or Salves deſenſitive, and are to be uſed about every great Wound and Ulcer, leſt the flux of humors flowing to the weak part, both confound the medicines, and breed more dangerous Exulcerations. Now of theſe Repercuffive medicines theſe are the beſt, either vinegar, ſalt, and Bole-armoniacke beaten together, and ſpread round about the ſore, or elſe White Lead and Sallet oyle beaten alſo together, or Red Lead and Sallet oyle, or elſe *Vnguentum Album*, *Camphiratum*, and ſuch like.

CHAP. CLXXI.

Of burning Compoſitions.

Burning Compoſitions are for the moſt part, Corroſives, of which wee ſhal have occaſion to ſpeake more at large in a Chapter following: yet for as much as ſome are of better temper then others, you ſhal here underſtand that of all burning Compoſitions, the gentleſt is *Vnguentum Apoſtolorum*: next to it is Verdigrease and Hogges greaſe beaten

together : Next to it is *Precipitate*, and Turpentine mixt together : Next to it is *Arsenicke* allayd with any oyle, or healing salve : Next to it is *Mercury sublimat*, likewise allayd with some cooling salve : And the worst is Lime and Sope, or Lime and strong lye beaten together : for they wil corrode and mortifie the soundest part or member whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXXII.

*For all manner of hurts about a horse
whatsoever.*

TAKE an ounce of Oyle, two ounces of Turpentine, and a little Waxe; mingle them at the fire : this wil heale any Wound or Gal, and keep it cleane from filth, water, and dust.

Take Vineger and Honey, and boyle it together, when it is cold adde the powder of Verdigrease, Copporas, and Brasse burnt, mingle them wel together : this wil take away all ill and dead flesh, and cleanse and heale any old uncer.

Take Waxe, pitch, Swines grease, and Turpentine, and mixe them wel together : this wil heale any bone, spel, or any other stub.

Take house Snails, and seeth them in butter, and they wil draw out any Thorne or Nayle, being oft renewed. So wil also the rootes of Reedes being bruised and applyed.

The rootes of an Elder beaten to powder, and boyled with hony is good for any old sore whatsoever.

Take Salt, Butter and Hony, or white Waxe, Turpentine, and oyle *Rosatum*, of each like quantity, with
twice

twice as much Beane flowre as of any of the other: mixe it very wel together, and make it into a salve, and it wil heale any sore, either old or new whatsoever.

Take Waxe, Turpentine, and Deeres suet, or the Marrow of a Stagge, and mixe them wel together, and it wil heale any wound or any Impostume whatsoever: so wil also Waxe, Oyle Masticke, Frankinsence and sheepes suet, wel molten together: or the powder of Masticke, Frankinsence and Aloes, mixt and molten wel together.

The whites of egges beaten with *Oleum Rosatum*, and salt, and so laid upon flaxe huds, healeth any Wound that is not in any principal part where the Muscles are.

If you wil purifie, cleanse, and heale any old sore, take three pints of wel clarified Honey, and boyle it with one pint of Vineger, and one of Verdigrease, and so apply it: or else take of Masticke, and Verdigrease, of each halfe an ounce, of Frankinsence one ounce, of new Waxe foure ounces, of Turrentine sixe ounces, and of hogges grease two pound: boyle and incorporate all these together, and then apply it to the sore place, and it wil both cleanse, purifie, and heale.

Chicke-weed, Groundsel, Graise, and stale Vrine, very wel boyled together, wil heale any galling or hurts by halter, or other accident, or any straine, or stripe, or swelling, which commeth by any such like mischance.

Take of new Milke three quarts, a good handfull of *Plantaine*; let it boyle til a pint bee consumed: then

then adde three ounces of Allome made into powder, and one ounce and an half of white Sugar-candy, made likewise into powder : then let it boyle a little, til it have a hard curd: then straine it; with this warme bathe any old ulcer, then dry it, and lay on some *Un-
guentum Basilicon*; this cleanseth, dryeth, strengthe-
neth, and killeth the itche, and healeth the foulest ul-
cer either in man or beast that may be. Also, if you
take of Milke a quart, of *Allome* in powder two oun-
ces, of Vineger a spoonful; when the Milk doth seeth,
put in the *Allome* and Vineger, then take off the curd,
and use the rest, and it wil likewise dry up and heale
any foule old sore whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXIII.

*How to make the powder of Honey
and Lime.*

TAKE such a quantity of unsleckt Lime as you shal
thinke fit, beate it into very fine powder : then
take so much Hony as shal suffice to mingle it toge-
ther, and make it into a very stiffe paste, in the forme
of a thick Cake or Loafe : then put the same Cake or
Loafe into a hot Oven, or a burning fire till it be ba-
ked, or burnt glowing red: then take it forth, & when
it is cold, beate it into very fine powder, and then use
it as occasion shal serve. It dryeth, healeth, and skin-
neth any sore whatsoever very marvailously.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXXIII.

The order of taking up of veines, and wherefore it is good.

First, before wee speake of the order of taking up of Veines, you shal understand that all Veines except the Necke-veines, the Eye-veines, the Breast-veine, Palate-veines, and the Spurre-veines, are to be taken up, and not stricken with the fleame: partly because they be so little and thinne, that if you strike them, you shal either indanger the striking thorough them; or partly because they are so neare adjoyning to Arteries and Sinewes, that if in striking you should hit and pricke either Artery or sinew, it were a present laming of the horse, as I have oftentimes seene and noted in the practise of many ignorant Smiths. Now touching the order of taking up of a veine it is thus.

First, you shal cast your horse either upon some soft ground, grasse, some dung-hil that is not very moyst, or in some lightsome House, upon good store of sweet straw; then when the horse is thus cast, you shal looke for the veine which you intend to take up, and if it be either so smal, or lye so deepe, that you can hardly perceive it: Then you shal with warme Water, rub, chafe, and bathe all that part where the veine lyeth, then take a narrow filke garter, and a handful or two above the veine (if it be of any of the horses legs) garter the member very strait; but if it be a veine to bee taken up on the body or brest: then with a good fursingle either close behind the hinder point

point of the shoulder, or within a handful of the place, where you meane to take up the veine, gird him; very strait, and presently you shal see the veine to arise; then marke that part of the skinne which covereth the veine, and with your finger and your thumbe, pull it somewhat aside from the veine; and then with a very fine Incision-knife slit the skin cleane through, without touching the veine, and in any wise cut no deeper then through the skinne, and that long-wise too, in such sort as the veine goeth, yet not above an inch at the most in length; that done, remove your finger and your thumbe, and the skinne wil returne againe into his place, right over the veine as it was before, in so much that but opening the orifice, or slit, you shal see the veine lye blew, and bare before your eyes; then take a fine smooth Corner, made either of the Browantler of a Stagge, or of an old Bucke, and thrust it underneath the veine, and lift it up a pretty distance (that is to say, halfe the thicknesse of the Corner) above the skinne; that done, you shal then loose either the garter or the Sursingle, for they are but onely helpes for you to finde out the veine; and where the veine wil appeare them, there by no meanes you shall see them.

Now when you have thus taken' your veine upon your Corner, you shall then either put a red silke thrid, dipt in Oyle of Butter, or else a small shoemakers thrid, underneath the veine also, somewhat higher then the Corner, which silke or thrid must serve to knit the veine when time requires; then the Corner standing still as before, with your knife
slit

slit the toppe of the Veine long-wise, the length of a barley corne, that it may bleed : Then stopping the neather part of your veine with the silke or the thrid, suffer it to bleed from above; then with your silke or thrid removed above, knit it fast with a sure knot above the slit, suffering it onely to bleed from beneath, and having bled there also sufficiently, then knit up the veine beneath the slit with a sure knor, then fil the hole of the veine with salt, and heale up the Wound of the skin with Turpentine and Hoggs grease molten together, or else with a little fresh butter, laid on with a little flax or soft tow is sufficient.

Now the vertue which redounds from this taking up of veines : first it is very necessary, and doth ease all grieves, straines, and stiffenesse of the Limbes : for the taking up of the plat-veines easeth all paines in the brest, and grieves in the chest ; the taking up of the fore-thigh veines easeth Farcies, and swellings of the Legs : the taking up of the shackle-veines before helpeth gourding, quitter-bones, and the swelling of the joynts, scabs and scratches : the taking up of the hinder hough-veines, helpeth Spavens of both kinds, most especially any Farcy in those parts, and general all swellings or impostumes; the taking up of the pastorne-veines behind helpeth swellings about the croner, or neather joynts, paines, Mules, and all manner of kibed heeles, besides sundry other such like diseases.

CHAP. CLXXV.

*Of cauterizing or giving the fire, the
kinds and uses.*

THe giving of fire which amongst the best Farriers is called Cauterizing, and amongst the simpler burning, searing, or blistering is, (according to the general opinion of all the most ancientest Farriers) the chiefeſt Remedy, and as it were the laſt refuge of all Diſeaſes incident to any Horſes body, whether they be Natural or Accidental : for the Violence of fire ſeparating and diſgeſting all manner of humours into a thinne ayre, and looſe body. cleaſeth and avoydeth thoſe groſſneſſes which are the material cauſes of all putrifaction and Ulceration. Now of cauterization there be two kinds, the one of them actual, which is that which is done by the hand, and with the inſtrument : that is to ſay, of the hot Iron of what faſhion ſoever : The other Potential, which is done by the applying of Medicine, whoſe nature is either Corraſive, Putrifaſtive, or Cauſticke.

Now the firſt of theſe, which is the cauterize actual, is principally to be uſed when there is any Apopleſia in any ſinewy part or member, or amongst any of the moſt principall Veines : Alſo when you ſhal diſmember or cut away any joynt, or make any incision where there is feare of any flux of bloud, or where you ſhal find either the ſkin or Muſcles ſhrunk or ſtraightened : and in many ſuch like caſes.

The Cauterizing potential is to bee uſed in old cankered

canckered ulcers, Wennes, or any spongy Excreffions either of flesh or bone whatsoever, of whose natures and properties you shal Reade more hereafter in a following Chapter.

CHAP. CLXXVI.

Of the Canterize actuall, and the forme of Instruments.

AN actuall Cautery, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, being moderately used, is a notable remedy to stop all corruption in members, to keepe perfect the complexion of the same, and also stanch the blood: onely you must have a careful Regard that in the handling of your Iron you touch neither Sinewes, Tendants, Cords nor Ligaments, lest you do utterly disable the member, or breed Crampes or Convulsions; except it bee when you dis-member or cut away any joynt: As when you doe make curtals, geld horses, or such like: and then your cautery is to be used only to seare the Veines, Sinewes, and Ligaments; til such time that you are perfectly assured that all fluxe of blood is stopped whatsoever.

Now againe the actual cautery bindeth together parts loosened, it doth attenuate things blowne, and puffed up, it dryeth up superfluous moisture, it both loosneth, disperseth, and divideth evil matter gathered together into knots, it asswageth old grieves, it rectifieth those parts of the body that are corrupted by any manner of way, reducing them to their first perfect estate, and suffereth no abundance.

dance of evill humours to grow or increase : For the skinne being separated and opened with the hot Iron, all putrifaction whatsoever through the vertue of the fire, is first digested and ripened, and then so dissolved, that the matter doth issue out abundantly at the holes, whereby the grieved or sickned member is now healed, and eased of all paine and griefe : yea, and inso much that the holes being once closed, and close shut up, the place is stronger and better knit together, and covered with a tougher and harder skinne then ever it was before : onely the greatest blemish that can any way be found in cautery is, that it commonly leaveth a great skar, which is many times an eye-sore more then is tollerable : and therefore the use of cauterizing is onely to be preferred but in desperate cases of great extremity : for albeit it worke foule, yet I am perswaded it is most certaine, and it workes most sure.

Now as touching the instruments wherewith you must cauterize, their substance and proportion, you shal understand that the most curious Farriers doe preferre either Gold or Silver to bee the best metall to make them of, in that few or no evil accidents do follow where they burne : But the wisest, best, and most skilfullest Farriers take Copper to be sufficient enough, and a metal without any lawfull exception : yet where Copper instruments cannot be had, there you may with commendations enough use such instruments as are made of Iron, and finde your worke nothing at all hindered.

Now for the fashion or proportion of your Instruments, or Irons, they are to be onely referred to the

the sore, or place grieved, wherewith you are to meddle, according to the diversity whereof your instruments are to bee made of divers fashions, as some are to be made knife-wise, eyther with thine edges, or broad edges; and they be called drawing knives, or searing knives, because they are principally employed in the drawing of straight lines shallow, or deepe, and sometimes in circular or divers squares: some are made like straight, and some like crooked bodkins, and they are employed either in fleshy excressions, to cause exulceration, or else in impostumes to open small passages for the matter, some are made like hookes or sickles, and they are to bee used where the Wound is crooked, for the burning out of dead flesh, or such like hidden evils, which cannot be reacht by any strait instruments: Others are made either with great buttons or little buttons at the end; and they are used to open impostumes, or else to burne into the sound flesh where you intend to make any new sore or issue for the drawing or keeping backe of other evill humours. And in making of these Irons, the Farriers owne judgment is to be of great valew, because he must either encrease and diminish them according to the manner of the place grieved; and bee sure that hee ever make them fit for his right purpose.

Now for the use of these instruments, there are two principall things to be regarded: First the heating of the Iron, and next the true temper, or bearing of the Farriers hand.

Touching the heating of the yron; you shall under-

M m

derstand

derstand, that the backe of the Iron must never bee so hot as the edge, that is to say, you must never make the backe of the iron red hot, for feare that thereby it yeeld too much heat, and so consequently breed inflammation: therefore whensoever you see the backe of your iron as hot as the edge, you shall a little cool it with water.

Now for the temper, or bearing of your hand, you shall understand that the more evenly and light it is done, so much the better it is done; and herein is to be considered, the finenesse or thickenesse of the horses skinne, which you shall know most commonly by his haire: for if it be short and fine, then the skinne is thin: if it be long and rough, then is his skinne thick and boysterous.

Now the skinne that is fine, must bee cauterized or seared with a very light hand, in as much as the skinne is so soone passed through, and the thicke skinne with a heavy hand, and both of them with such a tempered hand, that the skinne must no more but looke yellow: wherein you shall ever find that the fine skinne will sooner looke yellow then the thicke skinne, the maine reason being, because the thickenesse and roughnesse of the haire of the thicke skinne doth cool and choake the heate of the iron, in so much that if it be not laid too with a more heavy hand, and the instrument so much the more and the oftner heated, it cannot worke that effect which in Art should do.

Now you shall also observe, that in drawing of any Line or other Cauterize whatsoever, that you ever draw with the haire, and never against the haire,

haire, wherether the lines be short, long, deepe, shallow, straight, crooked, or over-thwartt, according as the grieve doth require.

Now to conclude, you are to observe in Cauterizings, these few preceprs: First, that you do not give fire to any sinewy place, except there be some apparant swelling, or else impostumation: Secondly, that you give not fire to any bone that is broken, or out of joynt, for fear of breeding a generall weaknesse in the whole member. Thirdly, never to give the fire so deep, or suffer your hand to be so heavy, that you may misshape, or deform the Horse, either by unnecessary figures, or uncomely Scars. Fourthly, not to be too rash or hasty in giving fire, as if every cure were to be wrought by that practise only (as I know some very wel repured Farriers hold of opinion) but onely to attempt all other good meanes before, and when all hope else is desperate, then to make the fire your last refuge, as an extreamity that must prevaile when all other practises do perish.

Lastly, I would not have you like those foolish Farriers which know nothing, utterly to contemne and neglect it, as if it were uselesse, but with all moderation and judicious discretion to apply it in fit time and place, the poor horse may gaine ease, your selfe good Reputation, and the owner profit: which is most certain, as long as you are governed by wisdom.

CHAP. CLXXVII.

Of Cauterize by medicine, which is cauterize Potentiall.

THe Potentiall Cauterize or searing of the flesh by medicine is (as I said before) when the medicines are eyther Corrosive, Putrifactive, or Causticke : Corrosive, as when they doe corrode, rot, gnaw, and fret the flesh: Putrifactive, when they do corrupt the complexion of the member, and doe induce a maine Skarre like dead flesh, causing infinite paine, in such sort that they are often accompanied with Fevers and mortality, and therefore are not to be administred, but to strong bodies, and in very strong diseases: and Causticke, which is as much to say as burning, when the operation is so strong, that it inclineth, and commeth neere to the nature of fire, and so burneth and consumeth whatsoever it toucheth.

Now these Potentiall cauterizes doe exceede and excell one another, by certaine degrees as thus, the corrosives are weaker then the Putrifactives, and the putrifactives are weaker then the caustickes; the corrosives worke upon the upper part in the soft flesh; the putrifactives in the depth of the hard flesh, and the caustickes have power to breake skinne sound or unsound, both in hard and soft flesh, and that very deeply also.

Now of Corrosives some be simple and some be compound : the simple corrosives are Roch-allome, burnt or unburnt, the Sponge of the Sea somewhat burnt

burnt, Lime, red *Curral*, and the powder of *Mercury*, the shavings of an Oxe or Harts horne, *Precipitate*, *Verdigrease*, and such like. The compound *Corrosives* are, black sope and lime, *Unguentum Apostolorum*, and *Unguentum Egyptiacum*, and *Unguentum Caracenum*, and many such like: and these are to be applied unto sores, Ulcers, or Excressions, after they are *Corroded*.

The putrifactives are *Arsnicke*, either white or yellow, *Resalger*, or any medicine compounded with any of them; besides *Sandaracha Chrysocollo*, and *Aconitum*.

Now if you would have your putrifactive medicines to be crustive, that is, breeding a great *Scar*, and hot in the fourth degree: then they are unsleckt lime, and the burned dregs of wine; and these are to be used to *Carbuncles*, *Cankers*, and *Anburies*.

The Caustick medicines are those which are made of strong lye, called *Capitellum*, or *Magistra*, of *Vitriole Romane*, *Sal-nitru*, *Aqua-fortis*, *Apium*, *Cantharides*, *Ciclamine*, Onions, strong *Garlicke*, *Melanacardinum*, the stones or graines of *Briony*, and many such like.

Now in conclusion, I would wishe every diligent *Farrier* seldome or never to use eyther *Arsnicke*, *Resalgar*, or *Mercury sublimat*e, simply of themselves, but rather to allay them (if the substance whereon they are to worke be very great) with *Unguentum Apostolorum*; but if it be very little, then with *Hogges grease*, *Turpentine*, or such like. And thus much for this potentiall *Cauterizing*, and the proper uses.

CHAP. CLXXVIII.

Of the rowelling of horses, and the use thereof.

THe Rowelling of horses is, amongst our ignorant and simple Smiths, the most ordinary and generall practise of all other whatsoever, insomuch that not any disease can almost bee found about a horse, eyther how slight or great soever it bee, but presently without any Reason or sence therefore, they will Rowel him for the same; whereby they not onely put the horse to a needlesse torment, but also bring downe (now and then) such a fluxe of naughty humours, that they lame the horse, which otherwise would bee perfectly sound. But it is not my Theame to dispute of these ignorances; onely this I must say of Rowelling, it is a practise as necessary and commendable for the good estate of a Horses Limbes and body, as any medicine whatsoever, so it be applyed in his due time, and in his due place: otherwise on the contrary part, it is contrary to all goodnesse.

The helps which are got by Rowelling, are these, it separateth and dissolveth all evill humours, which eyther through Naturall or Unnaturall corruptions are gathered and knit together in any one place, hindring the office of any member, or deforming the body by any superfluity of evill substance, it looseth those parts that are bound, and bindeth those parts that are Weakned; it giveth strength unto sicke joynts, and comforteth whatsoever is oppressed with any cold steame, or hot cholericke substance,

substance: the generall use of Rowelling, is eyther for our inward straines, especially about the sholders or hips, or else for great hard swellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward medicine, which is either playster or Vnguent: for you must understand, that when a horse receiveth any strayne or bruise, either in the upper joynts of his sholders or his hips, which joynts do not stand one upon another, as the lower joynts do, but they goe one into another, as the one end of the *Marrow-bone* into the pot of the spade-bone, and the other end into the pot of the Elbow, which is a double bone: Now as I say, when a bruise is received in these parts, if by present application of hot and comfortable medicines, the grieve bee not taken away, then eft soones there gathers betweene the pot and the bone, a certaine bruised jelly, which continually offendeth the tender Gristle which covers the ends of every bone, makes the horse to halt vehemently: and then is this corrupt matter not to be taken away by any outward medicine, but by Rowelling only: and as I speake of the shoulder, so I speake of the hips also, where the upper thigh bone goeth into the pot of the canel bone, and there breeds the like infirmity. Now for the manner of Rowelling, it is in this sort: First, when you have found out the certayne place of the horses grieve, as whether it bee on the fore-pitch of the shoulder, on the hinder Elbow, or on the Hippe, then you shall (having cast the horse upon some Dung-hill or soft ground) make a little slit more then a good handful below the place of his grieve through the skinne, and no more, so bigge

as you may well thrust in a swannes quill into the same : then with your corner raise the skinne a little from the flesh, and then put in your quill, and blow all the skinne from the flesh upward, even to the toppe, and all over the shoulder : then stopping the hole with your finger and your thumbe, rake a small hazell sticke, and all to beate the blowne place all over ; and then with your hand spread the winde into every part, and after let it goe : then take a rampin of horse haire twound together, or which is better, of redde sarcinet, halfe the bignesse of a mans little finger, and above a foote or sixteene inches in length, putting it into your rowelling needle, which would be at the least seaven or eight inches long ; thrust it in at the first hole, and so putting it upward, draw it out againe at least sixe inches above ; and then, if you please, you may put in another above that : and then rye the two ends of the rampins or rowels together, and move and draw them to and fro in the skinne, in any wise not forgetting, both before you put them in, and every day after they are in, to annoynt them well with butter, hogges grease, or oyle de bay.

Now there be other Farriers, which in that they are opiniated that these long rowels, or rampins of haire or filke, doe make both a double sore, and a great scarre, therefore they make their rowels of round pieces of stiffe leather, such as is the upper part of an olde shooe, with a round hole in the middest, according to this forme : and then doubling it when they put it in, as



soone

soone as it is within, to spread it, and lay it flat betweene the flesh and the skinne, and so as the hole of the rowel may answer just with the hole that is made in the horses skinne; and then once in two or three dayes to cleanse the Rowell, and to annoynt it, and so put it in againe.

Other Farmers doe use to make the Rowell of lant-horne-horne, in the same fashion as is made of leather, and in like sort to use it. But for mine owne part, I have used them all, and truely in my practise finde not any better then other: onely the leather or the Horne is somewhat more cleanly, and lesse offensive to the Eye, yet they aske much more attendance.

Now if you do Rowell your horse for any swelling, then you shall ever put in your long Rowel the same way that the veines runne, and seldome or never crosse-wise, and the more you blow the skin for a swelling, so much the better it is: for the Winde is it which onely occasioneth putrifaction, and makes the festred humors to dissolve, and distill down from the secer hollowes of the joynts, into these open places where it falleth away in matter, and so the beast becomes cured.

CHAP. CLXXIX.

How to geld Horses or Colts.

THere is to be observed in the gelding of Horses, first, the age: secondly, the season of the yeare: and lastly, the state of the moone. For the age, if it be a Colt, you may geld him at nine dayes old, or fifteene

reene, if his stones be come downe: for to speake the truth, the sooner that you geld him, it is so much the better both for his growth, shape, and courage: albe it some hold an opinion, that at two years old should be the soonest, but they are mistaken, and their reasons are weake therein.

Now if it be a horse that you would geld, then there is no speech to be made of his age: for it is without any question, that a perfect Farrier may geld a horse without danger at any age whatsoever, being carefull in the cure.

Now for the Season of the yeare, the best is in the *Spring*, betweene *April* and *May*, or in the beginning of *June* at the farthest, or else about the fall of the *Leafe*, which is the latter end of *September*.

Now for the state of the Moone, the fittest time is ever when the moone is in the *Wane*: as touching the manner of Gelding, it is in this sort, whether it bee Foale, Colt, or Horse: First, you shall cast him either upon straw, or upon some dunghill: then taking the stone betweene your fore-most finger and your great finger, you shall with a very fine incision knife slit the Codde, so that you may presse the stone forth, and no more: Then with a paire of small Nippers, made either of Steele, boxe-wood, or Brasil, being very smooth, and clap the strings of the stone betweene them, very neere unto the setting on of the stone, and presse them so hard, that there may be no fluxe of blood: then with a thinne drawing canterizing Iron made red hote, seare away the stone, then take a hard plaister made of *Rosen*, *Waxe*, and washt *Turpentine*, well molten together

ther, and with your hot Iron melt it upon the head of the strings: then seare the strings, and then melt more of the salve, till such time as you have laid a good thickeesse of the salve upon the strings: Then loose the Nippers, and as you did with that stone, so doe with the other also: Then fill the two slits of the Cod with White Salt, and annoynt all the outside of the Cod, and all over the Horses belly and thighes with Hogges grease cleane rendered; and so let him rise: And keepe him either in some very warme stable, or otherwise in some very Warm pasture, where he may walke up and downe; for there is nothing better for a horse in this case, then moderate exercise.

Now if after his Gelding you do perceive that his Cod and sheath doth swell in any extraordinary fashion, then you shall chase him up and downe, and make him trot an houre in a day, and it will soone recover him, and make him sound without any impediment.

CHAP. CLXXX.

*Of the making of Curtals, or cutting off of
the tailes of Horses.*

THE Curtayling of Horses is used in no Nation whatsoever, so much as in this Kingdom of ours, by reason of much Carriage, and heavy burthens which our Horses continually are exercised and employed withall, and the rather sith we are strongly opinionated, that the taking away of those joynts doth make the Horses chine or backe a great deale stronger,

stronger, and more able to support a burthen, as in truth it doth, and we daily finde it by continuall experience.

Now for the manner of curtalling of Horses, it is in this sort : First, you shall with your finger and your thumbe, grope till you finde the third joynt from the setting on of the Horses tayle; and having found it, raise up all the haire, and turne it backward : then taking a very small strong Cord, wrappe it about that joynt, and pull it both with your own strength and another mans, so straight as you can possible pull it : then wrappe it about againe, and draw it as straight or straighter againe : and thus doe three or foure times about the tayle, with all the possible straightnesse that may bee ; and then make fast the ends of the cord : thea take a peece of wood, whose end is smooth and even, of just height with the strunt of the horses tayle ; and setting it between the horses hinder legges (after you have trammelled all his foure legges, in such sort that hee can no wayes stirre) then lay his tayle thereupon, and taking a maine strong sharpe Knife made for the purpose, set the edge thereof so neere as you can guesse it, betweene the fourth and fifth joynt, and then with a great Smithy hammer striking upon the backe of the knife, cut the taile asunder : then if you see any blood to issue forth, you shall know that the cord is not straight enough, and therefore you must draw it straighter, but if no blood follow, then it is well bound : This done, you shall take a redde hote burning iron, made round after this fashion, of the ful



compass

compasse of the flesh of the Horses taylor, that the bone of the taylor may goe through the hole, and with it you shall seare the flesh, till you have mortified it; and in the searing you shall plainly see the ends of the veines start out like pape heads; but you shall still continue searing them, untill you see all to bee most smoorb, plaine, and hard, so that the blood cannot breake through the burning: then may you boldly unloose the Corde, and after two or three dayes, that you perceive the sore beginne to Heal, you shall not misse to annoynt it with fresh butter, or else with hogges grease and Turpentine, until it be whole.

CHAP. CLXXXI.

*To make a white Starre in any part
of a Horse.*

If you will at any time make a White Starre, eyther in your Horses fore-head, or in any other part of his body, you shall, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers. Take a Tile-stone, and after you have burned it, beate it into fine powder: then take Lilly Rootes, Daisie Rootes, White brier Rootes, of each a like quantity, and having dried them, beate them also into fine powder, and mixe them with the first: then with a Razor shave that part of your horse where you would have your Starre: and then with this powder rubbe it so vehemently, that you scarce leave any skinn on; then take a good quantity of hony-suckle-flowers, and a like quantity of hony, and the water wherein a moule

Moule hath beene sodden; and then distill them into a water, and with that water wash the sore place the space of three daies together, and keep the Wind from it, and you shall presently see the white haire to grow; for this Receipt hath beene often very well approved.

☞ There be other Farriers which take a Crab, and roast it, and being fire hot, bind it to that part which you would have white, and it will scald away the old haire, and the next haire that groweth wilbe White. Other Farriers use, after they have shaved the place, to take the juyce of sharpe Onions or Leekes, and to bath the place very much therewith: then to take Barley bread, as fire hot as it commeth from the Oven, and clap it to the shaven place, suffering it to lye so til it be cold: and then after annoynt it with hony, and the White haire will come. Other Farriers use to annoynt the shaven place with the grease of a Mouldy-warpe sodden, and that will bring the white haire. Other Farriers use after they have shaved it, to rub the place well with Salt, and then twice every day for a fortnight, to wash it with the broth where-in a Mouldy-warpe and some swines grease hath bin sodden.

Other Farriers use to boyle a Mouldy-warpe in salt Water for three daies together, or else in strong Lye, and ever as one lyquor constmeth, to supply it with another; then with this Decoction being warme, annoynt the shaven place, and it will bring white haire suddainly. Other Farriers take the Gall of a Goate, and rub the shaven place therewith. and it will bring white haire also.

Other

Other *Farrriers* take Sheeps milke, and boyl it, and in that wet a linnen cloath, and being very hot, lay it too, renewing it until you may rub off the haire with your finger, this done, apply the milke to it twice a day luke-warme, til the haire do come againe, which without all question will be white.

Other *Farrriers* take the roots of Wilde Cowcumbers, and twice so much *Nitrum* mingled with Oyle and hony, or else adde to your Cow-cumbers *Sal-nitrum* beaten, and hony, and annoynt the shaven place therewith, and it will bring white haire.

Other *Farrriers* use to take a piece of a bricke-bar, and with it gently to rub and chafe the place, till by the continuanc thereof, you have rubbed away both the haire and the skin, so broad as you would have the *Star*, and then after to annoynt it with hony, untill the haire come again: Or else to roast a *Colewort* stalke like a Warden, or an Egge, untill it be stone-hard: and then as they come hote out of the fire, to clap either of them to the Horses fore-head, and it will scald off the haire, then to annoynt it with hony til the haire come againe.

Now to conclude, and to shew you the the most perfect and absolute experiment which I have ever found to bee most infallible, and it is thus: You shall take a very fine, sharpe, long bodkin, made for the same purpose, and thrust it up betwixt the skinne and the bone upwards, so long as you would have the *Starre*; and in thrusting it up, you shall hollow the skinne from the bone the bignesse that you would have the *Starre*: this done, you shall take a peece of Lead, made in the true shape of your bodkin, and

and drawing out the Bodkin, thrust in the lead into the same holes; then you shall thrust the Bodkin cross-wise the forehead underneath the lead; and then thrusting in such another piece of Lead, you shall see it in the Horses face to present this figure, which being done, you shall take a very strong pack-thread, and putting it under-



neath all the foure ends of the Leads, and drawing it with all straightnesse, you shall gather all the hollow skinne together on a purse, folding the pack-thread ofte and ofte about, and still straighter and straighter, so that you shall see it then to present unto you this figure: this done, you shall let it rest at least the space of eight & forty houres, in which time the skin will be, as it were, mortified: then may you unlose the pack-thread, and draw forth the leaden pinn, and with your hand close the hollow skinne to the Fore-head hard againe; and shortly after you shall see the hayre to fall away, and the next haire which cometh, will be white; and this experiment is most infallible.



Now there be some other Farriers which will not put in pinnes, nor use any pack-thread, but only will

will slit the fore-head, and open the skinne on both sides, and then put in either a Horne or a plate of lead as big as the Star, and so let it remaine till the skinne rot: Then take out the Horne or Lead, and annoynt the place with Hony, and the water of Mallowes sod, and it wil bring white haire: And surely this experiment also is most infallible; but it maketh a soule sore and is somewhat long in bringing his vertue to effect.

Againe, I have seene a white Star also made by taking the guts of a Hen, or Pullet, and clapping them hot as they come out of the belly to the horses face, having in a readinesse some hollow round thing made for the same purpose, to keepe the guts together upon the Horses face.

CHAP. CLXXXII.

*How to make a blacke Star, or white
haire blacke.*

IF at any time you would have a desire to make upon a white Horse a blacke Star, you shal take a scruple of Inke, and foure scruples of the wood of *oliander* beaten to powder; incorporate this in as much sheepes suet as wil wel suffice, and then annoynt the place therewith, and it wil no doubt make any white haire blacke.

Other old Farriers take the Decoction of Fearn rootes, and Sage sod in lye, and wash the place therewith, and it wil breed black haire; but you must wash the place very oft therewith.

Other Farriers use to take the rust of Iron, Galls, and

and Vitriol, and stampe them with oyle : or else take Sourter inke, Gals, and Rust, and beate them well together, and then annoynt the place therewith, and it wil turne any white haire to blacke.

CHAP. CLXXXIII.

To make a red Starre in a Horses face.

IF you desire to make in your horses face, or any other part a red Star, you shal take of *Aqua fortis* one ounce, of *Aqua-vite* a peny-worth, of silver to the value of eightene pence : put them into Glasse, and heate them wel therein, and then annoynt the place very wel therewith, and it wil immediately turne the haire to be of a perfect red colour, onely it wil endure no longer then til the casting of the haire : and therefore at every such time you must renew the haire againe, if you wil have the star to continue.

CHAP. CLXXXIIII.

How to make haire to come very soone, very thicke, and very long.

IF you would have haire to come very soone in any bare place, or to grow thick where it is thin, or long where it is short, you shal take (according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) the urine of a yong boy, and with it first wash the place : after that, take lye made of unlecked Lime, *Ceruse* and *Lytargy*, and with it wash the haire oft, and it wil make it come soone, long, and thicke.

Other

Other Farriers use to wash the place with Water wherein the rootes of *Althea* have bin sod: then after dry it gently with your hand, and it wil encrease haire much. Other Farriers use to wash the place with oyle mingled with the ashes of Nut-shells burnt, or else Snail-shells burnt, and it wil encrease haire also. Other Farriers take *Agrimoni* punded with Goates milke, and with it annoynt the place, or else oyle wherein Mouldiwarpe hath bin boyled, and annoynt the place with either of them, & it wil encrease haire very much. Other Farriers take the dung of Goates, Allome, hony, and the bloud of a Swine: mingle them all together, and stir them til they be ready to boyle, and being hot, rub the bare place therewith. Other ancient Farriers take Nettle-seedes bruised with hony, water, and salt, and then rub the place therewith. Other Farriers take the roote of a white Lilly beaten and sod in oyle, and annoynt the place therewith. Others take the juyce of a long Onion, or else the juyce of Radishes, and annoynt the place therewith. Others take Tar, Oyle Olive, and Hony boyled together, and with it annoynt the bare place. Others take the soote of a Cauldron mixed with hony and oyle, and annoynt the place therewith.

There be other ancient Farriers which use this, and it is the best of all, they take greene Wal-nut shells, & burne them to powder, and then mixe it with Hony, oyle and Wine, and annoynt the place therewith, and it wil encrease haire wonderfully, and very soone.

CHAP. CLXXXV.

To make haire smooth, flecke, and soft.

IF you wil make your horses Coate to bee smooth, flecke, soft, and shining, you shal with sufficient store of cloath keepe him warme at the heart; for the least inward cold wil make the haire stare: then you shal make him sweate oft: for that wil raise up the dust and filth, which makes his coate seale and hard: then you shal, when the horse is in his greatest sweat, with an old sword-blade turning the edge towards his haire, scrape, or as it were curry away all the white foame, sweate, and filth which shal be raised up, and that wil lay his coate even, and make it smooth: And lastly, you shal when you let him bloud, rub him all over with his owne bloud, and so let it remaine two or three daies, and then curry and dresse him wel, and this wil make his coate shine like glasse.

CHAP. CLXXXVI.

How to take off haire in any part of a horse.

IF you wil at any time take off the haire from any part of a horse, you shal dissolve in Water, (according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) eight ounces of unsleckt Lime: and then boyle it til a quarter be consumed, then adde to it an ounce of Orpiment, and then lay a playster thereof to any part of the horse, and it wil in very few hures bring all the haire away.

There

There bee other ancient Farriers which boyle in running water Rust and Orpiment, and with it being very hot wash the place, and it will soone bring the haire away.

CHAP. CLXXXII.

How to cast and over-throw a Horse.

Whensoever you intend to cast or overthrow your Horse, after you have brought him into a convenient place: as namely, either upon some greene swarth, or upon some Dung-hill, or in some Barne upon good store of soft straw, you shall take and double a long rope, and cast a knot a yard from the bought; then put the bought about his necke, and the double rope betwixt his fore-legs, & about his hinder pastornes, underneath his fet-locke, then put the ends of the rope under the bought of his neck, and draw them quickly, & they wil overthrow him, then make the ends fast, & hold down his head, under which alwaies you must be sure to have good store of straw. Now if you would at any time, either brand your horse on the buttock, or do any thing about his hinder legs, that he may not strike, take up his contrary fore-leg; and when you doe brand your horse, see that the Iron be red hot, and that the haire be both seared quite away, and the flesh scorched in every place before you let him goe, and so you shal be sure to loose no labour.

CHAP. CLXXXVIII.

How to know the age of a horse

THe age of every horse is knowne; either by his Teeth, by his hooves, or by his tayle.

It is knowne by his Teeth; at two yeares old hee changeth the foure fore-most teeth in his head, at three yeares old hee changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more apparant foales teeth but two of each side, above and below: at foure yeares old hee changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more foales teeth but one on each side, both above and below; at five yeares old hee hath never a foales tooth before, but then hee changeth his tusshes on each side: at sixe yeares old hee putteth up his tusshes, neere about which you shall see apparantly growing a little circle of new and young flesh: besides, the tush will be white, small, short and sharp: at seaven yeares old, the two out-most teeth of his neather chappe on both sides will be hollow, with a little blacke specke in them: And at eight yeares old, then all his Teeth will be full, smooth, and plane, the blacke specke being cleane gone, and his tusshes will be somewhat yellow, without any circles of young flesh: At nine yeares old, his fore-most teeth will be very long, broad, yellow, and foule, and his tusshes will bee blunt: At ten yeares old, in the inside of his upper Tusshes will bee no holes at all to be felt with your fingers end, which till that age you shall ever most perfectly

perfectly feele ; besides, the Temples of his head will beginne to be hollow and crooked ; At eleven yeares of age his teeth wil bee exceeding long , very yellow , blacke and foule ; onely hee will cut even, and his teeth wil stand directly opposite one against another ; at twelve yeares old his teeth will be long, yellow, blacke, and foule, but then his upper teeth will over-reach and hang over his neather teeth ; at thirteene yeares his rushes will be worne close to his chap, if he be a much ridden horse, otherwise they will be black, foul, and long like the fangs of a boare.

If a horses hooves be rugged , and as it were seamed, one seam over another ; if they be dry, ful, and crusty, it is a sign of a very old age ; as on the contrary part, a smooth, moyst, hollow, and wel founding hoose is a signe of young yeares.

If you take your horse with your finger and your thumbe by the sterne of the taile, close at the setting on by his buttocke, and feeling there hard ; if you feele betwixt your finger and your thumbe of each side his tayle, a joynt sticke out more then any other joynt, by the bignesse of a hazell Nut, then you may presume, the horse is under ten yeares old ; but if his joynts be all plaine, and no such thing to be felt, then he is above ten, and at least thirteene. If a horses eyes be round, full, & staring from his head, if the pits over his eyes be filled, smooth, and even with his Temples, and wrinckles either about his brow or under his eyes, then the horse is young : if otherwise you see the contrary Characters, it is a signe of old age. If you take up a horses skin on any
part.

part of his body, betwixt your finger & your thumbe, and plucke it from the flesh: then letting it goe againe, if it suddainely returne to the place from whence it came, and be smooth and plaine without wrinkle, then the horse is young, and full of strength: but if being pulled up it stand, and not returne to his former place, then be assured hee is very old and exceedingly wasted:

Lastly, if a horse that is of any darke colour shall grow grissell onely about his Eye-browes, or underneath his maine, it is then an infallible signe of most extreame old age: and thus much touching a horses age.

CHAP. CLXXXIX.

How to make an old horse seeme young.

TAKE a small crooked Iron, no bigger then a Wheate Corne, and having made it red hot, burne a little blacke hole in the toppes of the two outmost teeth of each side the nether chappe before, next to the rushes, and then with an aule blade pricke it, and make the shel fine and thin; then with a sharpe scraping Iron make all his teeth white and cleane: this done, take a fine Lancet, and above the hollows of the horses eyes which are shrunke downe, make a little hole onely but through the skinne, and then raising it up, put in a quill that is very small; as the quill of a Raven, or such like: and then blow the skin full of winde til all the hollownesse be filled up, and then take out the quill, and lay your finger a little while

while on the hole, and the winde will stay in, and the horses countenance will be as if he were but sixe yeares old at the most.

CHAP. CXC.

How to make a horse that hee shall not weigh either in company, or when he is ridden.

IF either when you are in service in the Warrs, and would not be discovered, or when upon any other occasion you would not have your horse to neigh, or make a noise, you shall take a list of wollen cloath, and tye it fast in many folds about the midst of your horses tongue, and beleeve it, as long as the tongue is so tyed, so long the horse can by no meanes neigh, or make any extraordinary noise with his voice as hath bin often tryed and approved of.

CHAP. CXCI.

How to make a horse exceeding quicke and nimble of the spurre.

IF your horse be either dull of the Spur through his naturall inclination, or through tiring, or any other accident, you shall first shave him the breadth of a saucer on both sides, just in the spurring place, on both sides the veine; then with a Launcet make sixe issues, or small Orifices on both sides; then raysing the skinne from the flesh, you shall put into the holes a pretty quantity of burnt salt, which will make the sore to rankle.

In

In this sort you shall keep it three days, and by no meanes ride the horse: the third day being ended, you shall set a child on his back with spurs, & make him spur the horse in the fore place: which done, you shall wash the place with pisse, Salr, and Nettles sodden wel together, and this wil make his sides smart so extreamely, that hee wil never abide the spur after.

Now you shall let him stand after his washing three daies more, and then take halfe a pint of honey, and with it annoint his sides once a day til they be whole. Also rub his sides with the powder of glasse, and it wil do the like.

CHAP. CXCII.

How to make a horse that tires, or is restiffe, to goe forward.

IF your Horse (as it is the common nature of Jades) through the naughtinesse of his nature, or dulnesse of spirit, be either so restiffe, or so tyred, that he wil not goe forward a foot, but standeth stocke still: You shall then make a running suickle of a good smal cord and put it about his coddies and stones, in such sort that it may not slip: then you shall draw the rest of the cord between the girthes and the horses body, and bringing it just up between the horses fore-leggs, be sure to hold the end of the cord in your hand as you sit in the Saddle, then ride the horse forward, and when hee beginneth to grow restiffe, or to stand still, then pluck the cord, and crampe him by the stones, and you shall see that immediately hee will goe forward: And in this same manner you shall use him for

at least a fortnight together, and it will cleane take away that evil quality.

CHAP. CXCIIL.

*Other most excellent and approved wayes to
preserve a horse from tyring, never
disclosed till now.*

IF your Horse either through violence of labour, distemperature of body, or naughtinesse of nature happen to tyre under you, or travaile not with that spirit you desire, then when you come to a baiting place alight, and set up your horse warme, but doe not walke him: then after he hath bin wel rubbed, take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto halfe an ounce of the fine searst powder of *Elicampane*, and brew them together, then give it the horse with an horne, which done, tye his head to the racke, for you need not care for Provender till night, at which time Provender him well, and in the morning give him oares or bread, or both in plentifull manner, and being ready to take his back, give him the former quantity of Ale and *Elicampane* as ofore said, and double you shal find him to travaile with great courage and spirit, as hath bin approved.

Also if you take a bunch of *Penny-royall*, and tye it to the mouth of your bir or masse, you shall finde it very comfortable, and it will cause your horse to travaile lustily.

Againe, if you take of the best Tobacco, and dry it in the Sunne in a glasse close stopp, then punde it

very

ry small, and mixe it with an equall quantity of the Cockle-shells, then with the oyle of Dill, and the oyl of Cloves make the powder into a paste, then make pretty round bals thereof as big as Wal-nuts, and dry them in the shadow in the Dog-daies, then keepe them close in a Gally pot, and give them as pills in the time of necessity: that is to say, a ball at a time, whensoever your horse shal faile in travaile: And this doth not onely helpe tryng, but also takes away any cold whatsoever.

¶ Lastly, if your horse notwithstanding for all this doe happen at any time to tyre, then presently take off his saddle, and with the hearb Arsmart rubbe his backe all over very hard, then laying Arsmart also under the saddle, so ride him gently at the first, and if there be any life in him, it will make him goe, as it hath beene made prooffe of.

CHAP. CXCIII.

How to make a horse to follow his Master, and to finde him out, and challenge him amongst never so many people.

IF you will have your horse to have such a violent love towards you, that hee shall not onely follow you up and downe, but also labour to finde you out, and owne you as soone as hee hath found you: You shal then take a pound of Oat-meale, and put there to a quarter of a pound of honey, and halfe a pound of *Lycarge*; and then make a Cake thereof, and put it

it in your bosome next unto your naked skinne : then runne or labour your selfe up and downe until you sweate, then rub all your sweate upon your cake; this done, keep your Horse fasting a day and a night, and then give him the cake to eate, which as soone as he hath eaten you shal turne him loose, and he wil not onely most eagerly follow you, but also hunt and seeke you out when he hath lost, or doth misse you; and though you bee environed with never so many, yet he wil find you out, and know you; and you shal not faile but every time that hee cometh unto you, you shal spee in his mouth, and annoynt his tongue with your spittle : And thus doing he wil never forsake you.

CHAP. CXCV.

The nature and speciall qualities of all the Simples that are spoken of in this whole Worke, set downe in the manner of Alphabet.

A

A *Brotonum*, which wee cal in English Southerne-woort is hot and dry in the third degree, and openeth the pipes of the body, and is good for short winde.

Absinthium, which we cal Worme-wood, is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second; it cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for the stomacke.

Aceto, which we cal Vineger, especially if it be of Wine is cold and piercing, to wit, cold in the first, and dry in the third degree.

Agaricum is hot in the first, and dry in the second.

second degree : it expelleth humours, purgeth all fleame and choller, and is good for the liver and kid-neyes.

Allium, which wee call Garlick, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it draweth, openeth, and expelleth all evil humours.

Agricum, which wee call Cresses, is hot and dry in the fourth degree: it burneth, draweth, and resolveth, and is exceeding good for scurfe, or wild scabs, or for the lungs.

Agripa is a knowne Vnguent that is good against all rumours.

Allome, called commonly *Roch Allome*, is hot and dry in the third degree, and is good for cankers.

Alder, or *Elder* tree is hot and dry, it purgeth choller and fleame, and healeth wounds.

Aloes is hot in the first, and dry in the third degree, it cleanseth and dissolveth, and also comforteth the vital parts.

Altheo, which wee call white *Mallows*, is hot and dry : it looseth and scattereth humours, warmeth and moysteneth very much.

Almonds is hot and moyst in the first Degree : it provoketh Vrine, and is very good for the Lungs or Liver.

Ambrosia, which wee call Wood-sage, represseth, driveth backe, and bindeth humours.

Ammoniacum is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree, it softneth and dissolveth humours.

Anetum, which we call *Dill*, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree : it ripeneth crude humors, and expelleth heate.

Anise.

Anise-seedes is hot and dry in the third Degree, expelleth cold, and dissolveth humours, and provoketh urine.

Antimonium, or *Stibium*, is cold and dry, it bindeth, mundifieth, and purgeth.

Appio, which we call *Smallage* or *Parsley*, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree: it ripeneth, cleanseth, openeth, and provoketh urine.

Aristolochia, which wee call *Birib-waort*, or *Hart-waort*, is hot and cleanseth: but if it be *Rotunda*, then it is so much the stronger, being hot and dry in the fourth degree: it draweth and purgeth thinne water and fleame, and is good to open the Lungs; it is good against all manner of poyson whatsoever, or biting of any venomous beasts.

Armoniacke both dryeth, cooleth, softneth, and draweth.

Artemisia, which we call great Tansey, or Mugwoort, is hot in the second, and dry in the third degree: it is very good for Wormes, and swellings in the sinewes.

Asfnicke of both kinds is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree, it hindereth, eateth, and fretteth, being a very strong Corrosive.

Affasetida is a gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree, it cleanseth evil humours.

Asphaltum is a pitch that is mixt with *Bitumen*: it is hot and dry, and comforteth any swelling.

Affonseo is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree: it cleanseth and dryeth, and is good for to comfort the stomacke.

Affungia, which wee call soft or fresh grease, is hot

hot and moyst in the first degree : It mollifieth, ripeneth, and healeth any wound, impostume, or Vicer.

Avena, which we commonly cal Oates, are naturally dry : they doe dry, bind, cleanse, and comfort all the inward parts, and are the onely principall simple which doth naturally agree with the composition of a horses body; and therefore the Oyle or the quintessence of them is the onely absolute and perfect medicine that can bee administred for any inward sicknesse, as experience wil approve and make perfect.

Avelanne, which wee call the ashes of Nut-shells burnt, are hot and dry, and doe skin or stop the fluxe of matter.

B

Bay-berries are vehemently hot and dry, and are good for all manner of rhumes, or shortnesse of Winde, especially for any disease in the Lungs : it is good against poyson, Consumptions, short breath, fleame, hardnesse of hearing, helpes, rying, cramps, Scurvy, the Stone, stoppings of the Liver, cures the yellowes and drop sic.

Balsamum is hot and dry in the second degree : it cleanseth, draweth and comforteth.

Bdelium is a gum that is hot and dry; it softneth, and draweth away moisture, and is excellent against all hard swellings whatsoever.

Bertonicum or *Bettonicum*, which we cal Doggstone, or Kegwort, is hot and dry in the first degree: it purgeth and cleanseth all evil humours.

Biacca is cold and dry in the second Degree: it closeth things opened, it softens hardnesse, filleth places empty, and doth extenuate all excreſſions.

Bittole, which we call Beets, is cold and moist, and cleanseth ulcers.

Bitumen is a kinde of Brimstone, or fatnesse from the sea, it is hot and dry in the second degree, and is comfortable against any swelling.

Bottiro is hot in the first, and moist in the second degree, and it ripeneth impostumes.

Bolcarmonia is a certaine earth which is colde and dry, which bindeth and driveth backe evill humours, and is also an excellent Defensitive against fluxes of blood.

Branchurin is a wonderful great softer, and mollifier.

Brasica, which we call Cole-woorts, is very dry, it doth conglutinate Wounds, it healeth ulcers, and tumours, it holdeth the seede, and killeth evil humours.

Brotano, which is the same that **Abrotonum** is, looke there.

Brusce, which we call Butchers Broome, or knee holm, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first, it provoketh urine.

Briony, of this there are two kinds, the White, and blacke, but the white is more effectual, the root of it is hot and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good for all cold Diseases, it also dryeth, draweth, and mollifieth all manner of hardnesse.

Calafonia or *Colophonis*, doth incarnate ulcers, and doth conglutinate things which are separated.

Calaminto, which wee call Wilde penny-royall, or Wilde Mint, of which that which growes on the Mountaines is the best, is hot and dry in the third Degree, doth resolve tumours, and draweth away humours.

Calcina viva, which wee call unsleckt Lime, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it adusteth, dryeth and corroderth.

Camamila, which wee call Camomile, is hot and dry in the first degree: it mollifieth and dissolveth all grieves, and is good especially for the Liver.

Camedres, which wee call Germander, is hot and dry in the third degree; and is good against all moyst colds.

Camphora is a kind of Gum which is cold and dry in the third degree; it preserveth the body from putrefaction, and bindeth humours.

Canabis which wee call Hempe, is hot, the feede whereof driveth away extraordinary colds: it ripeneth and dissolveth humours, and mollifieth and dryeth inflammations.

Ciramon is hot and dry in the third degree; and is comfortable in all inward sicknesses.

Canna which wee call Reedes, especially the hedge Reed, draweth out prickles, if you lay the Rootes too with the knobs.

Cantharides are certaine flies, which are hot and dry in the third degree; they wil rayse blisters in the sound parts.

Capilli veneri, which we call maidens haire, is dry, and bindeth loose humours.

Cardimonium is hot, it extenuateth humours, and being mixt with vinegar killeth scabs.

Clones are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable to the inward parts.

Carrovaies are hot and dry in the third degree, it helpeth Wind, and cleanseth evill humours.

Cassia is hot and moist in the first degree, it expelleth Wind, dissolveth humours, and purgeth the stomacke of choler and fleame.

Costoreum is hot and dry, and purgeth much.

Cabbage is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth and ripeneth humours.

Cemere which we call Ashes, are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanseth mightily.

Centuria which wee call Wilde running *Betony*, smelling like *Mariorum*, is hot and dry in the third degree, it bindeth Wounds and conglutinateth, and is good for diseased Livers, for the Wormes, old sores and Wounds, and is commonly called *Centuary*.

Cepe which we call Onions, is hot in the fourth degree: it doeth cleanse corruptions, and ripens swellings.

Cervil is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

Cernisa is a white oyntment made of oyle and white Lead, it is cold and dry in the second degree: and for the effects it hath all those which *Braccha* hath.

Serecallo: see *Serococollo*.

Chelidonium which wee call *Seladine*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth all putractive

humours, and is excellent against inward sicknesses, especially yellows or jaundies.

Citrus which wee call Hemlocke, is cold in the fourth degree, it numbeth and astotieth.

Cicoria, which we call Succory, is cold and dry in the first degree, and bindeth much.

Comen is hot in the third degree, and hot in the second: it mollifieth and ripeneth.

Cipelle, which is Leekes, or as we call them, chives, see *Capa*.

Cinabar, or *Sanguis draconis*, or as we call it *Vermilion*, is a certaine merle drawn from quick-sulphure, and quick-silver, it dryeth, healeth, incarnateth, bindeth, and comforteth ulcers.

Cito, or *Cisto*, is dry in the second Degree, and bindeth much.

Citrons or *Cithrons*, are cold and moyst in the second degree, they doe cleanse and pierce.

Coloquinrida, is hot and dry in the third degree, and mundifieth onely.

Colosonia, which wee commonly call earth-pitch or Greeke pitch, is hot and dry in the third degree: it conglutinateth and gathereth together. See *Rece Grace*.

Cocumeri, see *Cucumery*.

Consolida, which we call Camphery, is colde: it conglutinateth and bindeth, and is good against ruptures.

Costro, or *Cossa*, being bitter, is hot, and healeth Ulcers.

Costus is hot in the third, and dry in the second Degree: and it raiseth up Wormes, and is that

that which we call Hearbe *Mary*, or the roote of *Angelica*.

Corno di ceruo, which we cal Harts horn, is dry, yet it strengthneth very much, and expelleth poyson.

Crocum, which we cal Saffron, is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: it bindeth, comforteth, and resolvethe impostumes.

Cucumeri siluaggi is hot & dry in the third degree: it dissolvethe, softneth, and purgeth fleame.

Cucumeri elaterium is cold and moist in the second degree, it cleanseth much, and is made of the juyce of Wilde Cow-cumbers.

D

Dates are hot and moyst in the second degree: they do resolve and disperse things knit together.

Diacatholicon, purgeth al offensive humors which offend the body, whatsoever.

Diaphinicon, or *Diaphenicon*, purgeth Wind exceedingly, and comforteth all griefes of the belly which are begot by crude humours, springing from Cholickes, or such like paines.

Dialtea or *Dialthea*, is an oyntment made of Holly-hoxe, or Sea-mallows: it warmeth and moistneth.

Dragonwoort, is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

E

Ebuli which wee call Elder, is hot and dry in the third degree: it dryeth and driveth out Water, & expelleth Choler and thin fleame, see *Gambuchus*.

Edera terristris, which wee call ground Ivy, see *Hedera*.

Elatrium, see *Cucumeri*.

Elleboro, which wee call neefing powder, of it are two kinds, the white and blacke; it is hot and dry in the third degree.

Eruca which we cal rocker, and of which the wild is the best; the seeds thereof are hot and dry, and expelleth urine, Worms and water.

Elusa, which is a hearb like sponge, is hot in the fourth degree, and dryeth and cleanseth exceedingly, and of some is called woolfes milke.

Euforbinum is a gumme that is hot in the fourth degree: it dryeth, purgeth, cleanseth, and exulcerateth much.

Excrusion is that which we call *Oxigation*; is a certaine composition or mixture made of *Aceto* and water, and is good to allay swellings and tumours.

F

Faba, which wee call a beane, is cold and dry, and it cleanseth, and dissolveth very much.

Farrina, which wee call Branne, is hot and dry in the first degree, and dissolveth very much.

Fearne is dry and binding, but the roor is hot and cleansing, and killeth wormes.

Felle, which wee call Gall, is hot and dry, and it cleanseth and mundifieth.

Ferugo, which wee call the rust of Iron, is hot and dry in the second degree, it comforteth and restraineth eyill humours.

Foci aridi, which we call dry figs, are hot and dry in the second degree: they ripen tumors, soften and consume hardnesse, and are good for purfickenesse, coughs, and diseases of the lungs.

Filomontano, which wee call a Dodder, beeing a thing that cleaveth to hearbs, winding about them like threds; it openeth the liver and milt, and purgeth all fleame and choler.

Filonio is a composition, which wil astonish or benumbe any part or member.

Fennell is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree: it doth dissolve all manner of grosse humours, and is good for the liver or lungs.

Foligine, which we call soote, is hot and dry, and it dryeth marvelously, and so doth all sootes whatsoever.

G

Gallanga, which wee call Galingale, is hot and dry in the third degree: it easeth the stomack of all griefes which proceed from cold causes: it strengthneth the braine, and comforteth the senses.

Galbanum is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: it softneth, stoppeth, and draweth away evill humours, and is good against cold.

Galla, which we cal Galles, or a light fruit of Okes, are hot and piercing.

Gariflata, which we call hearb bennet, is hot and dry in the second degree.

Garofoli, which we call Cloves, are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable for inward sicknesse.

Ginger is hot, and is excellent to preserve heate in the inward parts.

Genista or *Ginestra*, which wee call Broome, is hot and dry in the third degree: it killeth Wormes, and scoureth much.

Gentian, especially the Roote, is hot in the third, & dry in the second degree: it doth extenuate, purge, and cleanse all evill humors, and it is good for the Liver and Stomack, and for Wounds and sores.

Gillo, which we call Lillies, softneth sinews, and are good for wounds and sores.

Gramen, which is any manner of graine or pulse, is colde and drye, except Wheate, and that is temperately hot and moyst: they doe incarnate and mundifie.

Graffi, which is any manner of fat, is hot and moyst, and doth ripen and soften.

H

Harundinis cortex, which we call Canesreed, is hot and dry in the third degree.

Hedera, which we call Ivy, is a great drawer and opener.

Helxine, which we call *Pellitory* of the wall, cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for any old cough, or for any inflammations.

Hyssoppo, which we call Hyssope, there is both wild, and that of the Garden, but the Garden is the best; it is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth and warmeth, it is good for inflammations of the Lungs, old coughes, pozes, Rhumes, and short winde.

Mordeo

Hordeo, which we call Barley, is cold and dry in the first degree, and it mundifieth and cooleth.

I

Incense, which we call Frankincense, it dryeth and incarnateth: see *Olibanum*.

Ipericon, which we call Saint Iohns woort, expelleth moysture, and healeth burnings.

Irios Florentina, which wee call Flower-de luce, especially the roote, it warmeth, ripeneth, and cleanseth, and is good for the cough, and is hor and dry in the third degree.

Iride Illyrica: see *Helpine*.

Iris is a roote that is hor and dry: it cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good against colds, and purgeth ulcers.

Isquiani, which wee call Henbane, is cold in the fourth degree: it astonieth and benumbeth.

Inniper is hot and dry in the third degree, the berries are good for the Stomacke, Lungs, Liver, and Kidneyes, cureth all coughes, gripings, and Windiness of the belly, and provoketh urine, is good against all venome, the infection of the plague, and kills Wormes.

L

Lignstum, which wee call Lovage, is hot and dry in the third degree: it expelleth Winde, especially the seed and Roote.

Lapathum, which we call a Dock, is cold and moist, and it mollifieth.

Laurei, which wee call Laurell, or bayes, are hore and

and dry, and they cleanse and mundifie.

Lentisco is a gumm that is like Mastick ; it is dry in the second degree, and moderately bindeth: it is bitter in taste, and ever Greene.

Linosa, which we call flaxe or Line, the seed there. of is hot and dry, and it ripeneth and mollifieth tumours.

Lee is hot and dry in the fourth degree: it is very adustine, cleansing, and piercing.

Lithargirto, of which there are two kinds, the one of the colour of gold, the other of silver: it is very dry, it bindeth, softneth, incarnateth, cooleth, and closeth up; and of these two, that which is like gold is the best.

Lolium, which we call Cockle, is hot and dry in the third degree, and dissolveth much.

Lumache, which we call house-snails without shells do conglutinate very much.

M

Malva is cold and moyst, it stoppeth, softneth, and mitigateth paine.

Malvaviscus is very dry, it softneth, looseneth, and incarnateth.

Mace is dry in the third degree, without heat, and onely bindeth.

Manna is of equal temper, hot and dry; it openeth, mollifieth, and incarnateth.

Mariaton or *Martiaton*, is a hot unguent against all cold humours: it helpeth the grieve of sinewes, purgeth cold watry matters, and ripeneth tumours.

Marrebio, which we call Hore-hound, of which there

there are two kinds, the white and the blacke ; but the white is the better : it is hot in the second, and dry in the third degree ; it helpeth obstructions in the Liver, openeth and purgeth, and is good against colds or for sores.

Mastick is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree: it draweth and dryeth, bindeth and softneth, & is good against old cold.

Medulla, which we call Marrow, of what kind soever, is cold and moyst, and mollifieth Vlcers; now the best Marrow is that of Hart, or old Stagge, the next that of a Calfe, the next that of a Sheepe, and the last that of a Goate.

Mel, which we commonly call Hony, is hot and dry in the second degree; it cleanseth the stomacke and entrailes, stoppeth humours, and incarnateth Wounds.

Melissa, which we call Balme, is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree; it cleanseth and conglutenateth.

Mentha, which we call Mintes, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree, of which the wilde Minte is the best, it killeth wormes, it bindeth, it dissolveth, and is good for the stomacke, or a cold Liver.

Minio, which we call red Lead, is cold and dry, and good against swellings.

Myrre or *Myrrha*, is a soveraigne Gumme; it is hot and dry in the second degree; it conglutinateth, bindeth, and cleanseth wounds, is good against all colds, killeth wormes, and helpeth the puericke: for though it doth cleanse much, yet it

it doth not exasperate the Arteries; also it doeth incarnate.

Morcosita or *Marcasita*, is hot and dry, it comforteth, bindeth, and melteth humours.

Mertilla is the fruit of the Mertil tree, it is dry in the third Degree, it doth bind good, and loosen evill humours.

Morcas, which wee call the Mulbery, the unripe is cold and dry, in the second degree: the barke, but chiefly the roote, is hot and dry in the third Degree, it doth cleanse, purge, and binde, the roote thereof killeth Wormes, and the gum thereof doth loosen, and the juyce of the berry doth heale cankers, or sore mouths.

N

Narcissi radix which we call the Root of a white Daffadil, or else Prim-rose pearlesse, is dry, it cleanseth and draweth, and healeth wounds.

Nardiradix, which wee call Serwall, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree, it bindeth, and *Spico Nardo* provoketh urine.

Nasturtio is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it burneth, it draweth and melteth, and killeth worms, see *Agregum* which we call Cresses.

Nigalla, which wee call Git, is hot and dry in the third Degree, it stayeth Winde, killeth Wormes, and looseneth, yet to give too great a quantity, is dangerous.

Nitro is of the same nature that Salt-peter is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

O

Olibanum is a gum, it is hot and dry in the second degree, it warmeth, bindeth, closeth wounds, and incarnateth.

Oyle of Olives is of a very temperate nature, and changeth his qualities according to the Nature of the simples which are mixt with him.

Opium is cold and dry in the fourth degree, and is a liquor made of Poppy dryed and mixt with Saffron, it doth astonish and provoke sleepe.

Opoponax is a gumme that is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it softneth and stayeth humours; it is good against all colds: see *Papavar*, *Gallium*, *Bdelium*, or *Sagarenum*.

Orpimento is a kind of Mettall, of which the artificiall is called Arspicke, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second, it bindeth, corrodeeth, burneth and fretteth, and is a corrosive.

Origano, which wee call wild Marioram, or Pennyriall, is hot and dry in the third degree, it taketh away stoppings, and is good for coughes.

Orbus, which wee call fitches, are hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree, they doe open and cleanse.

Orzo, which we call Barley, is cold and dry in the first degree; it ripeneth and cleanseth.

Ortica, which wee call Nettles, are hot and drye: they are biting, and wholesome for the lungs, or for fores.

Oria, which wee call Egges, the white is cold, and the yolke is hot, and doth incarnate.

P

Panacea is that Hearbe whose fruite wee call *Oponax*.

Panico is a graine which we call Panicke, it is cold and dry, and bindeth.

Papaver, which we call Poppy, the seedes thereof are White, and hot in the fourth degree: see *Opi-um*.

Pastinache, which we call Parsnips are hot, and do provoke urine.

Pecce, which we commonly call Pitch, is hot and dry in the second degree, draweth, dryeth and ripeneth

Pecce liquida, which we call Tarre, is hot and dry in the second degree, is good against colds, or evill humours gathered together in the breast, and draweth wounds.

Pecce Rasina, which wee call Rosen, or pitch of Greece, it draweth, healeth, and incarnateth.

Pecce Rasina, & *liquida*, which we call Turpentine, it doth draw, skin, incarnate and conglutinate things together.

Pepper is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it is both attractive and mundificative, and good for al diseases of the breast or Lungs.

Peaches are cold and moyst in the second degree: they bind and stir up worms.

Petastites, which we call Butter-burre, is dry in the third degree.

Petrolinum is a certaine oyle made of Sale-peter and *Bitumen*, it is hot and dry in the second Degree:

it

it healeth Wounds, and comforteth weake members.

Petroselinum, which wee call Parsley, or stone Parsley, is, and especially his seede, hot and dry in the third degree: it stayes Winde, openeth, and provoketh urine.

Philonium, of which there are two kindes, *Philonium Romanum*, and *philonium persicum*, are excellent Compositions, and most comfortable after the losse of blood.

Polegono, which we call Knot-grasse, is cold in the second degree, and keepeth backe humors.

Plantago, which we call Plantaine, is cold and dry in the third degree: it comforteth, dryeth, bindeth, and incarnateth Wounds.

Parri, which we call Leekes, Scallions, or Onions, are hot and dry, and doe extenuate Obstructions, and raise and loosen all evil humors in the body.

Puce or *porrum*, is hot in the second degree, and is good for all cold watrish stomackes.

Pyrgium, which we call Pennyrial, is hot and dry in the third degree: it doth vehemently dry in moysture, warmeth, ripeneth, and is good for the Lungs: see

Origano, which we call Origane, is cold and dry in the second degree, and is good for the Stomacke.

R

Rafano, or *Raphanus*, which we call Radish, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: they comfort, and are good for old colds; but especially they provoke urine.

Refina

Resina, which we call *Rozen*, is hot, and dry in the second degree; it stoppeth, softeneth, cleanseth, draweth, and purgeth wounds, and is good against cold causes.

Resalgar: see *Risigalla*.

Rogorkio, or *Rigolitio*, which wee call *Licoras*, is temperate in heate, and moistneth, and ripeneth, and is good for heate in the stomacke, or liver, and profitable against wounds.

Risigalla is a composition of Sulphure, Orpiment, and unsleckt lime; and is a most strong corrosive.

Roseflos, which we call rose leaves, or rose cakes, are dry and binding.

Rubea, which we call *Madder*, is dry: it comforteth and incarnateth; the root thereof provoketh urine, and is good for the yellowes.

Ruberb or *Rubarb*, is hot and dry in the second degree: it purgeth choler and fleame, and putteth away stoppings.

Ruta, which we call *Rue*, or *heath of grace*, is hot and dry in the third degree: but the wild *Rue* in the fourth degree, and therefore exulcerateth: the garden *Rue* digesteth, and mightily comforteth all inward inflammations; it ripeneth, and dryeth, and expelleth winde.

3

Savina, which wee commonly call *Savine*, is hot and dry in the third degree: it openeth, dissolveth, dryeth mightily, and is most soveraigne against Wormes.

Savina

Sacaro is hot and moist, and is very comfortable.

Sagapennum. See Serapino.

Sagina, or *Saggina*, or *Sorgo*, of some called *Panicum judicum*, is onely hot and dry.

Salo, which wee call Salt, is hot and dry in the second degree, and it cleanseth.

Salawora, which we call Brine, or water and salt, is of the same nature that salt is.

Sal-armoniack is hot and dry in the fourth degree, and it cleanseth.

Salce, which wee call Sallowes, or Willow, it bindeth and dryeth vehemently.

Salgemma is a kind of Salt which is hot and dry, it cleanseth and mundifieth.

Salnitro, some use for this Salt-peter, it is hot and dry, and evaporateth: it comforteth sinewes, and taketh away tiring or wearinesse.

Salnia, which we call Sage, is hot and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth and bindeth, is good for wounds or exulceration of the Lungs.

Sambucus, which we call Elder-tree, or Walwoort, that is like Elder-tree, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first, it dryeth, digesteth, and conglutinateh.

Sandolo, which wee call Saunders, are cold and dry in the second degree, and drive back humors.

Sandolo Rosso, or *Sandolo Bianca*, which wee call red sand, or white sand, are hot and dry, and bring on skinne.

Sanguis draconis, see *Cinaber*, yet some take it for the red Dock, or red patience, but it is not so.

Sapone, which we call Sope, is hot, it draweth, mollifieth,

liffeth, drieth, cleanseth and purgeth.

Sassifrigia, which we call Saxifrage, is hot, dry and binding.

Scabioso, which we call Scallions, is hot and dry in the second degree, they doe regenerate, and are good for scabbes, for the Lungs, or for the forenesse in the brest.

Scamonicum, which is the joyce of a roor, is hot in the third degree: it diggesth and purgeth choler, but must never bee given inwardly, unlesse it bee corrected.

Scariola, which we call Endine, is cold and dry, and binding.

Scarceolla is a gum of the kind of *Euforbium*, it is hot and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth, incarnateth and comforteth wounds.

Sea onions is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: it ripeneth and expelleth humours, it hindreth putrifaction, and preserveth health.

Semola, which we call young Colewoorts, are hot and dry in the first degree.

Semper vine, which wee call Housleeke, and some call stone croppe, is cold in the third, and dry in the second degree, it is good for burnings, or fiettings, or for inflammations of ulcers, it driveth backe humours, cooleth and bindeth.

Seda dulce is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: it cleanseth and openeth.

Serapino is a gum of *Ferula*, it is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it mollifieth, looseth, and is good for colds.

Serpillo, which we call wilde running Berrony, or Time,

Time, smelling like Marioram, is hot and dry in the third degree.

Sinapi, which wee call Mustard, is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it draweth and resolveth, and is good for scurfes, or wild scabbes.

Solatro, which we call Night-shade, is cold in the third degree.

Sulphure vine, which we call Brimstone, is hot and dry in the third degree, it draweth, disperseth humours, and killeth wormes.

Spasici, which we call *Asparagus*, is without any manifest heate or cold, and onely cleanseth.

Spelta, which we call beere Barley, is a graine lesse then Wheate, and shorter then Rye, but not so black, is coole and cleansing.

Spiga or *Spica*, which we call Lavender, is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree; it cleanseth, and is good for the head, especially the conserve, which is very comforable.

Squille is that which we call the Sea onion: see Sea onion.

Stecados, which wee call French Lavender, is hot and dry.

Storax or *Stirax*, is a sweet Gumme which is hot and dry, it correcteth, softneth, and is good for coughes, or any sicknesse in the head.



T

Tartaro, which we call *Tartar*, is the excrements of Wine, which stick to the vessell, it is hot and dry in the third degree: and onely cleanseth.

Tartaruch, which wee call Snailles with shelles are of the same nature that Snailles without shels are.

Tasso barbarosso, which wee call Yew, is of nature poyson.

Turpentine is hot in the second, and dry in the first Degree: it draweth, cleanseth, skinnerh and comforteth.

Thymum, which we call Time, is hot and dry in the third degree, and expelleth fleame.

Thuris Lacrime, which wee call Frankinsence, is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: see *Olibanum*.

Thurix cortex is dry in the second degree, and bindeth.

Thuris succutis is hot and dry in the third degree.

Tithimalis, which we call Spurge, or Milke-thistle, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it cleanseth and purgeth fleame and choler, and is good for old sores or fistulaes.

Trisera magna is a certaine composition which will

will provoke sweate, helpeth grieſe in the ſtomacke and taketh away all cold Rhumes.

Tutia preparata is a certaine Minerall that is cold in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree, and is very good for ſore eyes.



V

V*Eratro*: ſee *Ellebro*.

Verbena, which we call Veruin, is hot and dry: it comforteth and mundifieth.

Verderame, which wee call Verdigreafe is hot and dry in the third Degree, and is a corroſive that eateth away dead fleſh.

Vermi, which we call Wormes, doe conglutinate and comfort ſinewes.

Verze is hot and dry: ſee *Braſica*.

Vetro, which we call Glaſſe, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree, and it cleaſeth.

Vinacceæ, which we call the kirkels of Grapes, are dry.

Virga paſtoris, which we call Wild Taſſil, is cold in the third, and dry in the firſt degree, it comforteth and bindeth.

Viſchio, which we call Lime, is hot in the fourth

Degree: it dryeth and skinneth, but being mixed with any liquid stufte, is burneth and is Corrosive.

Fistula, or *vitis alba*, which we call Briony, is hot, chiefly the roote; it cleanseth and killeth scabbes, it dryeth, it draweth, mollifieth and dissolvethe.

Vitelli which we call the yolkes of any egges, are hot, and doe strengthen and incarnate.

Vitrioll, which wee call Copporas is of two kinde, that is, *Vitriola Romanum*, which we call greene Copporas, and *Vitriola album*, which we call white Copporas, they both are hot and dry, but the white is much the stronger: they take away scurfes, and kill scabbes.

Vitriola Calcanthum is reckoned amongst mettals, and is a kind of inkie earth: it dryeth and fretteth.

Vitriola herba, is an Hearbe that groweth on the Wall, and is taken for *Pellitory* of the Wall: see *Helxin*.

Vrtica, which wee call Nettles, are hot and dry, and stop and cleanse humours, and are good for sores.

Z

Z*efarano*, which wee call Saffron, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree; it comforteth and expelleth all inward poyson, and incarnateth Wounds.

Zebular: see *Ziziphe*.

Zentonico, which we call worm-seed, is hot and dry.

Zenzero, which wee call Ginger, is of the nature of Pepper, and hath the strength of long pepper; it maintaineth naturall heate, and is good for cold stomackes.

Ziziphe taketh away Coughes, and helpeth the shortnesse of breath.

Zucche, which we call Gourds, are cold and moist in the second degree, and it allayeth all manner of inflammations or hot swellings.



CHAPTER CXCVI.

Certaine principles, touching Simples.

YOU shall understand that touching simples, some are onely to ease paine, as Lin-seed, Camomile, soft grease, suet of all sorts, or any other oyle that is hot in the first degree, and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, the medicine is called *Anodina* or *Lynogs*.

There are other simples which are astonying, he-numbing, or bringing a sleepe, as *Opium*, *Mandrake*, *Poppy*, *Namloske*, and such like, which are grosse and cold in the fourth degree, and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like: then the medicine is amongst Leaches, called *Narcotica*.

The

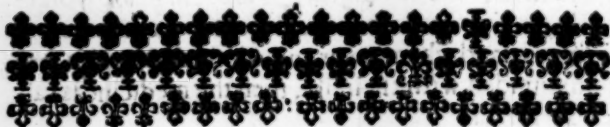
The third sort of simples are such as incarnate, or breed flesh, as *Frankinsence*, *Flowe*, *Saffron*, yolkes of Egges and such like, which are hot in the second Degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the medicine is called *Sarcotica*.

The fourth sort of simples are corroding, fretting, or burning, as *Arsnicke*, *Rosigallo*, *Mercury*, *Lime*, and such like, which are hot in the fourth Degree; and whensoever they are applyed simple, or compound, then the medicine is called *Corrosive*.

The fifth sort of Simples are those which be called mollifying, and are foure in number: That is, greene *Mallows*, white *Mallows*, *Violders*, and *Brankarfin*.

The last sort of simples are those which are called Cordials, and are three in number: that is to say, *Violders*, and *Buglosse* of both kinds.

And thus much touching the nature, use, property and operation of simples.



CHAP. CXCVII.

*Of Weights and Measures, and how to know
them by their Characters.*

ALL bee I have in this Worke, set downe your Weights and Measures in such plaine English, that every one may understand them; yet for as much as the more curious doe set downe many excellent Receites under obscure Characters, I thinke it good here to acquaint you with them all, that when you find any such, you may not be ignorant in the understanding of them.

Know then that the least of all waights is a graine, which is the waight either of a Barley corne, or of a Pepper corne, and his characters *℥*. or *℥r*.

Siliqua is foure graines, and his character is *℥*.

An English halfe-penny is five graines, and his character is *ob*.

A Scruple is tenne Graines, and his character is *℥*.

A Dramme

A Dramme is three scruples, or the eighth part of an ounce, and his character is \mathfrak{z} .

A Roman penny is the same that a Dramme is, and his character is X.

An ounce is the twelfth part of a pound, which is twenty foure scruples, and foure hundred and eighty graines, and his character is \mathfrak{z} .

The character of halfe an ounce is \mathfrak{ss} .

A pound in medicinall Receites is twelve ounces, and his character is \mathfrak{lb} .

The handfull is sixe ounces, and $\frac{1}{2}$ of an ounce, and his character is M.

The character of as much as you can hold betwixt your fingers is R.

The character for a drop is *Gut.*

The character for three drops is *Gut. iij.*

\mathfrak{lb} is halfe a pound.

\mathfrak{ss} is halfe an ounce.

\mathfrak{z} is halfe a dramme.

\mathfrak{ss} is halfe a scruple.

\mathfrak{ss} is

3j ʒ is an ounce and a halfe.

Mj ʒ is a handfull and a halfe.

Pj is halfe a handfull, which is three cunces, and
of an ounce.

Ana or an, is a like, or of each a like.

And thus much touching Weights and their true
Characters.



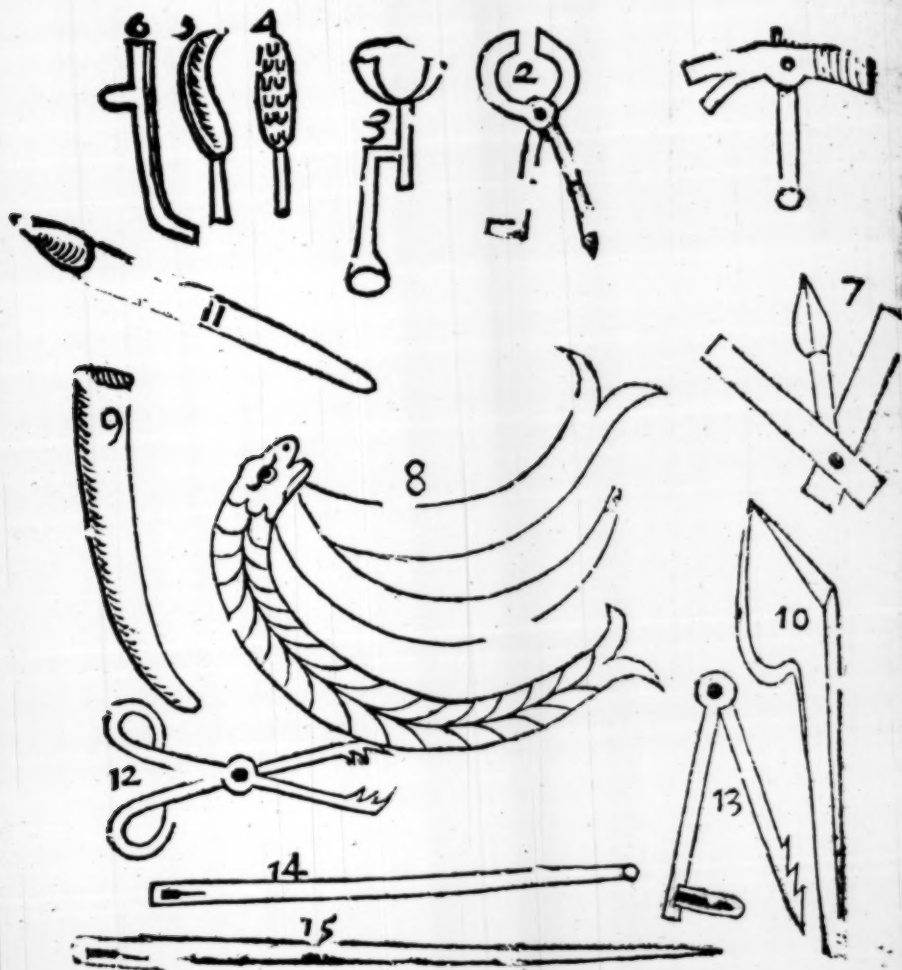
A Postscript

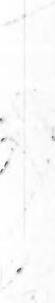
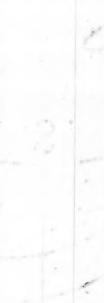
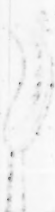
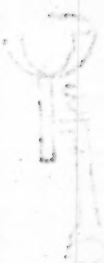
CHAPTER
CXCVIII.The Farriers Instruments
expounded, with their names
and properties.

THe figure 1, sheweth the Hammer which driveth in the nayle. The figure 2, the Pincers which breaketh off, clincheth, and draweth the nayle: The figure 3, the Butteris which pareth and openeth the foote: The figure 4, the Raspe or Rape which maketh smooth the hooft: The figure 5, the cutting knife which taketh away the superfluous hooft: The figure 6, the Fleame with which he letteth bloud in the Neck, or in the grosse places where the
veine.

veine is great : The figure 7, the Farriers Launcet which openeth small veins and thrids, where a strooke may not bee used : The figure 8, the incision knife, to open Impostumes, and to cut away superfluous flesh: The figure 9, the Cornet to take up veins: The figure 10, the drawing Cauterizing Iron to open and seperate the flesh either sound or impostumed : The figure 11, the round Button Cauterizing iron to boare holes in the skinne and sweld places: The figure 12, the Mullets to cleanse Wounds : The figure 13, the Barnacles to pinch an horse by the nose or eares, to make him indure paine patiently : The figure 14, the Needle to stitch up Wounds; and the figure 15, the Probe to search and finde out the depth of Wounds. And thus you have a full explanation of all the needfull instruments belonging to the skilfull *Farrier*.

The

The Farriers chieft instruments,





The Postscript.

Courteous Reader, having now with infinite labour and industry perfected and finished this my Master-peece for the cure of Horses and Mares, wherein the Physicall part of Horsemanship concerning those manifold inward diseases which are incident to Horses is clearely discovered, and the Chyrurgicall part concerning outward accidents is plainly opened and described; and having for the more absolute advancement of Horsemanship, and to give the fuller satisfaction therein made a particular speculation, and run through every part veine, bone, sinew and

Q q

Artery

The Postscript.

Artery of the horses body, demonstrating not onely their number and place by figure, but also considering their dis-affectiōns and diseases which doe thereunto belong; and having also with much paine (as a work of this difficult nature requireth) brought it to a full period, not onely giving you a few termes of Art concerning Horsemanship, but making an Anatomy from head to foot of all the integrall parts of a horse, with their diseases inward and outward, and their Physicall and Chyrurgicall cures exactly prescribed and set downe, and have given you ocular demonstrations of the whole fabricke of the Horses body, so that as in a Map you may behold every smal part, river, creeke or streame running up and downe within the superficies of the Earth, so I have likewise made and drawne divers pictures, setting out all the parts and parcells of a Horses body, and that they may bee plainly seene and considered, I have most lively delineated and figur'd out every part and veine in the Horse, where to finde it
from

The Postscript.

from head to foot; I have also Anatomized the Horſe in every bone, that you may perceive their conjunction and how they are joyned, and thereby judge of their diſlocations and putting out of their places, and all this you ſhall at one view behold in the ſeverall parts and Figures w^{ch} you ſhall find in this Booke. Therefore I would adviſe all noble Gentlemen and others, who being of a generous ſpirit cannot chuſe but delight and take wonderfull pleaſure in Horſes, to conſider that for want of care and experience many excellent Horſes falling into ſlight and common diſeaſes, have either utterly periſhed, or elſe bene lamed and ſpoyled; it will bee therefore a ſtudy worthy the thoughts of a generous ſpirit, to know how to accommodate and apply Cures and Medicines to the outward and inward diſeaſes of Horſes, in regard that a Horſe is a beaſt whoſe praises cannot bee ſufficiently declared: The Horſe is commodious for common uſe, as pleaſing Tillage, and transporting

The Postscript.

ting of carriages and burthens, and also for mens continuall occasions and daily Iournies; in time of Peace, when Princes did use to recreate themselves with Hunting Deere and other wilde Beasts, Horses were alwaies had in high estimation and honour, and those that would out-runne the Winde, and made the best speede after the Chase were most esteemed, so that there could bee no pleasure in Hunting if they had not Horses to carry them after their Game, and what a brave sight it is to see in a Field an hundred or more hunting Horses riding and running this way, or that way after the timerous Deere, or fearefull Hare: therefore the Horse as hee was made for industrious labour, so hee is fit to maintaine and procure the pleasures and delights of a Prince, or any Nobleman.

And moreover in Warre, the courage and service of a Horse is daily now seene and too well knowne; hee will as if hee
were

The Postscript.

were animated by the sound of Drummes and Trumpets presently rush into the Battail, and takes delight to charge the Enemy, he is all fire, and full of mettall and fury : and thus wee see that a Horse is not onely convenient for the daily occasions of the Husbandman, of Travelers, and divers others, but in Princes Courts hee is highly esteemed for Hunting, for Races, and other pastimes; and also in the Warres his daily service is sufficiently knowne, being a Beast of a magnanimous and undaunted courage, so that the Horse is naturally made for profit and pleasure; for labour and delight; for Peace and War; for Hunting, for Triumphs, and all gallant occasions.

It is pittie then that a brave Horse, well limb'd and spirited, falling sicke of any inward disease, or outward accidentall infirmity, as Spraines, dislocation of bones, Spavins, and hundreds more should bee spoyled in suffering the disease to grow on him untill it bee incurable, or in apply-

ing remedies unfit for the malady, whereby many a Horse becomes maymed, and for want of Cure utterly disabled for any service.

Therefore my advice and counsell is, (as I said before) that if any Gentlemen whatsoever shall have their Horses either by outward accident, as Spraines, pricking in the feete and the like, or inward surfeits, Glanders, colds and heates by intemperate and extraordinary Riding fall sicke, or become through the aforesaid infirmities any way disabled for service, they should not depend upon their owne experience or judgement, but should wisely consider with himselfe, and consult with the Farrier, reasoning together, and comparing their opinions concerning the Causes and Cures of such diseases as are incident to their Horses, that so by this meanes by the hight of Discourse and reason they may come to a certaine and infallible knowledge of the Horses diseases and infirmities, and having diligently searched out the Causes thereof, they

The Postscript.

they may know likewise how to Cure the same; for you shall meet with many illiterate Farriers, who are not Booke-learned, and therefore have no more knowledge than Horses themselves, but are subject through their ignorance to runne into many grosser errors, so that through their negligence and aforesaid ignorance, mistaking the Causes and Cures of diseases, and even one word most grossly, for it is good to have experience both in the Theoricke and Practicke part of any Art and Science.

For another (to my knowledge) many good Horses doe continually remaine lame and unfit for service, or else doe utterly perish for want of understanding their diseases, and the particular Cures thereof. Therefore as wise Physitians doe consult together when they meete with a sicke Patient, so of advice both Gentlemen and Farriers to compare their judgements together, whereby the Beast may bee saved, the Gentlemen and Farriers gaine credit, and
their


The Postscript.

their experience and knowledge in the many diseases of Horses bee much bettered.

Moreover, for the Readers greater benefit, all simples and compounds good for Horses are Alphabetically heere placed, and the conditions of them whither hot or cold, with their names and qualities are described: Also what Ounces, Drammes and Scruples are to bee given in any drinke. If Gentlemen bee unacquainted with these things, let them conferre with the Farrier, and so confirme their judgements by discourse. And so courteous Reader I have left you my best Worke thus accomplished, and thus perfected, that I know in all the points belonging to the Cure of Horses it will give full satisfaction, if the Reader follow the advice of this Postscript.



THE
TABLE OF
The
First Booke contay-
ning all Cures
Physicall.

Chapter.	Page
 HE composition of horses bodies.	1
2 Of Elements.	2
3 Of Temperaments.	8
4 Humors.	10
5 Of Members.	13
6 Of Powers.	15
7 Of actions or operations.	16
	80

The Table.

Chapter.	Page
8 <i>Of Spirits.</i>	18
9 <i>Of things naturall.</i>	20
10 <i>Of Complexions.</i>	25
11 <i>Of inward sicknesses.</i>	28
12 <i>Signes of sicknesses:</i>	30
13 <i>Observations in Physicking.</i>	36
14 <i>Of Urine and Excerments.</i>	38
15 <i>Of Fevers.</i>	42
16 <i>The Quotidian.</i>	46
17 <i>The Tertian.</i>	47
18 <i>The Quartan,</i>	48
19 <i>The Continuall.</i>	49
20 <i>The Hetique.</i>	50
21 <i>The Autume Fever.</i>	52
22 <i>The Summer Fever.</i>	52
23 <i>The Winter Fever.</i>	53
24 <i>Fever by surfeite.</i>	54
25 <i>Fever pestilent.</i>	54
26 <i>Of the plague.</i>	56
27 <i>Fever accidentall.</i>	58
28 <i>One generall approved cure for all fevers.</i>	59
29 <i>Diseases in the head.</i>	60
30 <i>Of Head-ache.</i>	61
31 <i>Of Frenzie.</i>	62
32 <i>Of the sleeping evill.</i>	64
33 <i>A horse taken.</i>	65
34 <i>Of the Staggers.</i>	67
35 <i>Of the falling-evil.</i>	70
36 <i>Of the Night-mare.</i>	72
37 <i>Of the palse.</i>	74
38 <i>Of the generall cramp.</i>	76
	39 of

Chapter.	Page.
39 Of the cold.	78
40 How to take away any cold.	81
41 The best of all medicines for the cold.	82
42 Of Hide-bound.	82
43 Of the Glanders.	85
44 Two certaine cures for the Glander.	91
45 Of the mourning of the Chine.	92
46 A certaine approved medicine for the mourning	
46 of the Chine.	95
47 of the Cough.	96
48 of the wet cough.	98
49 of the dry cough.	100
Two approved cures for any cold or cough.	104
51 The best of medicines for any dry cough.	105
52 of broken Lungs.	105
53 of rotten Lungs.	107
54 of shortnesse of breath.	108
55 of broken winded.	111
56 of the Consumption.	115
57 Consumption of the flesh.	117
58 To make a horse fat.	118
59 The mirror and master of all medicines to fat-	
ten an horse.	122
60 of the breast paine.	124
61 of the Anticor, or heart-sicknesse.	125
62 of tyred horses.	128
63 of loathing of meate.	133
64 of casting out drinks.	135
65 of glut of provender.	136
66 of foundring in the body.	138
67 of the hungry evil.	141
	68 of

The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
68 of inflammation in the Liver,	142
69 of obstructions in the Liver.	144
70 Consumption of the Liver,	147
71 of diseases in the Gall.	149
72 Diseases in the spleene.	150
73 of the Tellowes.	152
74 of the Dropsie.	157
75 of the Cholicks.	160
76 of the Belly-ake.	161
77 of Costivenesse.	162
78 of the Laxe.	164
79 of the bloody fluxe.	166
80 Falling of the fundament.	168
81 of Bots and Wormes.	169
82 of paine in the Kidneyes.	174
83 of the Stangury.	176
84 of the Paine-pisse.	177
85 of the stone.	178
86 of pissing blood.	181
87 of the Colt evill.	183
88 of the mattering of the yard.	184
89 of the shedding the seed.	185
90 Falling of the yard.	186
91 Barrennesse of Mares.	187
92 Consumption in Mares.	188
93 Rage of love in Mares.	189
94 Of casting of foales.	190
95 Of hardnesse in foaling.	190
96 Of making Mares cast their foales.	191
97 Drinking of horse-leaches.	192
98 Eating of Mens dung.	192
	99 of

The Table.

Chapter,	page.
99 <i>Of the suppositary.</i>	193
100 <i>Of Glisters.</i>	196
101 <i>Of Purgations.</i>	200
102 <i>An excellent and approved scowring.</i>	207
103 <i>Of meeing or fumes.</i>	208
104 <i>Of frictions and bathes.</i>	211
105 <i>Generall drenches.</i>	213
106 <i>To make Diapente.</i>	214
107 <i>A famous drench and oymntment.</i>	215
108 <i>Of the oyle of oates.</i>	216
109 <i>Briefe observations &c.</i>	218
110 <i>Principles in foales and horses.</i>	225
111 <i>Observations in mares.</i>	226
112 <i>Observations in buying a horse.</i>	228
113 <i>Notes concerning some simples.</i>	230



R r 3

THE





THE TABLE OF THE second Booke contayning all Cures Chirurgicall.

Chapter.	page.
P <i>Proportions of members.</i>	235
1 <i>Of the Veines.</i>	237
2 <i>The Anatomy of veines.</i>	239
3 <i>Of the sinewes.</i>	241
3 <i>The Anatomy of sinewes</i>	243
4 <i>Of all the Bones.</i>	244
4 <i>The Anatomy of Bones</i>	245
5 <i>Of letting blood.</i>	246
6 <i>Of outward sorraunces.</i>	253
7 <i>Of weeping eyes.</i>	256
8 <i>Of blood shotten eyes.</i>	258
9 <i>Dimnesse of sight.</i>	259
10 <i>A certain and approved medicine for any Blindnesse, &c.</i>	260
11 <i>Another to the same effect.</i>	261
12 <i>Pearle, Pin, or Web.</i>	262
13 <i>An infallible cure for any Pin, Pearle, or Web.</i>	165
14 <i>of the Haw.</i>	265
15 <i>of Moone eyes.</i>	267
16 <i>Canker in the eye.</i>	269
17 <i>Stripe in the eye.</i>	270
18 <i>Wart in the eye.</i>	271
19 <i>Inflammation in the eye.</i>	272
20 <i>Impostume in the eye.</i>	273
21 <i>The</i>	

The Table

Chapter.	page.
21 The Pole-will.	274
22 A rare and certaine cure for the Pole-will.	278
23 Of leaved eares.	278
24 Of the Vines.	280
25 A rare and certain approved cure for the vines.	283
26 Another excellent cure for the vines.	283
27 Of the strangle.	284
28 Canker in the nose.	286
29 Bleeding at the nose.	288
30 Bloody Ruffs.	290
31 The Giggles.	290
32 Of the Lampasse.	292
33 Of the Camerce.	293
34 Canker in the mouth.	294
35 Heate in the mouth.	296
36 The tongue hurt.	297
37 Of the Barbes.	297
38 Paine in the teeth, and of Wolves teeth.	298
39 Crick in the necke.	301
40 Wens in the necke.	303
41 Swelling after blood-letting.	305
42 To stanch blood.	306
43 Falling of the crest.	307
44 A certaine approved way to raise the crest.	309
45 Mattingnesse in the Maime.	311
46 Of shedding the haire.	312
47 Griefe in the withers.	312
48 Any galled backe.	316
49 Canker in the withers.	320
50 Of the sit fast.	321

The Table.

Chaprer.	page.
51 Wens below the saddle.	322
52 Navell gall.	323
53 Swaying of the backe.	325
54 Weaknesse in the backe.	326
55 Swelling of the cods.	327
56 of burstnesse, or incording.	330
57 Botch in the groine.	332
☞ 58 A certaine approved cure for the botch.	333
59 Itch in the tayle.	333
60 of the general scab.	335
☞ 61 Two most excellent and approved cures for the scabs.	338
62 of halting before.	340
63 of halting behind.	344
64 of hidden griefer.	345
65 of griefe in the shoulder.	346
66 Wrench in the shoulder.	348
67 Wrench in the nether joynt.	351
68 Splatting the shoulder.	352
69 Shoulder pight.	353
☞ 70 A certain cure for any desperate straine in the shoulder, &c.	355
71 Swelling of the fore legs.	356
72 Foundring in the fecte.	358
73 Of the splent.	365
☞ 74 An approved & certain cure for any splent.	370
75 of the Serew.	370
76 of the Mallander.	371
77 of an upper Attaint.	374
☞ 78 An approved medicine for any new straine.	376
	79 A

The Table.

Chapter.	page.
79 <i>A neather attaint.</i>	376
80 <i>An over-reach on the beelee.</i>	377
81 <i>The Mellet.</i>	378
82 <i>False quarters.</i>	379
83 <i>An horsehipped.</i>	380
84 <i>Of stifling.</i>	383
85 <i>Bone spaven.</i>	385
86 <i>Bloud spaven.</i>	390
87 <i>An approved cure for any bloud-spaven whatso- ever.</i>	392
88 <i>Of the Sellander.</i>	392
89 <i>Of the hough-bone.</i>	393
90 <i>Of the Curbe.</i>	394
91 <i>Of the paines.</i>	396
92 <i>The Mules.</i>	401
93 <i>Of Wind gals.</i>	402
94 <i>Straine in the pastorne.</i>	406
95 <i>To helpe any halting.</i>	407
96 <i>Three rare and approved medicines to cure any straine or swelling whatsoever.</i>	411
97 <i>Another approved cure for any straine.</i>	412
98 <i>Of enterfeaving.</i>	412
99 <i>The shackle gall.</i>	413
100 <i>Casting in the halter.</i>	413
101 <i>The scratches.</i>	415
102 <i>A certaine and approved cure for the scrat- ches.</i>	418
103 <i>Of the ring-bone.</i>	419
104 <i>Hurts on the cronet.</i>	421
105 <i>A certaine approved cure for any hurt on the Cronet.</i>	422
	106 The

The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
106 <i>The crowne scab,</i>	423
107 <i>The Quitter-bone,</i>	224
<i>Of gravelling.</i>	126
109 <i>Of surbaiting.</i>	428
110 <i>Prick in the soale,</i>	429
110 <i>To draw out a stib:</i>	431
111 <i>The Figge,</i>	432
112 <i>A Retrait,</i>	433
113 <i>Of cloying.</i>	435
114 <i>Observations for the hooves,</i>	437
115 <i>Loosening the hoove.</i>	440
116 <i>Casting the hoove.</i>	442
117 <i>Of hoove-bound.</i>	443
118 <i>The running Frush.</i>	445
 119 <i>An approved and certain cure for the running Frush,</i>	447
120 <i>Of evil hooves.</i>	448
121 <i>Of brittle hooves.</i>	448
122 <i>To preserve hooves.</i>	449
123 <i>Hurts on the hooves.</i>	451
124 <i>To soften hooves.</i>	451
125 <i>To harden hooves.</i>	452
126 <i>Of the Mat long.</i>	452
127 <i>To skinne a sore foot.</i>	453
128 <i>Of gowrded legges.</i>	453
 129 <i>A most certaine and approved cure for gowrded legges,</i>	455
130 <i>Of the Farcy.</i>	457
131 <i>Of the Canker.</i>	469
132 <i>Of the Fistula.</i>	472
 133 <i>A rare and approved cure for any fistula.</i>	479
	134 <i>Of</i>

The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
134 Of the Anbury.	479
135 Of the Cords.	480
136 Of the String-halt.	481
137 Of spur-gall.	482
138 Of wounds in generall.	842
139 Hurts with arrowes.	487
140 Of healing old sores.	487
141 A certaine and approved cure for any old fore.	488
142 Of bruifings or swellings.	489
143 Of Impostumes.	492
144 Of cold impostumes.	493
145 Of hot impostumes.	494
146 Of the tetter.	495
147 Of sinewes cut, &c.	495
148 Of fretting with the girths.	496
149 Of blisters.	497
150 To take away bones, &c.	498
151 To cate dead flesh.	499
152 Of knots in joynts.	502
153 Wounds made with Gun-powder.	503
154 Of burning with Lime.	505
155 Biting of a mad dog.	507
156 Hurts with a Boares tuskes.	507
157 The sting of Serpents.	508
158 Of Lice.	509
159 Defence from flies.	510
160 of bones broken.	512
161 Bones out of joynt.	513
162 To dry up humours.	515
163 To dry superfluous moisture.	515
	164 To

The Table.

Chapter.	Page
164 To dry any swelling.	515
165 To dissolve humours.	516
166 To mollifie hardnesse.	516
167 To harden softnesse.	517
168 To conglutinate.	518
169 To mundifie.	518
170 Repercussive medicines.	519
171 Of burning compositions.	519
172 For all manner of hurts.	520
173 Powder of honey and lime.	522
174 The taking up of veines.	523
175 Of cauterizing.	526
176 Cauterize a wall.	527
177 Cauterize Potentially.	532
178 Of Rowelling.	534
179 To geld horses.	537
180 To make Curtals.	537
181 To make a white Starre.	541
182 To make a blacke starre.	545
183 To make a red starre.	546
184 To make haire to come very soone.	546
185 To make haire smooth and fine.	548
186 How to take off haire in any part of a horse	549
187 How to cast and overthrow a horse.	549
188 How to know the age of a horse.	550
189 How to make an old horse seeme young.	552
190 How to make a horse that he shall not neigh, either in company, or when he is ridden.	553
191 How to make a horse exceeding quicke and nimble of the spurre.	554
192 How	

The Table.

Chapter.	page.
192 How to make a horse that tires, or is restiffe, to goe forward.	555
193 Other most excellent and approved waies to preserve an horse from tyring, never disclosed till now.	555
194 How to make a horse to follow his Master, and to finde him out, and challenge him amongst never so many people.	557
195 The nature and special qualities of all the Simples that are spoken of in this whole Worke, set downe in the manner of Alphabet.	558
196 Certaine principles touching simples.	566
197 Of Weights and measures, and how to know them by their Characters.	598
198 The Farriers instruments expounded, with ibeir names and properties.	600

FINIS.

